MY18 EQ Equinox

Owner's Manual



Holden

GM Holden Ltd, ABN 84 006 893 232, Holden New Zealand Ltd., Company Number 1602 (hereinafter Holden)

Change of name, address or ownership

If you drive a pre-owned Holden, have moved house or changed any of your details, we'd like to hear from you!

Holden uses your details to keep your vehicle's factory provided Roadside Assistance and Warranty details up to date.

It also helps us let you know if there is an existing rework action required on your vehicle. To update your details, please take a few minutes to fill in and mail the form at the back of the Service & Warranty Booklet or visit Holden's website at: www.holden.com.au/forms/change-of-owner-details

GM Holden Ltd (Holden) is collecting the new owner's personal information in order to process the request for transfer for the specified vehicle. We may disclose your personal information to our related companies and third parties who provide us with (or help us provide) products and services, including to overseas locations such as the USA, and other countries in Europe, Oceania and Asia.
Holden's privacy policy (available at: www.holden.com.au/privacypolicy) states how you can seek to access or correct any personal information Holden holds about you, how to complain about a privacy breach by Holden and how Holden will deal with a privacy complaint.
You can contact Holden on 1800 033 349 or alternatively, you may prefer to email Holden at: holdencustomercare@gm.com

Note: Please refer to the inside front cover of the Service & Warranty Booklet for the Vehicle Identification Certificate.

© 2018 GM Holden Ltd.
© 2018 Holden New Zealand Ltd.
Reproduction in whole or part is prohibited without written approval from GM Holden Ltd., ABN 84 006 893 232 (Australia) or Holden New Zealand Ltd., Company Number 1602 (New Zealand)

Printed in Australia
Part No. 92509859
February 2018
(MY18 EQ Equinox. Print 1)

Contents

Introduction 2
In Brief 5
Keys, Doors, and Windows 23
Seats and Restraints 46
Storage 73
Instruments and Controls 80
Lighting 121
Infotainment System 129
Climate Controls 204
Driving and Operating 211
Vehicle Care 271
Service and Maintenance 323
Technical Data 325
Customer Information 332
Index 346

Introduction

We thank you for choosing Holden and want to assure you of our continuing interest in your driving pleasure and satisfaction.

This owner's manual applies to the current EQ Equinox vehicle. Therefore, due to different models and options, you may find reference in this manual to some equipment not fitted to your own vehicle.

Please note that all information, illustrations and specifications in this manual are based on the latest production information available at the time of printing.

Holden reserves the right to make changes at any time without notice and without incurring any obligation.

Introduction

This Owner's Manual provides you with all the necessary information to enable you to drive your vehicle safely and efficiently.

Make sure your passengers are aware of the possible risk of accident and injury which may result from improper use of the vehicle.

Using this Manual

- This manual describes all options and features available for this model. **Certain descriptions, including those for display and menu functions, may not apply to your vehicle due to model variant.**
- The In Brief section will give you an initial overview.
- The table of contents at the beginning of this manual and within each chapter shows where the information is located.
- The index will enable you to search for specific information.
- Directional data, e.g. left or right, or front or back, always relate to the direction of travel.
- For a complete list of the registered trademarks contained in this manual *Trademarks and Licence Agreements* ⇨ *332*

Danger, Warning, and Caution

⚠ Danger

Text marked ⚠ **Danger** provides information on risk of fatal injury. Disregarding this information may endanger life.

⚠ Warning

Text marked ⚠ **Warning** provides information on risk of accident or injury. Disregarding this information may lead to injury.

Caution

Text marked **Caution** provides information on possible damage to the vehicle. Disregarding this information may lead to vehicle damage.

Symbols

Page references are indicated with ⇨.

This indicates 'see page'.

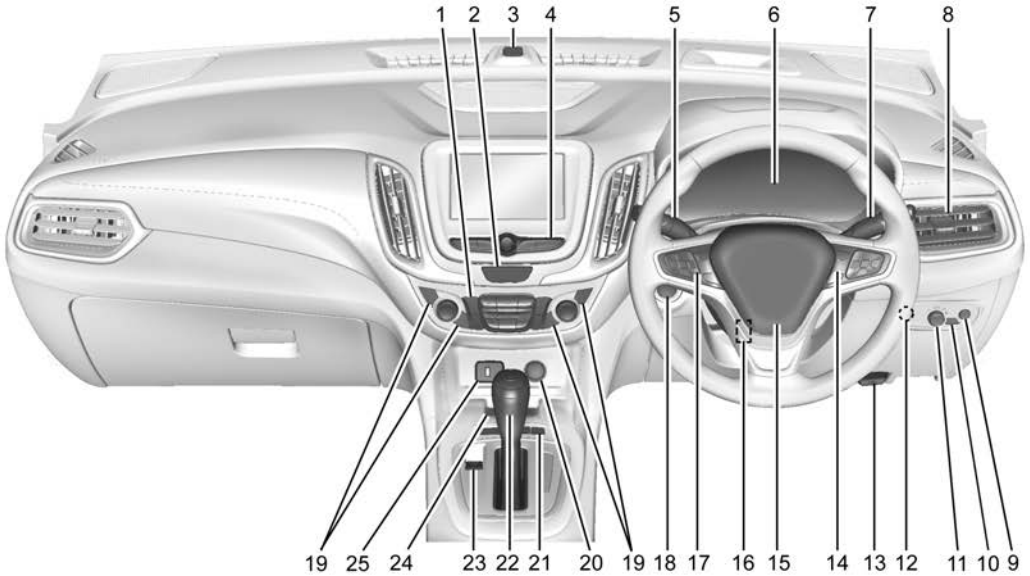
✍ NOTES

In Brief

Instrument Panel
Instrument Panel 6

Initial Drive Information
Initial Drive Information 8
Stop/Start System 8
Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System 8
Remote Vehicle Start 8
Door Locks 9
Liftgate 10
Windows 11
Seat Adjustment 11
Memory Features 13
Heated and Ventilated Seats . . . 14
Head Restraint Adjustment 14
Seat Belts 15
Mirror Adjustment 15
Steering Wheel Adjustment 15
Interior Lighting 16
Exterior Lighting 17
Windshield Wiper/Washer 17
Climate Controls 19
Transmission 20
Parking 21
Getting Started 21

Instrument Panel



1. *Air Conditioning System* ⇨ *204*.

   Dual Automatic Climate Control System ⇨ *206*.

2. *Hazard Warning Flashers* ⇨ *125*.

3. Light Sensor. See *Automatic Headlamp System* ⇨ *123*.

4. Infotainment System. See *Introduction* ⇨ *130* or *Introduction* ⇨ *150*.

5. *Windshield Wiper/Washer* ⇨ *83*.

6. *Instrument Cluster* ⇨ *92*.

   Driver Information Centre (DIC) Display. See *Driver Information Centre (DIC)* ⇨ *106*.

7. Turn Signal Lever. See *Turn and Lane-Change Signals* ⇨ *125*.

   High Beam Assist. See *Exterior Lamp Controls* ⇨ *121*.

8. *Air Vents* ⇨ *210*.

9. *Headlamp Leveling Control* ⇨ *124*.

10. *Fog Lamps* ⇨ *125*.

11. *Exterior Lamp Controls* ⇨ *121*.

12. *Instrument Panel Illumination Control* ⇨ *126* (Out of View).

13. Bonnet Release. See *Bonnet* ⇨ *274*.

14. *Steering Wheel Controls* ⇨ *81*.

    Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control ⇨ *234*.

15. *Horn* ⇨ *83*.

16. *Steering Wheel Adjustment* ⇨ *81* (Out of View).

17. *Cruise Control* ⇨ *237*.

    Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System ⇨ *248*.

    Lane Keep Assist (LKA) ⇨ *254*.

    Heated Steering Wheel ⇨ *82*.

18. ENGINE START/STOP Button. See *Ignition Positions* ⇨ *215*.

19. *Heated and Ventilated Front Seats* ⇨ *54*.

20. *Power Outlets* ⇨ *87*.

21. *Parking Assist* ⇨ *243*.

    Advanced Parking Assist ⇨ *246*.

    Hill Descent Control (HDC) ⇨ *237*.

    All-Wheel Drive ⇨ *230*.

22. Shift Lever. See *Automatic Transmission* ⇨ *226*.

    Manual Transmission ⇨ *228*.

23. *Electric Parking Brake* ⇨ *231*.

24. *Wireless Charging* ⇨ *90*.

25. USB Port. See *USB Port* ⇨ *136* or *USB Port* ⇨ *161*.

    Auxiliary Input Jack. See *Auxiliary Devices* ⇨ *142* or *Auxiliary Devices* ⇨ *164*.

Initial Drive Information

This section provides a brief overview about some of the important features that may be fitted to your vehicle.

For more detailed information, refer to each of the features which can be found later in this owner's manual.

Stop/Start System

The vehicle has a fuel saving engine Stop/Start system to shut off the engine (perform an Auto Stop) and help conserve fuel and reduce emissions when the vehicle is at a standstill, e.g. at traffic lights.

When conditions allow, the vehicle is at a complete stop and the brake pedal is pressed (automatic), or the transmission is shifted to neutral and the clutch pedal released (manual), the engine may turn off.

When the brake pedal is released (automatic), the clutch pedal is released (manual), or the accelerator pedal is pushed, the engine will restart. See *Starting the Engine* ⇨ *217*.

Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System

The Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter may operate up to 60 m from the vehicle.



With Remote Start and Power Liftgate Shown

: Press to unlock the driver door or all doors depending on vehicle personalisation settings. The liftgate and fuel door will also be unlocked.

: Press to lock all doors and the liftgate. The fuel door will also be locked.

Lock and unlock feedback can be personalised. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *112*.

: If equipped, press twice quickly to open or close the power liftgate.

: Press and release, then immediately press and hold for at least four seconds to start the engine from outside the vehicle. See *Remote Vehicle Start* ⇨ *28*.

Press the button on the side of the RKE transmitter to remove the mechanical key. The key can be used for all door locks.

See *Keys* ⇨ *23* and *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation* ⇨ *24*.

Remote Vehicle Start

If equipped, the engine can be started from outside of the vehicle.

Starting the Vehicle

1. Press and release on the RKE transmitter.
2. Immediately press and hold for at least four seconds or until the turn signal lamps flash.

When the engine starts, the park lamps will turn on. The vehicle's doors will be locked.

Unlock the vehicle and press the ENGINE START/STOP button before driving.

Remote start running time can be extended.

Cancelling a Remote Start

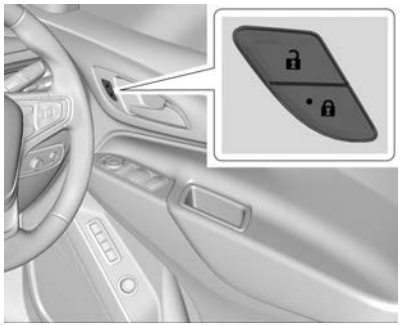
To cancel a remote start, do one of the following:

- Press and hold until the park lamps turn off.
- Turn on the hazard warning flashers.
- Press the ENGINE START/ STOP button twice.

See *Remote Vehicle Start* ⇨ *28*.

Door Locks

To lock or unlock the vehicle from the outside, press or on the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter.



To lock or unlock the vehicle from inside:

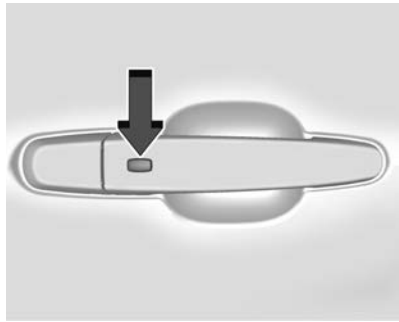
: Press to lock the doors. The indicator in the switch will illuminate when the door is locked.

: Press to unlock the doors.

See *Door Locks* ⇨ *29*.

To manually unlock a door from inside the vehicle, pull once on the door handle to unlock it, and a second time to open it.

Keyless Entry



Press the button on a door handle when the RKE transmitter is within 1 m of the door handle. When unlocking from the driver door, the first press unlocks that door; press again within five seconds to unlock all passenger doors. This can be changed.

See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation* ⇨ *24*.

Liftgate

Manual Liftgate Operation

Unlock the vehicle before opening the liftgate. Alternately, have the RKE transmitter within 1 m of the liftgate handle.

To open the liftgate, press the touch pad under the liftgate handle and lift up.

Do not press the touch pad while closing the liftgate. This may cause the liftgate to be unlatched.

Power Liftgate Operation

To operate the power liftgate, the vehicle must be in P (Park). The tail lamps flash when the power liftgate moves.



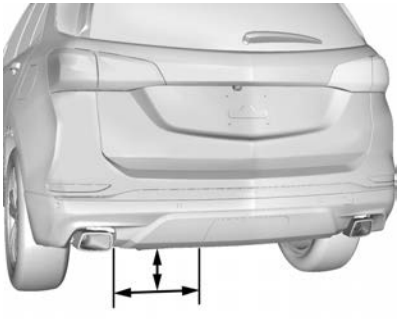
Choose the power liftgate mode by turning the dial on the switch to either the 3/4 or MAX position.

Press or press x2 on the RKE transmitter twice quickly to open or close the liftgate.

Alternatively, to open the liftgate, press the touchpad on the underside of the liftgate handle after the doors have been unlocked. If they are locked, the RKE transmitter needs to be within 1 m of the handle. To close, press on the bottom of the liftgate, next to the pull cup.

Hands-Free Liftgate

The liftgate can be operated when the RKE transmitter is within 1 m.

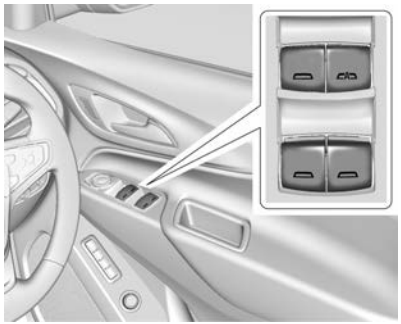


Kick Zone

The 'kick zone' is under the rear bumper, between the left exhaust pipe and the number plate. To operate the hands-free liftgate, move your foot towards the 'kick zone' under the rear bumper and then pull it back in one swift motion

See *Liftgate* ⇨ *33*.

Windows



Power windows work when the ignition is on, in Accessory mode, or in Retained Accessory Power (RAP). See *Retained Accessory Power (RAP)* ⇨ *218*.

Using the window switch, press to open or pull to close the window.

The windows may be temporarily disabled if they are used repeatedly within a short time.

See *Power Windows* ⇨ *42*.

Seat Adjustment

Manual Front Seats



To adjust a manual seat:

1. Pull the handle at the front of the seat.
2. Slide the seat to the desired position and release the handle.
3. Try to move the seat back and forth to be sure it is locked in place.

Seat Height Adjuster



Move the lever up or down to manually raise or lower the seat.

See *Seat Adjustment* ⇨ *50*.

Reclining Seat Backs



To recline the manual seat back:

1. Lift the lever.
2. Move the seat back to the desired position, then release the lever to lock the seat back in place.
3. Push and pull on the seat back to make sure it is locked.

To return the seat back to an upright position:

1. Lift the lever fully without applying pressure to the seat back, and the seat back returns to the upright position.
2. Push and pull on the seat back to make sure it is locked.

See *Reclining Seatbacks* ⇨ *51*.

Power Driver Seat



To adjust a power driver seat, if equipped:

- Move the seat forward or rearward by sliding the control forward or rearward.
- Raise or lower the front part of the seat cushion by moving the front of the control up or down.
- Raise or lower the entire seat by moving the rear of the control up or down.

See *Power Seat Adjustment* ⇨ *51*.



To recline a power seat back, if equipped:

- Tilt the top of the control rearward to recline.
- Tilt the top of the control forward to raise.

See *Reclining Seatbacks* ⇨ *51*.

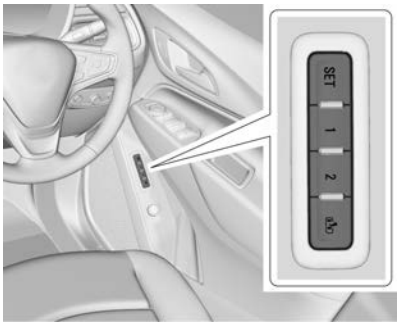
Lumbar Adjustment



If equipped, press and hold the control switch forward or rearward to increase or decrease lumbar support.

See *Lumbar Adjustment* ⇨ *51*.

Memory Features



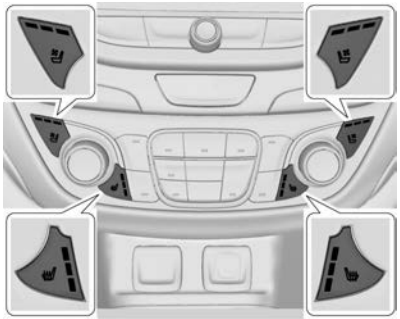
If equipped, memory seats allow two drivers to store and recall their unique seat positions for driving the vehicle, and a shared exit position for getting out of the vehicle. For automatic memory recalls, memory positions are linked to both RKE transmitters.

To manually recall these positions, press and hold 1, 2, or on the memory seat switch until the saved position is reached.

When Auto Memory Recall is enabled in vehicle personalisation, the positions previously stored to memory buttons and the RKE transmitters are recalled when the ignition is changed from off to on or Accessory mode.

When Easy Exit Options is enabled in the personalisation menu, the feature automatically recalls the previously stored exit position when exiting the vehicle. See *Memory Seats* ⇨ *52*.

Heated and Ventilated Seats



If available, the driver or front passenger seats can heated or cooled. To operate, the engine must be running.

To heat the driver or passenger seat cushion and seat back, press or . Indicator lights on the button show the current setting.

To ventilate the driver or passenger seat cushion and seat back, press or . Indicator lights on the button show the current setting.

Press the heated or ventilated seat button once for the highest setting. With each subsequent press of the button, the heating or ventilation setting will reduce and then turn off. Three lights indicate the highest setting and one indicates the lowest.

See *Heated and Ventilated Front Seats* ⇨ *54*.

Head Restraint Adjustment

Do not drive until the head restraints for all occupants are installed and adjusted properly.

To achieve a comfortable seating position, change the seatback recline angle as little as necessary while keeping the seat and the head restraint height in the proper position.

See *Head Restraints* ⇨ *46* and *Seat Adjustment* ⇨ *50*.

Seat Belts



Pull the metal tongue across your body and insert it into the buckle until it clicks into place.

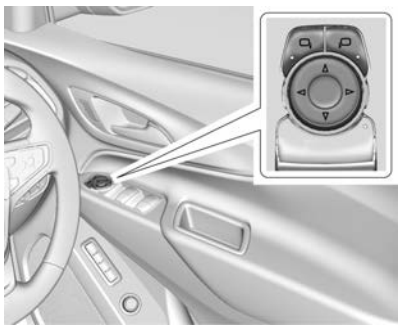
The belt should not be twisted. It should lie flat and fit firmly across your hips.

To remove, press the release button on the buckle and allow the seat belt to retract.

See *How to Wear Seat Belts Properly* ⇨ *59*.

Mirror Adjustment

Exterior



To adjust the mirrors:

1. Press ◻ or ◻ to choose the driver or passenger mirror.
2. Press the arrows on the control pad to move the selected mirror in the desired direction.

See *Power Mirrors* ⇨ *40*.

Interior

Adjustment

Adjust the rear view mirror to clearly view the area behind the vehicle.

Manual Rear view Mirror

If equipped, push the tab forward for daytime use and pull it rearward for night time use to avoid glare of the headlamps from behind. See *Manual Rearview Mirror* ⇨ *41*.

Automatic Dimming Rear View Mirror

If equipped, the mirror will automatically reduce the glare of the headlamps from behind. The dimming feature comes on when the vehicle is started. See *Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror* ⇨ *41*.

Steering Wheel Adjustment

⚠ Warning

Do not attempt to adjust the steering wheel while driving.



To adjust the steering wheel:

1. Move the lever down.
2. To adjust, move the steering wheel up or down.
3. Pull or push the steering wheel closer or away from you.
4. Push the lever up to lock the steering wheel in place.

   Ensure the steering wheel is locked in position before driving.

Interior Lighting

Dome Lamps



The dome lamp controls are in the overhead console.

To operate, press the following buttons:

OFF : Press to turn off the dome lamps when a door is open. An indicator light on the button will turn on when the dome lamp override is activated. Press OFF again to deactivate this feature and the indicator light will turn off. The dome lamps will come on when doors are opened.

ON/OFF : Press to turn the dome lamps on manually.

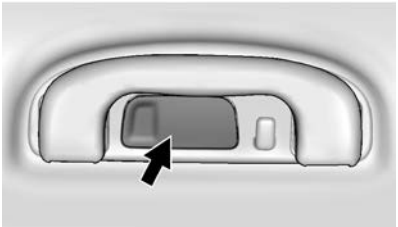
Reading Lamps

There are reading lamps in the overhead console and over the rear passenger doors. These lamps come on when any door is opened.



Front Reading Lamps

Press the lamp lenses to turn the front reading lamps on or off.



Rear Reading Lamps

Press the lamp lens to turn the rear passenger reading lamps on or off.

See *Instrument Panel Illumination Control* ⇨ *126*.

Exterior Lighting



The exterior lamp control is located on the instrument panel on the outboard side of the steering column.

There are four positions.

⏻ **:** Turns the exterior lamps off and deactivates the AUTO mode. Turn to ⏻ again to reactivate the AUTO mode.

AUTO : Turns the exterior lamps on and off automatically depending on outside lighting.

: Turns on the park lamps including all lamps, except the headlamps.

: Turns on the headlamps together with the park lamps and instrument panel lights.

See *Exterior Lamp Controls* ⇨ *121*.

Windshield Wiper/Washer

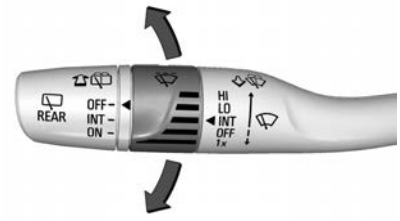
Intermittent Wipers



With the ignition on or in Accessory mode, move the windscreen wiper lever to select the wiper speed.

HI : Fast wipes.

LO : Slow wipes.



INT : Intermittent wipes. Turn the band up for more frequent wipes or down for less frequent wipes.

OFF : Turns the system off.

1X : Single wipe. Briefly move the wiper lever down. For several wipes, hold the wiper lever down.

: Pull the windscreen wiper lever toward you to spray windscreen washer fluid and activate the wipers.

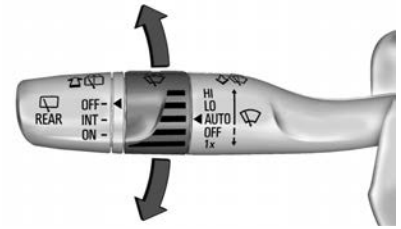
Rain Sensing Wipers



With the ignition on or in Accessory mode, move the windscreen wiper lever to select the wiper speed.

HI : Fast wipes.

LO : Slow wipes.



AUTO : Rain sensing is on. Automatic wipes with the rain sensor. Turn the band up for higher sensitivity or down for lower sensitivity.

OFF : Turns the system off.

1X : Single wipe. Briefly move the wiper lever down. For several wipes, hold the wiper lever down.

: Pull the windscreen wiper lever toward you to spray windscreen washer fluid and activate the wipers.

Rear Window Wiper/Washer



Turn the end of the windscreen wiper lever to operate the rear window wiper/washer.

OFF : Turns the system off.

INT : Intermittent wipes.

ON : Slow wipes.

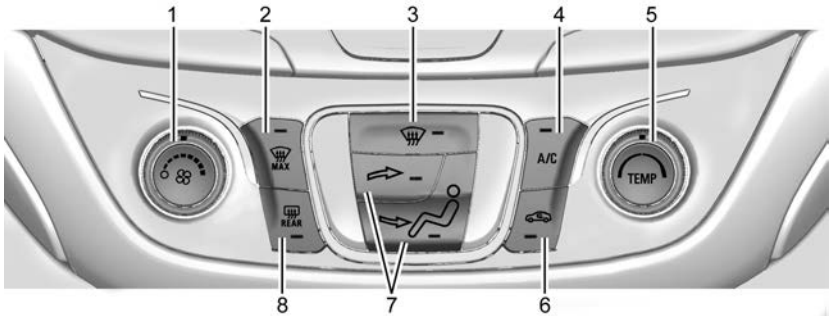
: Push the windscreen wiper lever forward to spray washer fluid on the rear window. The lever automatically returns to its original position when released.

See *Windshield Wiper/Washer* ⇨ *83* and *Rear Window Wiper/Washer* ⇨ *85*.

Climate Controls

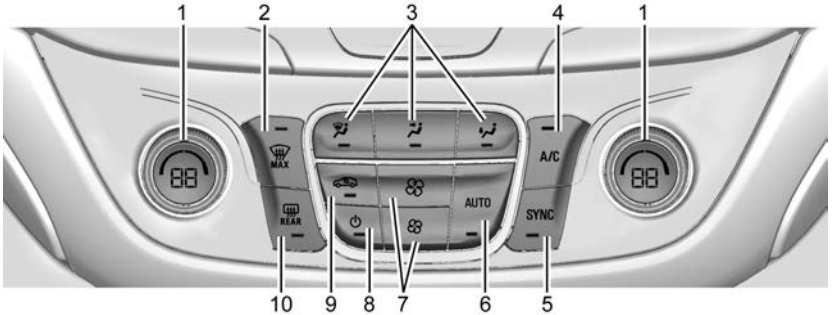
The vehicle's heating, cooling, defrosting, and ventilation can be controlled with these systems.

Air Conditioning System



1. Fan Control
2. MAX Defrost
3. Defrost/Demist
4. A/C (Air Conditioning)
5. Temperature Control
6. Recirculation
7. Air Delivery Mode Controls
8. Rear Window Demister

Dual Automatic Climate Control System

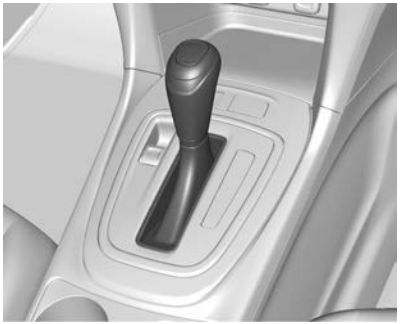


1. Driver and Passenger Temperature Controls
2. MAX Defrost
3. Air Delivery Mode Controls
4. A/C (Air Conditioning)
5. SYNC (Synchronised Temperature)
6. AUTO (Automatic Operation)
7. Fan Control
8. Power
9. Recirculation
10. Rear Window Demister

See *Air Conditioning System* ⇨ *204* or *Dual Automatic Climate Control System* ⇨ *206*.

Transmission

Automatic Transmission



P : Park.

R : Reverse.

N : Neutral.

D : Drive.

L : Electronic Range Select (ERS) mode. ERS, or manual mode, allows for the selection of the range of gear positions. Use this mode when driving downhill to limit the top gear and vehicle speed. See *Manual Mode* ⇨ *227*.

The vehicle has an automatic transmission shift lock control system. You must press the brake pedal and then press the shift lever button before shifting from P when the ignition is on. See *Automatic Transmission* ⇨ *226*.

Manual Transmission



Select reverse gear while the vehicle is stationary.

1. Press the clutch pedal to the floor.
2. Wait 3 seconds.
3. Left the ring on the shift lever.
4. Move the shift lever to position **R**.

If the gear does not engage:

1. Return the shift lever to the neutral position.
2. Release the clutch pedal.
3. Press the clutch pedal again and repeat gear selection.

See *Manual Transmission* ⇨ *228*.

Parking

1. Apply the electric parking brake.
2. Automatic transmission: Select position **P**.

   Manual transmission: If facing uphill or on flat ground, select 1st gear. If facing downhill, select reverse gear.
3. Close all windows.
4. Turn the ignition off and remove the RKE transmitter from the vehicle.
5. Lock the doors, liftgate and fuel filler door by pressing on the RKE transmitter, or the button on a door handle while the transmitter is within 1 m of the handle.

See *Electric Parking Brake* ⇨ *231*.

Getting Started

Check Before Starting

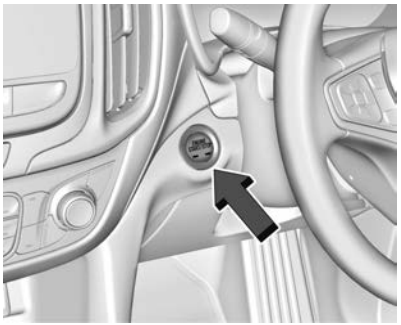
- Check the windows, mirrors and lamps are clean.
- Visually check tyre inflation. Check the tyre pressures each week.
- Ensure all doors are closed and secured.
- Position your seat for comfortable driving.
- Adjust rear view mirrors.
- Fasten seat belts.
- Check the warning indicators illuminate when turning the ignition on.

Starting the Engine

The vehicle has an ENGINE START/STOP button.

⚠ Warning

Do not switch the engine off while the vehicle is moving as there will not be any power assist for the brakes.



- The Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter must be in the vehicle.
- Manual transmission: Press the clutch pedal.
- Automatic transmission: Press the brake pedal and move the shift lever to P or N.
- Press the ENGINE START/ STOP button.

  The LED will illuminate.
- To switch the engine off, press the ENGINE START/STOP button again.

See *Starting the Engine* ⇨ *217*.

Keys, Doors, and Windows

Keys and Locks
Keys 23
Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System 24
Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation 24
Remote Vehicle Start 28
Door Locks 29
Automatic Door Locks 31
Lockout Protection 32
Safety Locks 32

Doors
Liftgate 33

Vehicle Security
Vehicle Alarm System 38
Immobiliser Operation 39

Exterior Mirrors
Power Mirrors 40
Folding Mirrors 40
Heated Mirrors 41

Interior Mirrors
Interior Rear view Mirrors 41
Manual Rearview Mirror 41
Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror 41

Windows
Windows 42
Power Windows 42
Sun Visors 44

Roof
Sunroof 44

Keys and Locks

Keys

⚠ Warning

Leaving children in a vehicle with a Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter is dangerous and children or others could be seriously injured or killed. They could operate the power windows or other controls or make the vehicle move. The windows will function with the RKE transmitter in the vehicle, and children or others could be caught in the path of a closing window. Do not leave children in a vehicle with an RKE transmitter.

A mechanical key that is part of the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter can be used in an emergency for all locks.



Remove the mechanical key by pressing the button on the side of the RKE transmitter near the bottom and pull the key out. Never pull the key out without pressing the button.

See your dealer if a new transmitter is needed.

Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System

If there is a decrease in the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) operating range:

- Check the distance. The transmitter may be too far from the vehicle.
- Check the location. Other vehicles or objects may be blocking the signal.
- Check the transmitter's battery. See “Battery Replacement” later in this section.
- If the transmitter is still not working correctly, see your dealer or a qualified technician for service.

Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation

The keyless entry system allows for vehicle entry when the transmitter is within 1 m. See “Keyless Entry Operation” later in this section.

The RKE transmitter may operate up to 60 m from the vehicle.

Other conditions can affect the performance of the transmitter. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System ⇨ 24*.



With Remote Start and Power Liftgate Shown

The following may be available:

: Press to lock all doors, the liftgate and the fuel filler door. The turn signal indicators may flash and/or the horn may sound on the second press to indicate locking. See *Vehicle Personalisation ⇨ 112*.

If the driver door is open when is pressed and Unlocked Door Anti-Lockout is enabled through vehicle personalisation, all doors will lock and then the driver door will

immediately unlock. If a passenger door is open when is pressed, all doors lock.

Pressing also arms the theft-deterrent system. See *Vehicle Alarm System* ⇨ *38*.

: Press to unlock the driver door and the fuel filler door. Press again within five seconds to unlock all doors and the liftgate. The RKE transmitter can be programmed to unlock all doors on the first button press. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *112*. The turn signal indicators may flash to indicate unlocking has occurred. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *112*. Pressing also disarms the theft-deterrent system. See *Vehicle Alarm System* ⇨ *38*.

If equipped, press and hold for several seconds to open the windows. Windows will not operate unless remote window operation is enabled. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *112*.

: Press twice quickly to open or close the power liftgate, if equipped. Press again to stop the power liftgate.

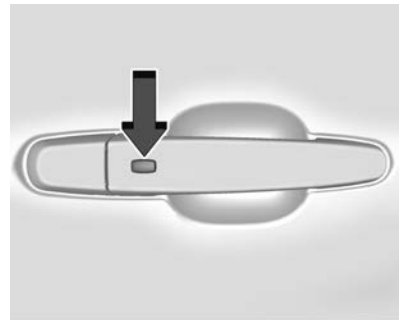
: If equipped, first press and release then immediately press and hold for at least four seconds to start the engine from outside the vehicle using the RKE transmitter. See *Remote Vehicle Start* ⇨ *28*.

Keyless Entry Operation

With the keyless entry system, you can lock and unlock the doors and access the liftgate without removing the RKE transmitter from your pocket or purse, etc. The RKE transmitter should be within 1 m of the liftgate or door being opened.

The fuel door will also lock/unlock at this time.

Keyless Unlocking/Locking



When the doors are locked and the RKE transmitter is within 1 m of the door handle, pressing the lock/unlock button on a door handle will unlock the doors. Pressing the lock/unlock button will cause the doors to lock if any of the following occur:

- The doors are unlocked.
- Any vehicle door has opened and all doors are now closed.

Keyless entry can be programmed to unlock all doors on the first lock/unlock press, or the driver's door on

the first press and then all doors on a second press. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *112*.

Passive Locking

The vehicle can lock several seconds after all doors are closed if the ignition is off and at least one RKE transmitter has been removed or none remain in the interior.

The fuel door will also lock at this time.

If other electronic devices interfere with the RKE transmitter signal, the vehicle may not detect the RKE transmitter inside the vehicle. If passive locking is enabled, the doors may lock with the RKE transmitter inside the vehicle. Do not leave the RKE transmitter in an unattended vehicle.

To customise the doors to automatically lock when exiting the vehicle, see “Remote Lock, Unlock, Start” under *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *112*.

Temporary Disable of Passive Locking

Temporarily disable the passive locking by pressing and holding on the interior door switch with a door open for at least four seconds, or until three chimes are heard. Passive locking will then remain disabled until on the interior door is pressed, or until the vehicle is turned on.

Remote Left in Vehicle Alert

When the ignition is turned off and an RKE transmitter is left in the vehicle, the horn will chirp three times after all doors are closed. To turn on or off, see *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *112*.

Remote No Longer in Vehicle

If the ignition is on with a door open, and then all doors are closed, the vehicle will check for RKE transmitter(s) inside. If an RKE transmitter is not detected, the DIC will display **No Remote Detected** and the horn will chirp three times. This occurs only once each time the vehicle is driven.

To turn on or off see *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *112*.

Keyless Liftgate Opening

When the doors are locked, press the touch pad on the liftgate handle to open the liftgate if the RKE transmitter is within 1 m.

Programming Transmitters to the Vehicle

Only RKE transmitters programmed to the vehicle will work. If a transmitter is lost or stolen, a replacement can be purchased and programmed through your dealer. The vehicle can be reprogrammed so that lost or stolen transmitters no longer work.

Your vehicle can have up to eight transmitters programmed to it.

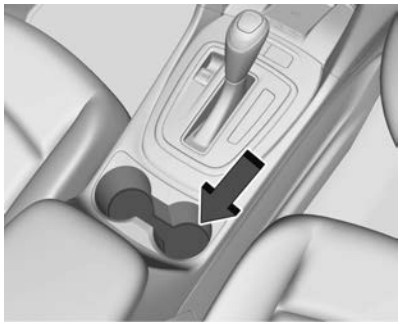
Starting the Vehicle with a Low Transmitter Battery

When the vehicle is started, if the transmitter battery is weak, the DIC may display the following messages:

- **No Remote Detected**, or
- **No Remote Key Was Detected Place Key In Transmitter Pocket Then Start Your Vehicle**.

The **Replace Battery In Remote Key** message may also be displayed at this time.

To start the vehicle:



1. Place the transmitter in the cupholder.
2. With the vehicle in P (Park) or N (Neutral), press the brake pedal and the ENGINE START/ STOP button.

   Replace the transmitter battery as soon as possible.

Battery Replacement

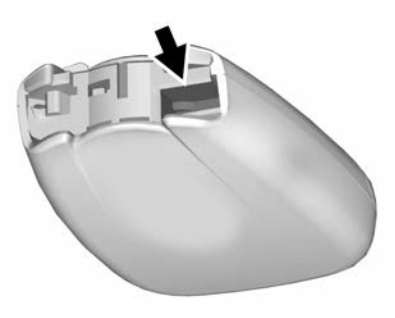
Replace the battery if the **Replace Battery In Remote Key** message displays in the DIC.

Caution
When replacing the battery, do not touch any of the circuitry on the transmitter. Static from your body could damage the transmitter.

The battery is not rechargeable. To replace the battery:



1. Press the button on the side of the transmitter and remove the mechanical key.



2. Separate the two halves of the transmitter using a flat tool inserted into the area near the key slot.



3. Remove the battery by pushing on the battery and sliding it toward the bottom of the transmitter.
4. Insert the new battery, positive side facing the back cover. Push the battery down until it is held in place. Replace with a CR2032 or equivalent battery.
5. Snap the battery cover back on to the transmitter.

Remote Vehicle Start

The vehicle may have this feature that allows you to start the engine from outside the vehicle.

: This button will be on the RKE transmitter if the vehicle has remote start.

The climate control system will use the previous settings during a remote start. The rear demist may come on during remote start based on cold ambient conditions. The rear demist indicator light does not come on during remote start.

If the vehicle has heated and ventilated front seats, they may come on during a remote start. See *Heated and Ventilated Front Seats* ⇨ *54*.

Certain conditions can affect the performance of the transmitter. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System* ⇨ *24*.

Starting the Engine Using Remote Start

1. Press and release on the RKE transmitter.
2. Immediately press and hold for at least four seconds or until the turn signal lamps flash. The turn signal lamps flashing confirms the request to remote start the vehicle has been received.

   The park lamps will turn on and remain on as long as the engine is running. The vehicle's doors will be locked.
3. Unlock the vehicle and press the ENGINE START/STOP button before driving.

The engine will shut off after 10 minutes unless a run time extension is perform or the ignition is turned on.

Extending Engine Run Time

For a 10 minute extension, after 30 seconds repeat Steps 1 and 2 while the engine is still running. The remote start can be extended once.

When the remote start is extended, the second 10 minutes will be added.

For example, if the engine has been running for 10 minutes, and 10 minutes are added, the engine will run for a total of 20 minutes.

A maximum of two remote starts or a start with an extension are allowed between ignition cycles.

The vehicle must be started and then turned off before the remote start procedure can be used again.

Cancelling a Remote Start

To cancel a remote start and turn off the engine, do one of the following:

- Press and hold ⟳ until the park lamps turn off.
- Turn on the hazard warning flashers.
- Press the ENGINE START/ STOP button twice.

Conditions in Which Remote Start Will Not Work

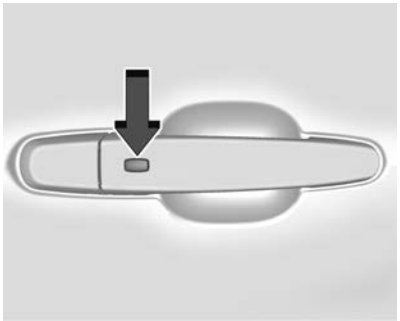
The remote vehicle start feature will not operate if:

- A transmitter is in the vehicle.
- The bonnet is not closed.
- The hazard warning flashers are on.
- There is an emission control system malfunction.
- The engine coolant temperature is too high.
- The oil pressure is low.
- Two remote vehicle starts or a start with an extension have already been used.
- The vehicle is not in P (Park).

Door Locks

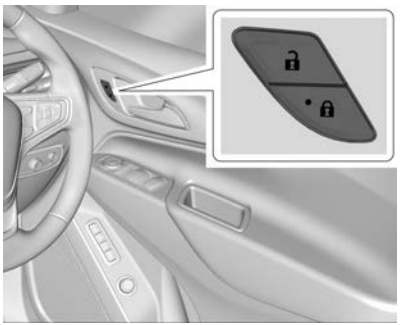
To lock or unlock the doors from the outside:

- Press 🔒 or 🔓 on the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation* ⇨ *24*.



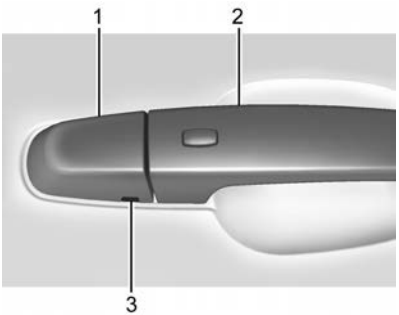
- Press the button on a door handle. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation* ⇨ *24*.
- Use the mechanical key in the driver door. The key lock cylinder is covered with a cap. See “Emergency Door Key Lock Cylinder Access” further in this Section.

To lock or unlock the doors from the inside:



- Press or on the door lock switch to lock or unlock the doors. The indicator light will come on when the doors are locked.
- Push down on the door lock knob to lock a door.
- Pull the door handle once to unlock the door. Pull the handle again to unlatch it.

Emergency Door Key Lock Cylinder Access



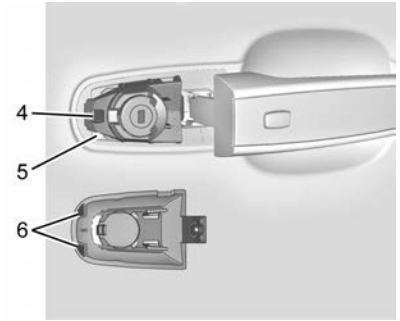
In a situation such as the RKE transmitter battery is depleted or there is a fault, the door can be unlocked / locked with the mechanical key.

To access the driver door key lock cylinder:

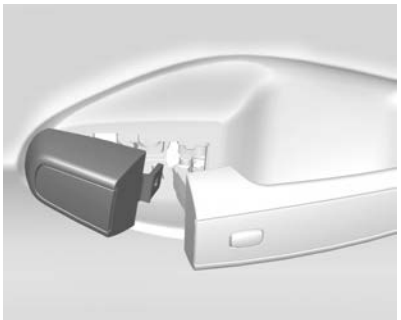
1. Pull the door handle (2) to the open position and hold it open until cap removal is complete.
2. Insert the key into the slot (3) on the bottom of the cap (1) and lift the key upward.
3. Move the cap rearward and remove.
4. Use the key in the cylinder.

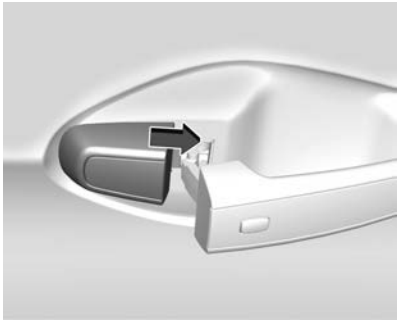
To replace the cap:

1. Pull the door handle to the open position and hold it open until cap installation is complete.



2. Insert the two tabs (6) at the back of the cap between the seal (5) and the metal base (4).





3. Slide the cap forward and press the forward edge to install the cap in place.
4. Release the door handle.
5. Check the cap is secure.

Free-Turning Locks

The door key lock cylinder turns freely when either the wrong key is used, or the correct key is not fully inserted. The free-turning door lock feature prevents the lock from being forced open. To reset the lock, turn it to the vertical position with the correct key fully inserted. Remove the key and insert it again. If this does not reset the lock, turn the key halfway around in the cylinder and repeat the reset procedure.

Automatic Door Locks

The doors will lock automatically when all doors are closed, the ignition is on, and the vehicle is shifted out of P (Park) for automatic transmissions, or when the vehicle speed is above 13 km/h for manual transmissions.

If a vehicle door is unlocked and then opened and closed, the doors will relock either when your foot is removed from the brake or the vehicle speed becomes faster than 13 km/h.

To unlock the doors:

- Press on the power door lock switch.
- Shift into P (Park).
- If equipped with a manual transmission, turn the ignition off when parked.

Automatic door unlocking can be programmed. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *112*.

Lockout Protection

If the ignition is on or in Accessory mode and the power door lock switch is pressed with the driver door open, all the doors will lock and only the driver door will unlock.

If the ignition is off and locking is requested while a door is open, when all doors are closed the vehicle will check for RKE transmitters inside. If an RKE transmitter is detected and the number of RKE transmitters inside has not reduced, the driver door will unlock and the horn will chirp three times.

Lockout Protection can be manually overridden by pressing and holding on the power door lock switch.

Unlocked Door Anti-Lockout

If Unlocked Door Anti-Lockout is turned on and the ignition is off, the driver door is open, and locking is requested, all the doors will lock and the driver door will remain unlocked. Press the button again to lock the driver door. The Unlocked Door Anti-Lockout feature can be turned on or off. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *112*.

Safety Locks

Child Safety Locks



The rear door child safety locks prevent passengers from opening the rear doors from inside the vehicle.

The safety lock is on the inside edge of the rear doors. To use the safety lock:

1. Move the lever to the Lock position.
2. Close the door.
3. Do the same for the other rear door.

To open a rear door when the safety lock is on:

1. Unlock the door by activating the inside handle, by pressing the power door lock switch, or by using the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter.
2. Open the door from the outside.

When the safety lock is enabled, adults and older children will not be able to open the rear door from the inside. Cancel the safety locks to enable the doors to open from the inside.

To cancel the safety lock:

1. Unlock the door and open it from the outside.
2. Move the lever to the Unlock position. Do the same for the other door.

Doors

Liftgate

⚠ Warning

Exhaust gases can enter the vehicle if it is driven with the liftgate open or ajar. Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide (CO), which cannot be seen or smelled. It can cause unconsciousness and even death.

If the vehicle must be driven with the liftgate open or ajar:

- Close all windows.
- Fully open the air outlets on and under the instrument panel.
- Adjust the climate control system to a setting that brings in only outside air and set the fan speed to the highest setting. See “Climate Control Systems”.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

- If the vehicle is equipped with a power liftgate, disable the power liftgate function.

See *Engine Exhaust* ⇨ *221*.

Caution

To avoid damage to the liftgate or liftgate glass, make sure the area above and behind the liftgate is clear before opening it.

Manual Liftgate

To unlock the liftgate, press on the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter twice within five seconds, or have the RKE transmitter within 1 m or the rear of the vehicle. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation* ⇨ *24*.



To open the liftgate, press the touch pad under the liftgate handle and lift up.

To lower and close the liftgate, use the pull cup on the bottom inside edge.

Do not press the touch pad while closing the liftgate as this may cause the liftgate to be unlatched.

Always close the liftgate before driving.

Power Liftgate Operation

⚠ Warning

You or others could be injured if caught in the path of the power liftgate. Make sure there is no one in the way of the liftgate as it is opening and closing.

Caution

Driving with an open and unsecured liftgate may result in damage to the power liftgate components.

To operate the power liftgate, the vehicle must be in P (Park) for automatic transmission or vehicle speed must be under 3 km/h for manual transmission. The tail lamps flash when the power liftgate moves.



Three power liftgate operating modes are available:

- MAX: Opens to maximum height.
- 3/4: Opens to a reduced height that can be set from 3/4 to fully open. Use this mode to prevent the liftgate from opening into overhead obstructions such as a garage door or roof-mounted cargo. The liftgate can be manually opened all the way.
- OFF: Opens manually only.

To open the power liftgate, first select MAX or 3/4 mode. Then either:

- Press x2 twice quickly on the RKE transmitter until the liftgate moves.
- Press on the driver door. The driver door must either be unlocked or locked without the security armed.
- Press the touch pad on the underside of the liftgate handle after unlocking all doors. The RKE transmitter must be within 1 m.

To close the power liftgate, either:



- Press on the bottom of the liftgate next to the pull cup to close.
- Press x2 twice quickly on the RKE transmitter until the liftgate moves.

Press any liftgate button or the touch pad while the liftgate is moving to stop it. Pressing again restarts the operation in the reverse direction. The touch pad on the liftgate handle cannot be used to close the liftgate.

Caution

Manually forcing the liftgate to open or close during a power cycle can damage the vehicle. Allow the power cycle to complete.

The power liftgate may be temporarily disabled under extreme low temperatures, or after repeated power cycling over a short period of time. If this occurs, the liftgate can still be operated manually.

If the vehicle is accelerated before the liftgate has completed moving, the liftgate may stop or reverse direction. Make sure the liftgate is closed and latched before driving.

Falling Liftgate Detection

If the power liftgate automatically closes after a power opening cycle, it indicates that the system is reacting to excess weight on the liftgate or a possible support strut failure. A repetitive chime will sound while the falling liftgate detection

feature is operating. Remove any excess weight. If the liftgate continues to automatically close after opening, see your dealer for service before using the power liftgate.

Interfering with the power liftgate motion or manually closing the liftgate too quickly after power opening may resemble a support strut failure. This could also activate the falling liftgate detection feature. Allow the liftgate to complete its operation and wait a few seconds before manually closing the liftgate.

Obstacle Detection Features

If the liftgate encounters an obstacle during a power open or close cycle, the liftgate will automatically reverse direction and move a short distance away from the obstacle. After removing the obstruction, the power liftgate operation can be used again. If the liftgate encounters multiple obstacles on the same power cycle, the power function will deactivate. After removing the obstructions, manually close the liftgate which will allow normal power operation functions to resume.

If the vehicle is locked while the liftgate is closing, and an obstacle is encountered that prevents the liftgate from completely closing, the horn will sound as an alert that the liftgate did not close.

Pinch sensors are on the side edges of the liftgate. If an object is caught between the liftgate and the vehicle and presses against this sensor, the liftgate will reverse direction and then stop. The liftgate will remain open until it is activated again or closed manually.

Setting the 3/4 Mode

To change the position the liftgate stops at when opening:

1. Select 3/4 mode and power open the liftgate.
2. Stop the liftgate movement at the desired height by pressing any liftgate button. Manually adjust the liftgate position if needed.
3. Press and hold next to the pull cup on the outside of the liftgate until the turn signals flash and a beep sounds. This indicates the setting has been recorded.

The liftgate cannot be set below a minimum programmable height. If there is no light flash or sound, then the height adjustment may be too low.

Manual Operation

Select OFF to manually operate the liftgate. See “Manual Liftgate” at the beginning of this section.

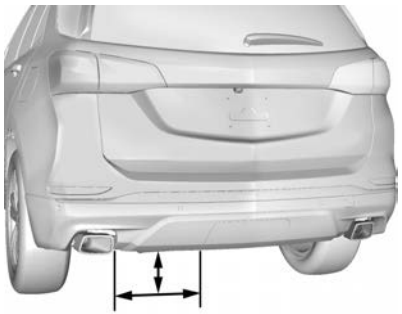
Caution
Attempting to move the liftgate too quickly and with excessive force may result in damage to the vehicle.

Hands-Free Operation

The liftgate may be operated with a kicking motion under the rear bumper between the left exhaust pipe and the number plate.

The liftgate will not operate if the RKE transmitter is not within 1 m.

The hands-free feature will not work while the liftgate is moving. To stop the liftgate while in motion use one of the liftgate buttons.



Kick Zone

The 'kick zone' is under the rear bumper, between the left exhaust pipe and the number plate. To operate the hands-free liftgate, move your foot towards the 'kick zone' under the rear bumper and then pull it back in one swift motion

Caution

Splashing water may cause the liftgate to open. Keep the RKE transmitter away from the rear bumper detection area or turn the liftgate mode to OFF when cleaning or working near the rear bumper to avoid accidental opening.

- Do not sweep your foot side to side.
- Do not keep your foot under the bumper; the liftgate will not activate.
- Do not touch the liftgate until it has stopped moving.
- This feature may be temporarily disabled under some conditions. If the liftgate does not respond to the kick, open or close the liftgate by another method or start the vehicle. The feature will be re-enabled.

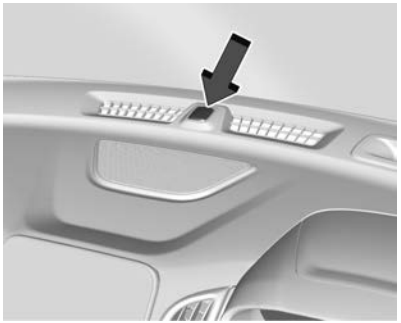
When closing the liftgate using this feature, there will be a short delay. The tail lamps will flash and a chime will sound. Step away from the liftgate before it starts moving.

Settings for the hands-free liftgate operation can be changed. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *112*.

Vehicle Security

Vehicle Alarm System

This vehicle has an anti-theft alarm system.



The indicator light, on the instrument panel near the windscreen, indicates the status of the system:

Off : Alarm system is disarmed.

On Solid : Vehicle is secured during the delay to arm the system.

Fast Flash : Vehicle is unsecured. A door, the bonnet, or the liftgate is open.

Slow Flash : Alarm system is armed.

Arming the Alarm System

1. Turn off the vehicle.
2. Lock the vehicle:
   - Using the RKE transmitter.
   - Pressing the lock/unlock button on an outside door handle while the RKE transmitter is within 1 m of the door handle.
3. After 30 seconds the alarm system will arm, and the indicator light will begin to slowly flash indicating the alarm system is operating. Pressing on the RKE transmitter a second time will bypass the 30 second delay and immediately arm the alarm system.

The vehicle alarm system will not arm if the doors are locked with the mechanical key.

If the driver door is opened without first unlocking with the RKE transmitter or pressing a button on an outside door handle while the RKE transmitter is within 1 m of the door handle, the horn will chirp and the lights will flash to indicate pre-alarm. If the vehicle is not started, or the door is not unlocked by pressing on the RKE transmitter, or pressing a button on an outside door handle while the RKE transmitter is within 1 m of the door handle during the 10 second pre-alarm, the alarm will be activated.

If another door, the bonnet, or the liftgate is opened without first disarming the system, the turn signals will flash and the horn will sound for about 30 seconds. The alarm system will then re-arm to monitor for the next unauthorised event.

Disarming the Alarm System

To disarm the alarm system or turn off the alarm if it has been activated:

- Press on the RKE transmitter.
- Press the lock/unlock button on an outside door handle while the RKE transmitter is within 1 m of the door handle.
- Start the vehicle.

To avoid setting off the alarm by accident:

- Lock the vehicle after all occupants have left the vehicle and all doors are closed.
- Always unlock a door with the RKE transmitter or press a button on an outside door handle while the RKE transmitter is within 1 m of the door handle.

Unlocking the driver door with the mechanical key will not disarm the system or turn off the alarm.

How to Detect a Tamper Condition

If is pressed on the RKE transmitter and the horn chirps and the lights flash three times, an alarm occurred previously while the alarm system was armed.

If the alarm has been activated, a message will appear on the DIC.

Immobiliser Operation

This vehicle has a passive immobiliser system.

The system does not have to be manually armed or disarmed.

The vehicle is automatically immobilised when the vehicle is turned off.

The immobilisation system is disarmed when the engine is started or the ignition is in Accessory mode and a valid RKE transmitter is present in the vehicle.

The RKE transmitters are matched to your vehicle. Only a correctly matched RKE transmitter will start the vehicle. If the transmitter is ever damaged, you may not be able to start your vehicle.



When trying to start the vehicle, the security light may come on briefly when the ignition is turned on.

If the engine does not start and the security light stays on, there is a problem with the system. Turn the ignition off and try again.

If the vehicle will not change ignition modes, and the RKE transmitter appears to be undamaged, try another transmitter. Or, you may try placing the transmitter in the cup-holder. A **No Remote Detected** message may display. Refer to “Starting the Vehicle with a Low Transmitter Battery” in *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation* ⇨ *24*.

If the ignition mode will not change with the other transmitter or in the cup-holder, your vehicle needs service.

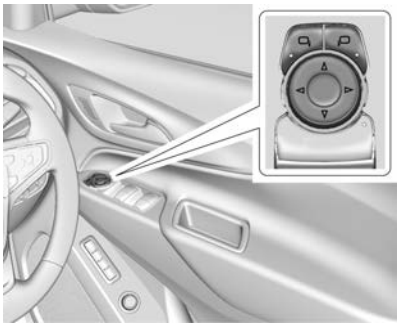
If the ignition does change modes, the first transmitter may be faulty. See your dealer who can service the immobiliser system and have a new RKE transmitter programmed to the vehicle.

It is possible for up to eight transmitters to be programmed for the vehicle. To program additional transmitters, see “Programming Transmitters to the Vehicle” under *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation* ⇨ *24*.

Do not leave RKE transmitters in the vehicle.

Exterior Mirrors

Power Mirrors



To adjust the mirrors:

1. Press L or R to choose the driver or passenger mirror.
2. Press the arrows on the control pad to move the selected mirror in the desired direction.

⚠ Warning

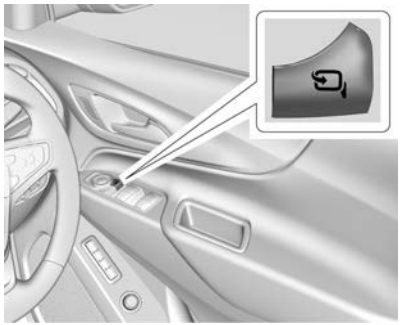
The exterior mirrors are convex shaped to provide a wider view. Objects in this mirror may be closer than they appear.

Folding Mirrors

Manual Folding Mirrors

The exterior mirrors can be manually folded inward to prevent damage when the vehicle is parked. Push the mirror outward to return it to the original position before driving.

Power Folding Mirrors



If equipped, the exterior mirrors can be folded inward to prevent damage when the vehicle is parked. Press to power fold the mirrors. Press again to unfold before driving.

Heated Mirrors

If equipped, the heated outside mirrors turn on when the rear window demister is on and help to clear fog or frost from the surface of the mirrors.

REAR : This button is on the climate control panel.

See “Rear Window Demister” under *Dual Automatic Climate Control System* ⇨ *206*.

Interior Mirrors

Interior Rear view Mirrors

Adjust the rear view mirror for a clear view of the area behind the vehicle.

Do not spray glass cleaner directly on the mirror. Use a soft towel dampened with water.

Manual Rearview Mirror

If equipped, push the tab forward for daytime use and pull it rearward for night-time use to avoid glare of the headlamps from behind.

Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror

If equipped, automatic dimming reduces the glare of headlamps from behind. The dimming feature comes on when the vehicle is started.

Windows

⚠ Warning

Never leave a child, a helpless adult, or a pet alone in a vehicle, especially with the windows closed in warm or hot weather. They can be overcome by the extreme heat and suffer permanent injuries or even death from heat stroke.

The vehicle aerodynamics are designed to improve fuel economy performance. This may result in a pulsing sound when either rear window is down and the front windows are up. To reduce the sound, open either a front window or the sunroof, if equipped.

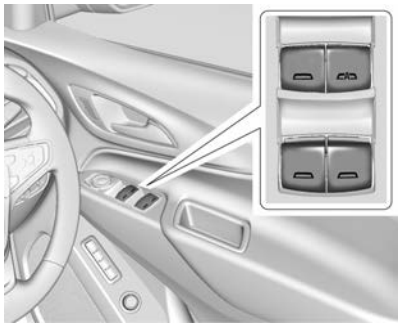
Power Windows

⚠ Warning

Take care when operating the power windows. Risk of injury, particularly to children.

If there are children on the rear seat, switch on the child safety system for the power windows.

Keep a close watch on the windows when closing them. Ensure that nothing becomes trapped in them as they move.



Power windows can be operated when the ignition is on, in Accessory mode, or when Retained Accessory Power (RAP) is active. See *Retained Accessory Power (RAP)* ⇨ *218*.

Using the window switch, press to open or pull to close the window.

The windows may be temporarily disabled if they are used repeatedly within a short time.

Auto Up/Down

All windows can be opened without holding the window switch. Press the switch down fully and quickly release to express open the window.

If equipped, pull the window switch up fully and quickly release to express close the window.

Briefly press or pull the window switch in the same direction to stop that window's express movement.

Safety Function

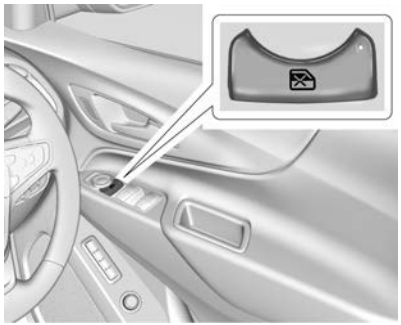
The auto up feature will automatically reverse window movement if it comes in contact with an object. Extreme cold or ice could cause the window to auto-reverse. The window will operate normally after the object or condition is removed.

Safety Function Override

> **⚠ Warning**
>
> If automatic reversal system override is active, the window will not reverse automatically. You or others could be injured and the window could be damaged. Before using automatic reversal system override, make sure that all people and obstructions are clear of the window path.

When the engine is on, override the automatic reversal system by pulling and holding the window switch if conditions prevent it from closing.

Child Safety Lockout



This feature stops the rear door passenger window switches from functioning.

Note
Vehicle without electric folding mirrors shown.

- Press to engage the rear window lockout feature. The indicator light is on when engaged.
- Press again to disengage.

Programming the Power Windows

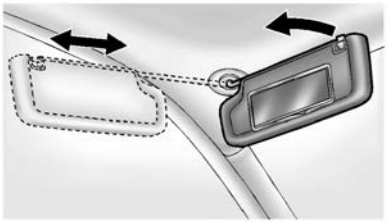
Programming may be necessary if the vehicle's battery has been disconnected or discharged. If the window is unable to express-up, program the window:

1. Close all doors.
2. Turn the ignition on or to Accessory mode.
3. Partially open the window to be programmed, then close it and continue to pull the switch briefly after the window has fully closed.
4. Open the window and continue to press the switch briefly after the window has fully opened.

Remote Window Operation

If equipped, this feature allows all the windows to be opened remotely. If enabled in vehicle personalisation, press and hold on the RKE transmitter. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *112*.

Sun Visors



Pull the sun visor down to block glare.

If desired, detach the sun visor from the centre mount to pivot to the side window and extend along the rod.

Roof

Sunroof



1. Sunroof Switch
2. Sunshade Switch

If equipped, the sunroof only operates when the ignition is on or in Accessory mode, or when Retained Accessory Power (RAP) is active. See *Retained Accessory Power (RAP)* ⇨ *218*.

Sunroof Switch

Express-Open/Express-Close : To express-open the sunroof, fully press and release (1). Press the switch again to stop it. To express-close the sunroof, fully press and release (1). Press the switch again to stop it.

Open/Close (Manual Mode) : To open the sunroof, press and hold (1) until the sunroof reaches the desired position. Press and hold (1) to close it.

Comfort Stop : The sunroof has a comfort stop feature that stops the sunroof from opening fully. Press and release the rear of to open the sunroof to the comfort open position. Pressing the rear of again will open the sunroof fully. If the sunshade is not fully open when the comfort stop feature is pressed the second time, the sunshade will open fully.

Vent : From the closed position, press (1) to vent the sunroof.

Sunshade Switch

Express-open/Express-close : To express-open the sunshade, fully press and release (2). To express-close the sunshade, fully press and release (2). Press the switch again to stop it.

Open/Close : To open the sunshade, press and hold (2) until the sunshade reaches the desired position.

When the sunroof is opened, an air deflector will automatically raise. The air deflector will retract when the sunroof is closed.

Automatic Reversal System

The sunroof/sunshade is equipped with an automatic reversal system that is only active when the sunroof/sunshade is being operated in express-close. If an object is in the path of the sunroof/sunshade while it is express-closing, the reversal system will detect the object and stop.

In the event of closing difficulties like frost or other conditions, it is possible to override the reversal system. To override the reversal system, close in manual mode. To stop the movement, release the switch.



Dirt and debris may collect on the sunroof seal or in the track. This could cause an issue with sunroof operation or noise. It could also block the water drainage system. Periodically open the sunroof and remove any obstacles or loose debris. Wipe the sunroof seal and roof sealing area using a clean cloth, mild soap, and water. Do not remove grease from the sunroof.

If water is seen dripping into the water drainage system, this is normal.

Seats and Restraints

Head Restraints
Head Restraints 46

Front Seats
Seat Position 49
Seat Adjustment 50
Power Seat Adjustment 51
Lumbar Adjustment 51
Reclining Seatbacks 51
Memory Seats 52
Heated and Ventilated Front Seats 54

Rear Seats
Rear Seats 55
Rear Seat Armrest 58
Heated Rear Seats 58

Seat Belts
How to Wear Seat Belts Properly 59
Three-Point Seat Belt 60
Seat Belt Use During Pregnancy 62
Seat Belt Care 62
Replacing Seat Belt System Parts after a Crash 62

Airbag System
Airbag System 63
Front Airbag System 64
Side Airbag System 64
Curtain Airbag System 65
What Will You See after an Airbag Inflates? 66
Notices for Customer Installed Equipment 67
Airbag System Check 67
Replacing Airbag System Parts after a Crash 67

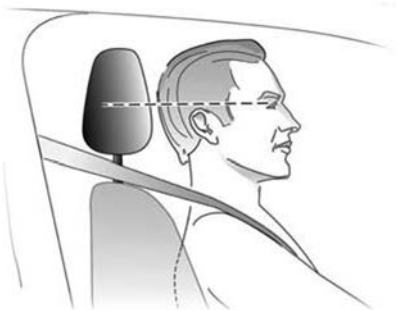
Child Restraints
Older Children 68
Infants and Young Children 68
Child Restraint Systems 69
Where to Put the Restraint 70
Top Tether Anchor Fittings 71
Child Restraint Installation Locations 71
ISOFIX Child Restraint Systems 72

Head Restraints

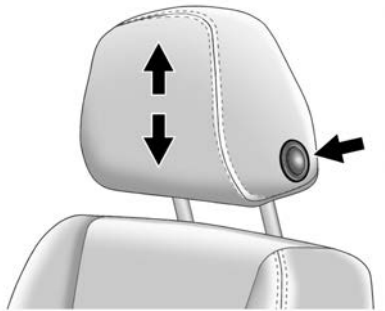
⚠ Warning

This safety feature is not intended as a headrest. It is solely for the reduction of whiplash neck movement in an accident involving your vehicle.

The centre of the head restraint should be at eye level, never at neck level.



Front Seats



To raise or lower the head restraint, press the button located on the side of the head restraint and pull up or push the head restraint down, and release the button.

Pull and push on the head restraint after the button is released to ensure it is locked in place.

The front seat head restraints are not removable.

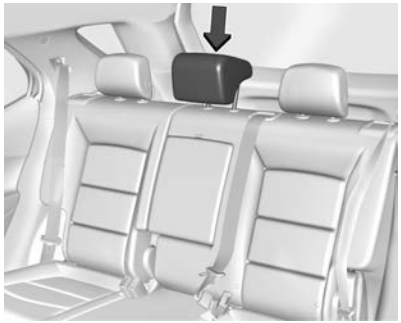
Rear Seats

Rear Head Restraint Adjustment

Pull the head restraint up to raise it. Try to move the head restraint to ensure it is locked in place.



To lower the head restraint, press the button located on the top of the seat back, and push the head restraint down. Try to move the head restraint after the button is released to ensure it is locked in place.

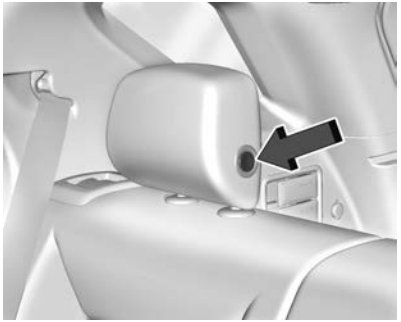


The rear seat head restraint for the centre seating position can be adjusted the same way as the outboard head restraints.

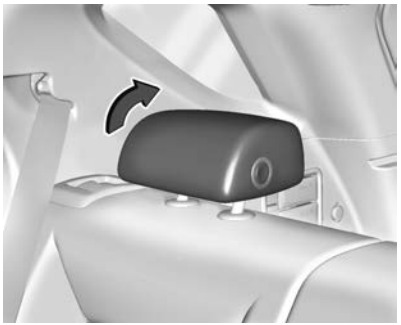
The rear outboard head restraints are not removable.

Folding the Rear Head Restraint

The head restraint can be folded rearward to allow for better visibility when the rear seat is unoccupied.



To fold the head restraint, press the button on the side of the head restraint.



The head restraint will fold rearward automatically.

When an occupant or child restraint is in the seat, always return the head restraint to the full upright position. Pull the head restraint up and forward until it locks into place. Push and pull on the head restraint to ensure it is locked.

Always adjust the head restraint so the top of the restraint is at the same height as the top of the occupant's head.

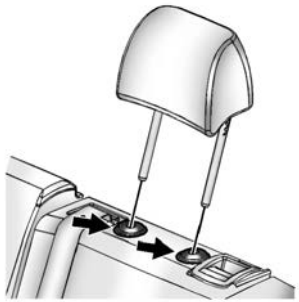
Centre Rear Head Restraint Removal and Reinstallation

⚠ Warning

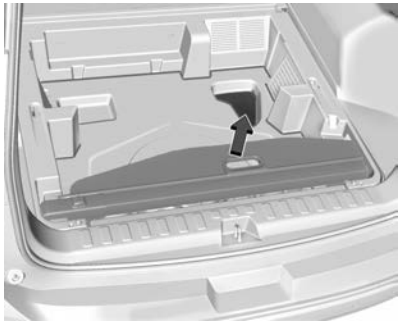
With head restraints that are not installed and adjusted properly, there is a greater chance that occupants will suffer a neck/spinal injury in a crash. Do not drive until the head restraints for all occupants are installed and adjusted properly.

To remove the centre rear head restraint:

1. Partially fold the seat back forward. See *Rear Seats* ⇨ *55* for additional information.



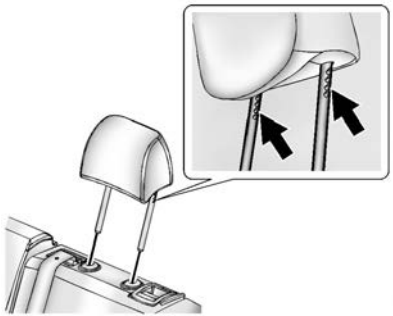
2. Press both buttons on the head restraint posts at the same time, and pull up on the head restraint.



3. Store the removed head restraint in the recess within the storage area, under the rear load floor. See *Rear Storage* ⇨ *74*.

To reinstall the head restraint:

1. Remove the head restraint from the rear under floor storage area.



2. Insert the head restraint posts into the holes in the top of the seat back. The notches on the posts must face the passenger side of the vehicle.
3. Push the head restraint down.

   If necessary, press the height adjustment release button to further lower the head restraint. See *Rear Seats* ⇨ *55*.
4. Try to move the head restraint to ensure it is locked in place.

Front Seats

Seat Position

⚠ Warning

To avoid reducing the effectiveness of seat belts, seatbacks should only be upright or at most semi-reclined when the vehicle is moving.



- Sit centrally in the seat.
- Use the backrest and cushion for support.

- Adjust the seat so that your legs are slightly angled when against the pedals.
- Adjust the backrest angle to easily reach the steering wheel with arms slightly bent. *Steering Wheel Adjustment* ⇨ *81*.
- Maintain contact between shoulders and the backrest when turning the steering wheel.
- Adjust the head restraint. *Head Restraints* ⇨ *46*.
- Slide the passenger seat as far back as possible.

Seat Adjustment

⚠ Warning

You can lose control of the vehicle if you try to adjust a driver seat while the vehicle is moving. Adjust the driver seat only when the vehicle is not moving.



To adjust the seat position:

1. Pull the handle at the front of the seat cushion to unlock it.
2. Move the seat forward or rearward and release the handle.
3. Try to move the seat back and forth to be sure it is locked in place.

Seat Height Adjuster



Move the lever up or down to raise or lower the seat.

Power Seat Adjustment



To adjust a power seat, if equipped:

- Move the seat forward or rearward by sliding the control forward or rearward.
- Raise or lower the front part of the seat cushion by moving the front of the control up or down.
- Raise or lower the entire seat by moving the rear of the control up or down.

To adjust the seat back, see *Reclining Seatbacks* ⇨ *51*.

Lumbar Adjustment



If equipped, press and hold the control switch forward or rearward to increase or decrease lumbar support.

Reclining Seatbacks

Manual Reclining Seat Backs

⚠ Warning

If either seatback is not locked, it could move forward in a sudden stop or crash. That could cause injury to the person sitting there. Always push and pull on the seatbacks to be sure they are locked.



To recline a manual seat back:

1. Lift the lever.
2. Move the seat back to the desired position, and then release the lever to lock the seat back in place.
3. Push and pull on the seat back to make sure it is locked.

To return the seat back to the upright position:

1. Lift the lever fully without applying pressure to the seat back, and the seat back will return to the upright position.
2. Push and pull on the seat back to make sure it is locked.

Power Reclining Seat Backs



To adjust a power seat back, if available:

- Tilt the top of the control rearward to recline.
- Tilt the top of the control forward to raise.

Memory Seats



If equipped, the memory seat function allows two drivers to store and recall their unique seat position for driving the vehicle, and a shared exit position for getting out of the vehicle.

⚠ Warning

Before moving the seat, ensure the path both in front of and behind the seat is clear of obstructions.

The SET, 1, 2 and (Exit) buttons are used to manually save and recall memory settings. The memory positions are also linked to RKE transmitter 1 or 2 for automatic memory recalls.

Identifying Driver Number

To identify the driver number:

1. Start the vehicle with one RKE transmitter in the vehicle. The DIC should display the driver number; e.g. '1'.

   Turn the ignition off and remove the RKE transmitter from the vehicle.

2. Start the vehicle with the other RKE transmitter in the vehicle. The DIC should display the driver number not shown in Step 1, e.g. '2'.

Saving Memory Positions

Read these instructions completely before saving memory positions.

To save preferred driving positions 1 and 2:

1. Turn the ignition to on or Accessory mode.

   A DIC welcome message may be displayed indicating number 1 or 2 for memory recalls.

2. Adjust the driver's seat to the desired driving position.

3. Press and release SET; a beep will sound.

4. Immediately press and hold the 1 or 2 memory button matching the above DIC welcome message until two beeps sound.

   If too much time passes between releasing SET and pressing 1 or 2, the memory position will not be saved and the two beeps will not sound. Repeat Steps 3 and 4.

   1 or 2 corresponds to the driver number. See “Identifying Driver Number” previously in this section.

5. Repeat Steps 1–4 for the second driver using 1 or 2 and the other RKE transmitter.

To save positions for Easy Exit features, repeat Steps 1–4 using , this time though, adjust the seat to a desirable position for getting out of the vehicle. Also See “Easy Exit Recall” further in the Section.

Save preferred memory feature positions to both 1 and 2 if you are the only driver.

Manually Recalling Memory Positions

Press and hold button 1, 2, or to recall the desired previously stored memory positions.

To stop manual recall movement, release 1, 2, or . Recall can also be stopped by pressing a power seat control or SET.

Auto Memory Recall

If the RKE transmitter is 1 or 2, and Auto Memory Recall is enabled in vehicle personalisation, the positions saved to the

corresponding memory button 1 or 2 are automatically recalled when the ignition is turned on, or turned from off to Accessory mode. Automatic memory recalls can only be saved to two RKE transmitters.

To enable Auto Memory Recall, see *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *112*.

The transmission must be in P (Park) to initiate Auto Memory Recall. Auto Memory Recall will complete if the vehicle is shifted out of P (Park) prior to reaching the stored memory position.

To stop Auto Memory Recall movement, turn the ignition off or press any of the following memory controls:

- Power seat
- Memory SET, 1, 2, or

If the stored memory seat position does not automatically recall or recalls to the wrong positions, the driver's RKE transmitter number (1 or 2) may not match the memory button number that positions were saved to. Try storing the position to the other memory button or try the other RKE transmitter.

Easy Exit Recall

Easy Exit Recall is not linked to an RKE transmitter. The position stored to is used for all drivers. To enable Easy Exit Recall, see *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *112*.

If enabled, the position saved to is automatically recalled when one of the following occurs:

- The vehicle is turned off and the driver door is opened within a short time.
- The vehicle is turned off with the driver door open.

To stop Easy Exit Recall movement, press any of the following memory controls:

- Power seat
- Memory SET, 1, 2, or
- Power mirror, with the driver or passenger side mirror selected

Obstructions

If something is obstructing the driver seat while recalling a memory position, the recall may stop. Remove the obstruction and try the recall again. If the memory position still does not recall, see your dealer for service.

Heated and Ventilated Front Seats

⚠ Warning

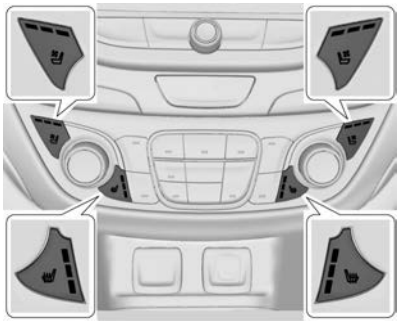
If temperature change or pain to the skin cannot be felt, the seat heater may cause burns. To reduce the risk of burns, use care when using the seat heater, especially for long periods of time.

Do not place anything on the seat that insulates against heat, such as a blanket, cushion, cover or similar item.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

This may cause the seat heater to overheat.
An overheated seat heater may cause a burn or may damage the seat.



If available, the buttons are on the climate control panel. To operate, the engine must be running.

Press or to heat the driver or passenger seat cushion and seat back. Indicator lights on the button show the current setting.

Press the button once for the highest setting. With each press of the button, the heated seat will change to the next lower setting, and then to the off setting. The lights indicate three for the highest setting and one for the lowest.

The passenger seat may take longer to heat up.

Press or to ventilate the driver or passenger seat cushion and seat back. Indicator lights on the button show the current setting.

Press the button once for the highest setting. With each press of the button, the ventilated seat will change to the next lower setting, and then to the off setting. The lights indicate three for the highest setting and one for the lowest.

Rear Seats

Rear Seat Reminder

If equipped, the message **Rear Seat Reminder Look In Rear Seat** displays under certain conditions indicating there may be an item or passenger in the rear seat. Check before exiting the vehicle.

This feature will activate when a rear door is opened while the vehicle is on or up to 10 minutes before the vehicle is turned on. There will be an alert when the vehicle is turned off. The alert does not directly detect objects in the rear seat; instead, under certain conditions, it detects when a rear door is opened and closed, indicating that there may be something in the rear seat.

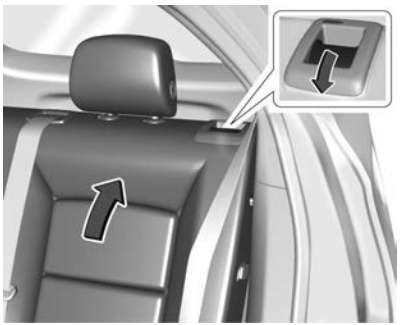
The feature is active only once each time the vehicle is turned on and off, and will require reactivation by opening and closing the rear doors. There may be an alert even when there is nothing in the rear seat; for example, if a child entered the

vehicle through the rear door and left the vehicle without the vehicle being shut off.

The feature can be turned on or off. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *112*.

Reclining the Seat back

To recline the seat back:



1. Pull the reclining seat back handle.
2. Move the seat back to the desired position, and then release the handle to lock the seat back in place.
3. Push and pull on the seat back to make sure it is locked.

Folding the Seat Back

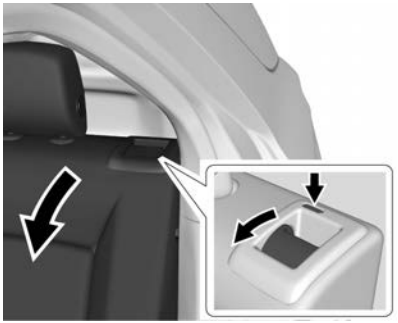
Either side of the seat back can be folded for more cargo space. Fold a seat back only when the vehicle is not moving.

Caution

Folding a rear seat with the seat belts still fastened may cause damage to the seat or the seat belts. Always unbuckle the seat belts and return them to their normal stowed position before folding a rear seat.

To fold the seat back:

1. Fold the rear outboard head restraints. For the centre position, remove the centre head restraint to achieve a flat rear cargo floor. See *Head Restraints* ⇨ *46*.



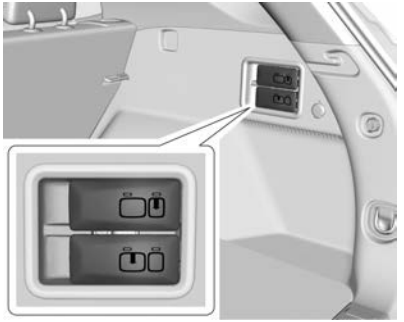
2. Pull the handle on top of the seat back to unlock it.

   A tab near the seat back handle raises when the seat back is unlocked.
3. Fold the seat back forward.



4. Stow the seat belt in the belt stowage clip.

   Repeat the steps to fold the other seat back, if desired.



If equipped, the rear seat backs can also be folded forward by pulling the levers on the driver side of the rear cargo area.

Raising the Seat Back

⚠ Warning

If either seatback is not locked, it could move forward in a sudden stop or crash. That could cause injury to the person sitting there. Always push and pull on the seatbacks to be sure they are locked.

⚠ Warning

A seat belt that is improperly routed, not properly attached, or twisted will not provide the protection needed in a crash. The person wearing the belt could be seriously injured. After raising the rear seat back, always check to be sure that the seat belts are properly routed and attached, and are not twisted.

To raise a seat back:

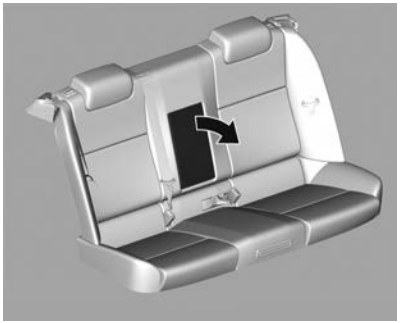


1. Ensure the seat belt is in the belt stowage clip.
2. Lift the seat back up and push it rearward to lock it in place.

   A tab near the seat back handle retracts when the seat back is locked in place.
3. Return the outboard head restraints to the upright position. If removed, reinstall the centre head restraint. See *Head Restraints* ⇨ *46*.
4. Push and pull the top of the seat back to ensure it is locked into position.
5. Repeat the steps to raise the other seat back, if necessary.

When the seat is not in use, it should be kept in the upright, locked position.

Rear Seat Armrest



The vehicle may have a rear middle armrest.

- Pull the armrest down to use.
- Push the armrest up when it is no longer required.

Note

Ensure the armrest is folded up before folding the seatback forward.

Heated Rear Seats

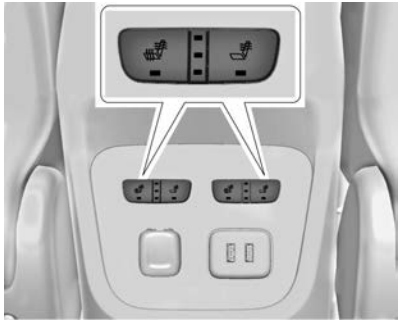
⚠ Warning

If temperature change or pain to the skin cannot be felt, the seat heater may cause burns. To reduce the risk of burns, use care when using the seat heater, especially for long periods of time.

Do not place anything on the seat that insulates against heat, such as a blanket, cushion, cover or similar item.

This may cause the seat heater to overheat.

An overheated seat heater may cause a burn or may damage the seat.



If equipped, the rear heated seat controls are on the rear of the centre console. To operate, the engine must be running.

Press to heat the left or right outboard seat cushion and seat back.

Press to heat the left or right outboard seat back only.

Press the button once for the highest setting. With each press of the button, the heated seat will change to the next lower setting, and then to the off setting. The lights indicate three for the highest setting and one for the lowest.

Seat Belts

How to Wear Seat Belts Properly

⚠ Warning

Seat belts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body, and should be worn low across the front of the pelvis or the pelvis, chest and shoulders, as applicable; wearing the lap section of the belt across the abdominal area must be avoided.

Seat belts should be adjusted as firmly as possible, consistent with comfort, to provide the protection for which they have been designed. A slack belt will greatly reduce the protection afforded to the wearer.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly battery acid.

Belts should not be worn with straps twisted.

Each belt assembly must only be used by one occupant; it is dangerous to put a belt around a child being carried on the occupant's lap.

No modifications or additions should be made by the user which will either prevent the seat belt adjusting devices from operating to remove slack, or prevent the seat belt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack.

Three-Point Seat Belt

Fitting



The belt should not be twisted. It should lie flat and fit firmly across your hips.

1. Pull the metal tongue across your body.
2. Clip it into the buckle.
3. When the metal tongue is locked safely into place you will hear a click.
4. Give a gentle pull on the buckle to ensure full engagement.
5. Settle the belt at the hip.
6. Run your hand under the sash from hip to shoulder.

The belt should fit comfortably. Any extra belt length retracts automatically.

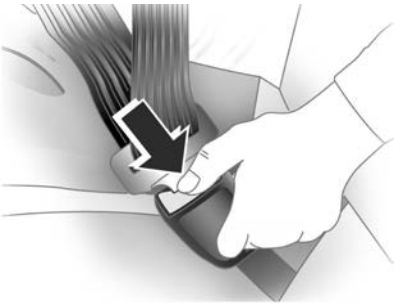


Note

For your safety, wear the lap section of the seat belt as low as possible on your hips, not on your waist or abdomen.

The Emergency-locking Retractor Belt allows you to move while the vehicle is travelling normally, but locks immediately on fast braking, impact with a solid object or any quick movement by the wearer.

Removing



1. Press the release button on the buckle.
2. Allow the belt to retract.
3. Check that it fully retracts without twisting or turning.

Rear Seat Belt Comfort Guides

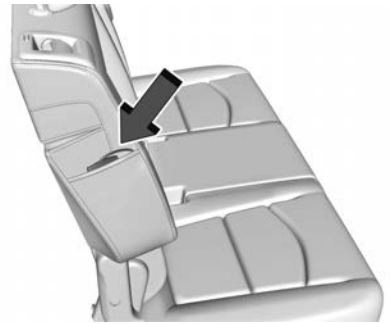
⚠ Warning

A seat belt that is not properly worn may not provide the protection needed in a crash. The person wearing the belt could be seriously injured. The shoulder belt should go over the shoulder and across the chest. These parts of the body are best able to take belt restraining forces.

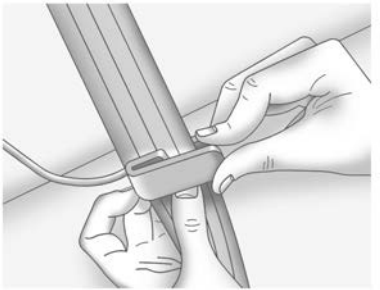
Rear seat belt comfort guides may provide added seat belt comfort for older children who have outgrown booster seats and for some adults. When installed on a shoulder belt, the comfort guide positions the shoulder belt away from the neck and head.

This vehicle has rear seat belt comfort guides in the rear outboard seating positions.

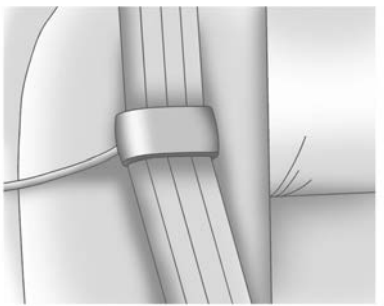
To install:



1. Remove the guide from its storage pocket on the side of the seat back.



2. Place the guide over the belt, and insert the two edges of the belt into the slots of the guide.



3. Ensure the belt is not twisted and it lies flat. The elastic cord must be behind the belt with the plastic guide on the front.



4. Buckle, position, and release the seat belt as described previously in this section. Make sure the shoulder belt crosses the shoulder. The belt should be close to, but not contacting, the neck.

To remove and store the comfort guide, squeeze the belt edges together so the seat belt can be removed from the guide. Slide the guide back into its storage pocket on the side of the seat back.

Seat Belt Use During Pregnancy

Seat belts work for everyone, including pregnant women. Like all occupants, they are more likely to be seriously injured if they do not wear a seat belt.

A pregnant woman should wear a three point belt with the lap portion of the belt worn as low as possible below the rounding of their stomach, throughout the pregnancy.

Seat Belt Care

⚠ Warning

Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly battery acid. Cleaning may safely be carried out using

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

mild soap and water. The belt should be replaced if webbing becomes frayed, contaminated or damaged.

Replacing Seat Belt System Parts after a Crash

⚠ Warning

It is essential to replace the entire assembly after it has been worn in a severe impact even if damage to the assembly is not obvious.

Airbag System

When triggered, airbags inflate within milliseconds. They also deflate so quickly that it is often unnoticeable during the collision.

⚠ Danger

Do not make any modifications to the airbag system.

The driver should sit back as far as possible while still maintaining control of the vehicle. Sitting too close to the airbag can cause death or serious injury when it inflates.

Always wear a seat belt.

⚠ Warning

WARNING – EXTREME HAZARD!

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it!

The child could be seriously injured if the airbag inflates, as the child's head would be very close to the inflating airbag.

Remember that it is safest for children to be seated in the rear seats.



⚠ Warning

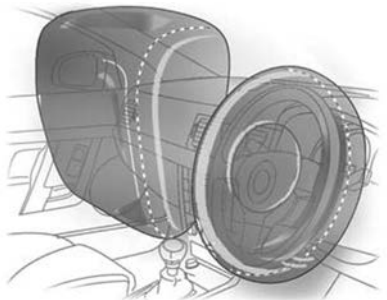
Airbags are part of the Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) as they assist, but do not replace seat belts.

Airbags do not deploy in every accident. Various factors dictate whether they deploy including speed, angle of collision and object hit. Airbags are not designed to inflate if the vehicle is hit from the rear or is involved in a rollover. Seat belts must be worn by all passengers whenever the vehicle is moving.

Airbags inflate with great force. If you are too close to an inflating airbag it may cause injury.

Seat belts help keep you in position for airbag inflation in the event of a collision.

Front Airbag System



The front airbag system consists of one airbag in the steering wheel and one in the instrument panel on the passenger side. These are identified by the word AIRBAG.

⚠ Warning

The horn pad must not be covered with adhesive or any other material.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

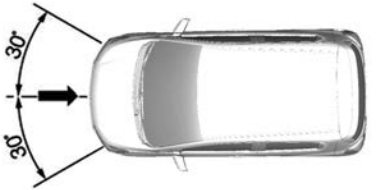
The driver should adjust the seat as far rearward as possible while still maintaining control of the vehicle.

⚠ Warning

Do not place any objects on or over the instrument panel or between an airbag and yourself.

Do not hang anything from the sun visor or mirror.

Passengers must not rest their feet on the instrument panel.



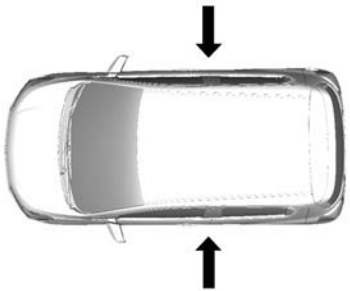
Front airbags will inflate in certain severe frontal or near frontal impacts. Front airbags are not designed to inflate if the vehicle is struck from the side, rear or in rollovers. Always wear a seat belt.

Side Airbag System

Side airbags are stored in the outer side of the front seats.



They can be identified by the word AIRBAG.



The side airbags deploy in most, but not all, severe side impacts.



The risk of injury to the upper body and pelvis in the event of a side impact is considerably reduced.

⚠ Warning

Do not fit unauthorised seat covers as they may impair the deployment of the side airbags.

Do not position your body or any object (including pillows) between front seats and doors.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Do not lean on, or sleep against, the door. Always sit centrally in the seat.

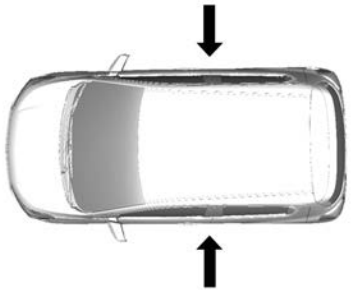
Always wear a seat belt.

Curtain Airbag System

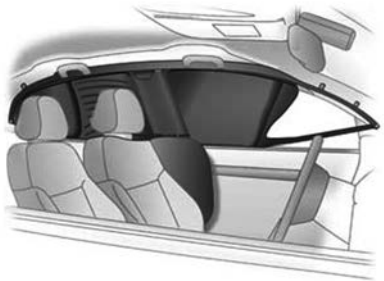


Curtain airbags are stored in the roof on each side of the vehicle.

They can be identified by the word AIRBAG on the door pillars.



The curtain airbags deploy in most, but not all severe side impacts.



The risk of injury to the head in the event of a side impact is considerably reduced.

⚠ Warning

Do not position your body or any object (including pillows) in the area in which the airbag inflates.

There must be no objects in the area in which the airbag inflates. Refer to the illustration.

Use the hooks above the doors only to hang up light articles of clothing.

Do not place any objects in the pockets of the hanging items.

Do not hold onto the assist grips (above the doors) while seated in the vehicle.

Do not lean on, or sleep against the front or rear doors. Always sit centrally in the seat.

Always wear a seat belt.

What Will You See after an Airbag Inflates?

Airbags inflate and deflate within milliseconds.

Fifteen seconds after any airbag or seat belt pretensioner has been activated (the vehicle has stopped and provided there is battery power), the following will occur:

- The engine will switch off.
- The fuel pump will switch off.
- The hazard lamps will switch on.
- The interior lamp will switch on.
- The doors will unlock.

Switch the ignition off and then on if restarting the engine is required.

Notices for Customer Installed Equipment

⚠ Warning

The fitting of roo bars may affect crash performance, airbag performance and engine cooling. See “Fitting roo bars” under *Add-On Electrical Equipment* ⇨ *269*.

Airbag System Check

The in the instrument cluster illuminates for a few seconds when the ignition is turned on. This indicates the Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) is operational.

Contact a Holden Dealer immediately:

- If does not illuminate when the ignition is turned on.
- If illuminates when driving.
- If the warning 'Airbag Fault' is displayed on the Driver Information Centre (DIC).

  In these instances the SRS may not function correctly in the event of an accident. See *Airbag System* ⇨ *63*.

Replacing Airbag System Parts after a Crash

Note

After an accident where the SRS has deployed, the systems, associated parts and hardware must be checked and replaced as required.

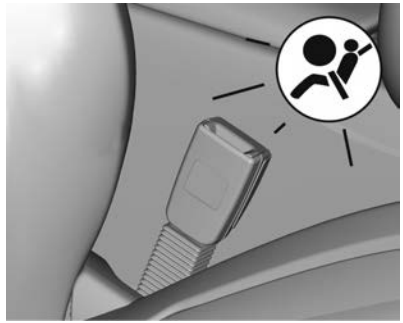
Seats, associated parts and hardware must also be checked and replaced as required.

The SRS should also be inspected after an accident if:

- The instrument panel area or steering wheel is scratched, cracked or damaged.
- The front seats and upholstery are damaged.
- The headliner or trim panels are damaged.

It is recommended that this work be carried out by a Holden Dealer or approved repairer.

Seat Belt Pretensioners



Front seat belt pretensioners are part of the SRS. In certain severe collisions the seat belts are tightened by the seat belt pretensioners.

Child Restraints

Older Children

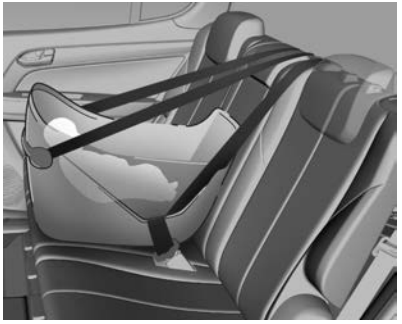


A child should use a normal three point seat belt only when:

- They can sit against the back of the seat with knees bent comfortably at the edge of the seat.
- The lap belt rests low and snug across the hips, not across the stomach.
- The sash belt is centred on the shoulder and chest.
- They are able to stay seated like this for the entire trip.

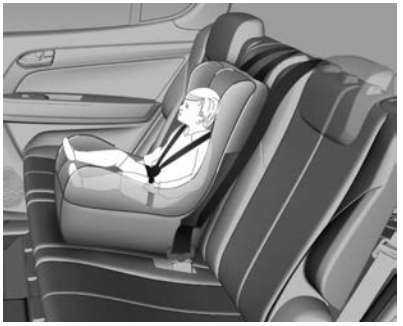
Infants and Young Children

Infants



Rearward facing infant capsules are designed so that in the event of a collision, impact forces will be evenly spread over the baby's back, with minimal jarring to the vulnerable head and neck area.

Young Children



Forward facing child seats are for use when the child is able to sit and easily hold their head upright.

Booster Seats



Booster seats are for when children outgrow a typical forward facing child seat, but are still too small for three point seat belts.

Child Restraint Systems

⚠ Warning

WARNING – EXTREME HAZARD!

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Do not use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it!

The child could be seriously injured if the airbag inflates, as the child's head would be very close to the inflating airbag.

Remember that it is safest for children to be seated in the rear seats.



⚠ Warning

This manual provides you with general information concerning child restraints only.

The driver is required by law to ensure that passengers and pets are suitably restrained. In most States and Territories of Australia and New Zealand, specific laws may exist which require children to be seated in approved child restraints and/or in certain locations within the vehicle.

Holden strongly recommends that you refer to your specific State or Territory regulations to determine which child restraint and seat location is suitable for your child.

⚠ Warning

Always ensure that the seat belt fits firmly around the child restraint, as applicable to the type of restraint used.

If a child cannot see out of the window, do not raise him/her by means of an ordinary cushion. It will not stay in place in a collision and the child can slip out of the straps and become entangled.

⚠ Warning

Always follow the child restraint manufacturer's fitting instructions when installing a child restraint into the vehicle.

Note

Refer to the relevant legislation, an approved child restraint fitting station or capsule manufacturer's information for the recommended type of child restraint to use.

Selecting the Right System

Infants

Rearward facing infant capsules are designed so that in the event of a collision, impact forces will be evenly spread over the baby's back, with minimal jarring to the vulnerable head and neck area.

Young children

Forward facing child seats are for use when the child is able to sit and easily hold their head upright.

Booster seats

Booster seats are for when children outgrow a typical forward facing child seat, but are still too small for three point seat belts.

Older children

A child should use a normal three point seat belt only when:

- They can sit against the back of the rear seat with knees bent comfortably at the edge of the seat
- The lap belt rests low and snug across the hips, not across the stomach
- The sash belt is centred on the shoulder and chest
- They are able to stay seated like this for the entire trip

Where to Put the Restraint

⚠ Warning

It is safest for children to be seated in the rear seat.

Only child restraints that have clips to attach to the vehicle's anchorage fitting (as shown in the

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

following illustrations) are to be used. Earlier types of child restraints may not attach securely to this type of anchor.

Use only Standards Australia and New Zealand approved child restraints and harnesses. Only purchase a child restraint which carries the appropriate Standards Australia sticker of approval.

Australian States and Territories and New Zealand have laws restricting the seating of children in the front passenger seat. In most jurisdictions, children under 4 years should not be seated in the front passenger seat. Check your local road safety regulations before seating a child in the front seat.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

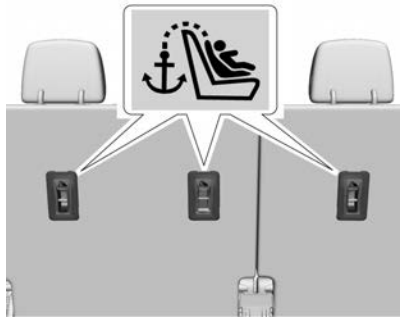
Where legally allowable, you may install a forward-facing child restraint in the front seat, but always move the passenger seat as far back as it will go.

Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses, or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

Note

If unsure about installing a child restraint anchor fitting, please contact an approved restraint fitting station or a Holden Dealer.

Top Tether Anchor Fittings



Top tether anchors are located on the back of the rear seat backs and are identified with symbol .

Do not attach anything other than a child restraint system to the vehicle top tether anchors.

Child Restraint Installation Locations

The vehicle has been designed to accommodate child restraints on the rear seat.

When using a child restraint, read the installation instructions supplied with the child restraint and follow the directions for fitting carefully.

Secure the child in the restraint in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

If unsure about installing a child restraint anchor fitting, contact an approved restraint fitting station or a Holden Dealer.

Automatic Locking Retractor (ALR) Seat Belts

ALR seat belts are provided at the rear seating positions. Use these in conjunction with a top tether strap when a non-ISOFIX child seat is being used.

Extend the seat belt fully and then fit the belt around the applicable locations on the child restraint and fasten the buckle. Refer to the installation instructions supplied with the child restraint.

Allow the belt to retract. While the belt is retracting, a clicking noise can be heard which indicates the ALR mechanism is functioning. The seat belt is locked and cannot be extended until fully retracted, enabling the belt to be fitted securely to the child restraint.

To release the locking mechanism, undo the buckle and allow the seat belt to fully retract. It will then function as a normal Emergency Locking Retractor (ELR) seat belt until fully extended again.

ISOFIX Child Restraint Systems



ISOFIX mounting locations are marked by a on the rear seat back.

Fasten vehicle-approved ISOFIX child restraints to the ISOFIX mounting brackets.

Note

Ensure the seat belt buckles are placed out of the way of the child seat.

In addition to the ISOFIX mounting brackets, fasten the top-tether strap to the top-tether anchor points.

Storage

Storage Compartments
Storage Compartments 73
Glove Box 73
Cupholders 73
Sunglasses Storage 74
Rear Storage 74
Centre Console Storage 75
Umbrella Storage 75

Additional Storage Features
Cargo Cover 75
Cargo Tie-Downs 77

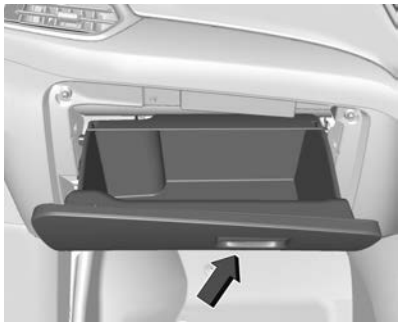
Roof Rack System
Roof Rack System 78

Storage Compartments

⚠ Warning

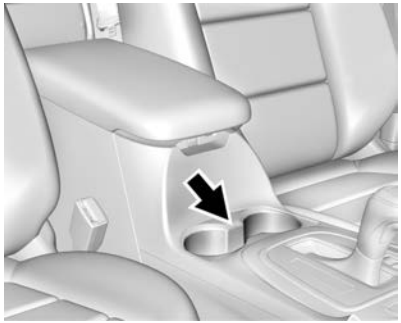
Do not store heavy or sharp objects in storage compartments. In a crash, these objects may cause the cover to open and could result in injury.

Glove Box



Open the glove box by lifting the lever.

Cupholders



Two cup-holders are located in the centre console.

Cup-holders are also located in the rear seat armrest. To access, pull the armrest down.

Bottles may be stored in each door pocket.

Sunglasses Storage



A covered storage compartment for sunglasses is located in the overhead console. Press the latch to open.

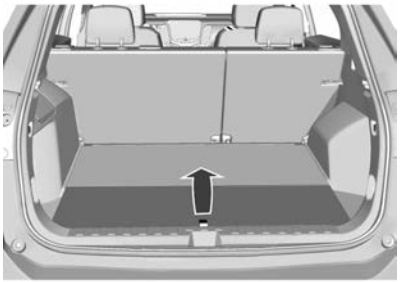
Rear Storage

There is a storage area under the rear load floor.

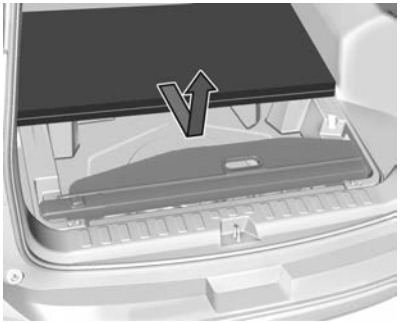
Caution
Do not store items beyond the top of the storage area or the load floor may be damaged.

To remove:

1. Open the liftgate.



2. Fold the rear part of the load floor to the front.



3. If desired, pull the load floor rearward slightly to disengage the retaining clips, and then lift upward to remove.

To install:

1. Place the load floor folded into position and locate the retaining clips.
2. Slide the floor forward to engage the clips.
3. Fold the rear part of the floor to close.

Centre Console Storage



There is storage in the centre console; lift the lever on the front to open.

Umbrella Storage



Pockets are provided under the armrest in each front door trim to store an umbrella. The pocket is identified by an embossed symbol on the door trim.

Note

The umbrella pockets are designed for compact type umbrellas only.

Additional Storage Features

Cargo Cover

If equipped, use the cargo cover to provide added security for items stored beneath.

⚠ Warning

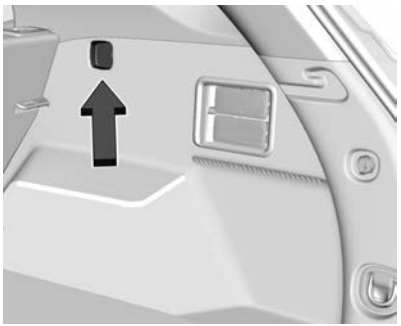
Do not place objects on the cargo cover. Sudden stops or turns can cause objects to be thrown in the vehicle. You or others could be injured.

To fit the cover:

1. Fold the rear part of the load floor to the front and remove the cover from the under floor storage area.



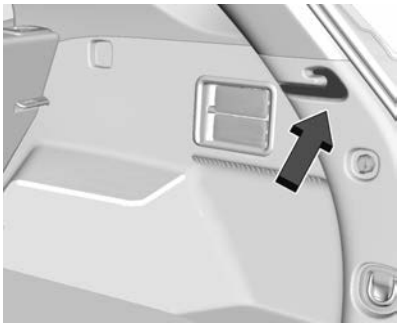
2. Press the buttons to unlock the ends of the cover.



3. Insert one end of the cover into the front recess in the side trim.
4. Push the other end of the cover and insert into the opposite side trim front recess.

To extend the cargo cover:

1. Use the handle to extend the cover rearward.



2. Engage the cover into the rear recesses in the side trims on each side.

To retract the cargo cover:

1. Use the handle to pull the cover rearward slightly.
2. Allow the cover to move down slightly and out of the side trim recesses.
3. Gently retract the cover while holding the handle.

To remove the cover from the vehicle:

1. Pull both ends toward each other to disengage the cover from the side trims.
2. Store the cover in the under floor storage area as follows.

⚠ Warning

An unsecured cargo cover could strike people in a sudden stop or turn, or in a crash. Store the cargo cover securely or remove it from the vehicle.

To store the cargo cover:

1. Open the liftgate.
2. Fold the rear part of the load floor to the front.



3. Press the buttons on both ends until locked.

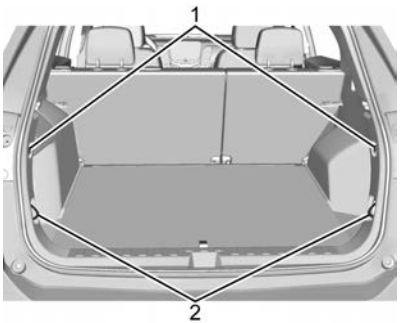


4. Insert the right side of the cargo cover first.



5. Store under the load floor.

Cargo Tie-Downs



1. Convenience Net Retainers
2. Cargo Tie-Downs

The vehicle may be equipped with two cargo tie-downs and two convenience net retainers in the rear compartment.

⚠ Warning

Always make sure the load is secure and will not move during heavy braking or a collision.

Unsecured loads increase the risk of injury during heavy braking, sudden avoidance manoeuvres or a collision.

Use only approved tie-down straps and convenience net to secure your loads. Do not use elasticised straps.

Never attach more than one tie-down strap to any single cargo tie-down.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Protect the tie-down straps from sharp edges of the load. Replace them if they begin to wear.

Make sure the back seat is locked in the upright position whenever carrying heavy loads. This is a basic requirement for protection against load displacement in the event of sudden braking or a collision.

The rear seat in the upright position provides greater protection against load displacement.

The driving characteristics of the vehicle can be affected because the centre of gravity is altered when there is a load in the cargo area. Match your speed and driving style according to how the vehicle is loaded.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Make sure the rear axle load of the vehicle is not exceeded. See “Axle loads” under *Vehicle Weight* ⇨ *329*.

The maximum load for the tie-down system is 80 kg single mass when used in conjunction with the Holden approved straps.

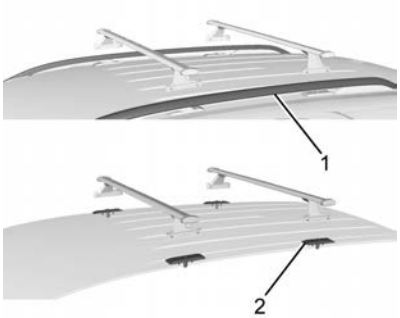
That is, if an object weighs 80 kg, only one object can be held by the tie-down system.

Do not use when there are visible signs of wear or damage.

Place loads as low down and as far forward in the cargo area as possible. That is, against the back seat.

Roof Rack System

Holden genuine cross rails can be purchased as an accessory and used to load items. The cross rails can be fitted to LTZ & LTZ-V models which are equipped with side rails, and LT models that have attaching points on the roof panel. Cross rails cannot be fitted to LS models. See your dealer for further information.



1. Side Rails – LTZ & LTZ-V
2. Attaching Points – LT

⚠ Warning

Ensure all objects carried on the roof rack system are loaded evenly and are secured tightly with straps.

Never carry objects that are longer or wider than the vehicle unless using a Holden certified accessory carrier.

Caution

The load, including the weight of the roof rack, must not exceed 75 kg.

To prevent damage or loss of cargo when driving, check to ensure the cross rails and cargo are securely fastened.

Loading cargo on the roof rack will make the vehicle's centre of gravity higher. Avoid high speeds, sudden starts, sharp turns, sudden braking, or abrupt manoeuvres; otherwise loss of control may result.

If driving for a long distance, on rough roads, or at high speeds, occasionally stop the vehicle to ensure the cargo remains in its place.

Do not exceed the maximum vehicle capacity when loading the vehicle. See *Vehicle Weight* ⇨ *329*.

Instruments and Controls

Controls

Steering Wheel Adjustment 81
Steering Wheel Controls 81
Heated Steering Wheel 82
Horn 83
Windshield Wiper/Washer 83
Rear Window Wiper/Washer ... 85
Compass 86
Clock 86
Power Outlets 87
Wireless Charging 90

Warning Lights, Gauges, and Indicators

Warning Lights, Gauges, and Indicators 91
Instrument Cluster 92
Speedometer 95
Odometer 95
Trip Odometer 95
Tachometer 95
Fuel Gauge 95
Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge 96
Seat Belt Reminders 96
Airbag Readiness Light 97
Charging System Light 98
Malfunction Indicator Lamp 98
Brake System Warning Light ... 99
Electric Parking Brake Light 100
Service Electric Parking Brake Light (Up-level Cluster) 100
Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light 101
Upshift light 101
Hill Descent Control Light 101
Lane Keep Assist (LKA) Light 101
Vehicle Ahead Indicator 102
Traction Off Light 102
Traction Control System (TCS)/ Electronic Stability Control Light 102
Electronic Stability Control (ESC) Off Light 103
Wait-to-Start Light 103
Engine Oil Pressure Light 103
Low Fuel Warning Light 104
AdBlue Warning Light 104
Security Light 104
High-Beam On Light 105
Front Fog Lamp Light 105
Lamps On Reminder 105
Cruise Control Light 105

Information Displays

Driver Information Centre (DIC) 106

Vehicle Messages

Vehicle Messages 111
Engine Power Messages 111
Vehicle Speed Messages 112

Vehicle Personalisation

Vehicle Personalisation 112

Controls

Steering Wheel Adjustment

⚠ Warning

Do not attempt to adjust the steering wheel while driving.



To adjust the steering wheel:

1. Move the lever down.
2. To adjust, move the steering wheel up or down.
3. Pull or push the steering wheel closer or away from you.
4. Push the lever up to lock the steering wheel in place.

   Ensure the steering wheel is locked in position before driving.

Steering Wheel Controls

The steering wheel controls allow some audio functions to be adjusted, the Driver Information Centre (DIC) menus to be accessed and other vehicle functions to be controlled.

Note

Controls may vary depending on vehicle options and equipment.



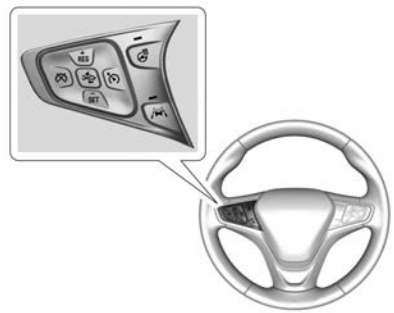
: Press to interact with the Bluetooth system.
See *Bluetooth* ⇨ *144* or *Bluetooth* ⇨ *195*.

: Press to reject an incoming call or end a current call. Press to mute or unmute the infotainment system when not on a call.

◁ **or** ▷ **:** Press to go to the previous or next DIC menu option.

△ **or** ▽ **:** Press to go to the next or previous DIC selection.

✓ **:** Press to select a highlighted DIC menu option.

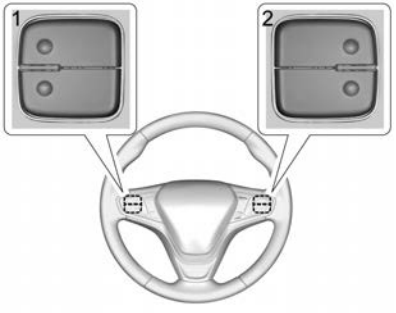


, , **+RES, −SET :** Cruise control operation. See *Cruise Control* ⇨ *237*.

: Forward collision alert control. See *Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System* ⇨ *248*.

: Heated steering wheel control. See *Heated Steering Wheel* ⇨ *82*.

: Lane keep assist control. See *Lane Keep Assist (LKA)* ⇨ *254*.



Infotainment system favourite and volume switches are on the back of the steering wheel.

1. Favourite: When on a radio source, press to select the next or previous favourite. When on a media source, press to select the next or previous track.
2. Volume: Press to increase or decrease the volume.

Heated Steering Wheel



: If equipped with a heated steering wheel, press to turn on or off. A light near the button displays when the feature is turned on.

The steering wheel takes about three minutes to start heating.

Horn



Press on the steering wheel pad to sound the horn.

Windshield Wiper/Washer



Intermittent Wipers



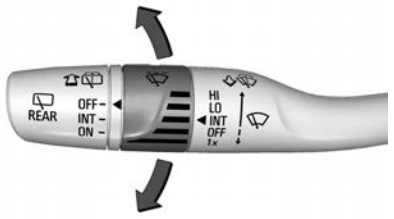
Rain Sensing Wipers

Caution
Never operate the wipers on dry glass, as this will damage the rubber and scratch the glass.

With the ignition on or in Accessory mode, move the windscreen wiper lever to select the wiper speed.

HI : Fast.

LO : Slow.



INT : Intermittent.

To adjust the wipe frequency, turn the band up for more frequent wipes or down for less frequent wipes.

AUTO : For vehicles with rain sensing wipers see “Rain Sensing” later in this section.

OFF : The wipers are off.

1x : Single wipe.

Briefly move the wiper lever down for a single wipe. For several wipes, hold the wiper lever down.

Clear snow and ice from the wiper blades before using them. If frozen to the windscreen, carefully loosen or thaw them. Damaged blades should be replaced. See *Wiper Blade Replacement* ⇨ *291*.

Wiper Parking

If the ignition is turned off while the wipers are on LO, HI, or INT, they will immediately stop.

If the windscreen wiper lever is then moved to OFF before the driver door is opened or within 10 minutes, the wipers will restart and move to the base of the windscreen.

If the ignition is turned off while the wipers are operating due to windscreen washing or rain sensing operation, the wipers continue to run until they reach the base of the windscreen.

Rain Sensing

The vehicle may have rain sensing wipers.

A sensor near the top centre of the windscreen detects the amount of water on the windscreen and automatically controls the frequency of the windscreen wiper.

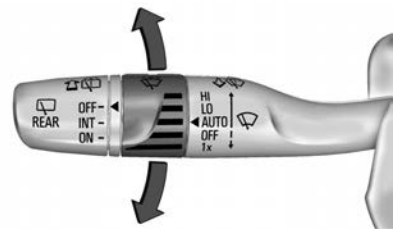
Keep this area of the windscreen clear of debris to allow for best system performance.

Caution

Switch off the rain sensor by setting the lever to the **OFF** position before entering a car wash.

Replace the wiper blades as soon as they do not completely remove water from the windscreen. If the blades are not replaced, the wipers may continue to wipe even though most of the screen is dry.

To prevent damage to the wiper blades, make sure that the windscreen is fully defrosted before switching on the rain sensor.



AUTO : Rain sensing is on.

The wipers cycle when water is detected on the windscreen. Turn the band on the wiper lever to adjust the sensitivity.

- Turn the band up for more sensitivity to moisture.
- Turn the band down for less sensitivity to moisture.
- Move the windscreen wiper lever out of the AUTO position to deactivate Rain sensing operation.

To enable or disable this feature, see “Rain Sensing Wipers” under *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *112*.

Wiper Arm Assembly Protection

With rain sensing wipers, if the transmission is in N (Neutral) and the vehicle speed is very slow, the wipers will automatically stop at the base of the windscreen.

The wiper operations return to normal when the transmission is no longer in N (Neutral) or the vehicle speed has increased.

Windscreen Washer

: Pull the windscreen wiper lever toward you to spray windscreen washer fluid and activate the wipers. The wipers will continue until the lever is released or the maximum wash time is reached.

When the lever is released, additional wipes may occur depending on how long the windscreen washer had been activated. See *Washer Fluid* ⇨ *289* for information on filling the windscreen washer fluid reservoir.

Rear Window Wiper/ Washer

The ignition must be on or in Accessory mode to operate the rear window wiper/washer.



Turn the end of the windscreen wiper lever to operate the rear window wiper/washer.

OFF : The rear wiper is off.

INT : Intermittent.

ON : Continuous, slow speed.

: Push the windscreen wiper lever forward to spray washer fluid on the rear window. The lever automatically returns to its original position when released.

Rear Wiper Arm Assembly Protection

When using an automatic car wash, move the rear wiper control to OFF to disable the rear wiper. If the transmission is in N (Neutral) and the vehicle speed is very slow, the rear wiper may automatically park.

The wiper operations return to normal when the transmission is no longer in N (Neutral) or the vehicle speed has increased.

Reverse Gear Operation

Even if the rear wiper is off, when the transmission is in R (Reverse), and the front windscreen wiper is in low or high speed operation, the rear wiper will automatically operate continuously.

If the rear wiper is off, when the transmission is in R (Reverse), and the front windscreen wiper is in intermittent operation, the rear wiper will automatically operate intermittently.

This feature can be turned on or off. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *112*.

The windscreen washer reservoir is used for the windscreen and rear window. Check the fluid level regularly. See *Washer Fluid* ⇨ *289*.

Compass

The vehicle may have a compass display on the Driver Information Centre (DIC). The compass receives its heading and other information from the Global Positioning System (GPS) antenna, electronic stability control system and vehicle speed information.

The compass system is designed to operate for a certain distance or degrees of turn before needing a signal from the GPS satellites. If the compass display shows CAL, drive the vehicle for a short distance in an open area where it can receive a GPS signal. The compass system will automatically determine when a GPS signal is restored and provide a heading again.

Clock

MyLink Infotainment System

The infotainment system controls are used to access the time and date settings through the menu system. See *Overview* ⇨ *131*.

Setting the Date and Time

1. Press ⌂, then touch SETTINGS.
2. Touch Time and Date, then Set Time or Set Date.
3. Touch + or − to adjust the value.
4. Touch ▼ or ▲ to adjust AM or PM for 12 hour format.
5. Touch ⮌ to go back to the previous menu.

Setting the 12/24 Hour Format

1. Press ⌂, then touch SETTINGS.
2. Touch Time and Date, then select 12h or 24h format.
3. Touch ⮌ to go back to the previous menu.

Setting the Month and Day Format

1. Press ⌂, then touch SETTINGS.
2. Touch Time and Date, then Set Date Format.
3. Select from the available options.
4. Touch ⮌ to go back to the previous menu.

MyLink with Built–in Navigation Infotainment System

The infotainment system controls are used to access the time and date settings through the menu system. See *Overview* ⇨ *151*.

Setting the Time

1. Touch SETTINGS from the Home Page, then touch Time and Date.

2. Touch Set Time and touch ∧ or ∨ to increase or decrease hours, minutes, and AM or PM. Touch 12–24 Hr for 12 or 24 hour clock.
3. Touch ⬅ to go back to the previous menu.

Setting the Date

1. Touch SETTINGS from the Home Page, then touch Time and Date.
2. Touch Set Date and touch ∧ or ∨ to increase or decrease month, day, or year.
3. Touch ⬅ to go back to the previous menu.

Setting the Clock Display

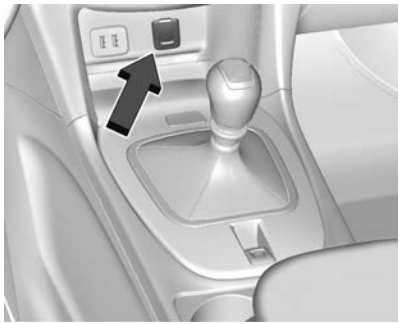
1. Touch SETTINGS and touch Time and Date.
2. Touch Clock Display and touch OFF or ON to turn the clock display off or on.
3. Touch ⬅ to go back to the previous menu.

The clock settings can also be accessed by touching the time display, then touching Set.

Power Outlets

12V Power Outlet

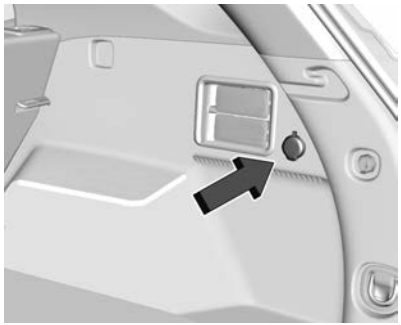
The vehicle has three 12 volt accessory power outlets, which can be used to connect electrical equipment.



The front 12V power outlet is located in the centre console, below the climate control system.



A 12V power outlet is also located at the rear of the centre console.



A 12V power outlet is also located in the rear load compartment.

To use an outlet, open the cover.

Caution

Leaving electrical equipment plugged in for an extended period of time while the vehicle is off will drain the battery. Always unplug electrical equipment when not in use and do not plug in equipment that exceeds the maximum 20 amp rating.

Certain accessory plugs may not be compatible with the accessory power outlet and could overload vehicle and adapter fuses. If a problem is experienced, see your dealer.

When adding electrical equipment, follow the installation instructions included with the equipment.

Caution

Hanging heavy equipment from the power outlet can cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty. The power outlets are designed for accessory power plugs only, such as mobile phone charge cords.

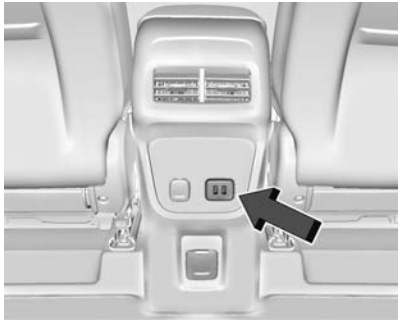
USB Port

The vehicle may have two USB ports with one or two outlets, which can be used to connect electrical equipment, such as a mobile phone, MP3 player, etc.



The front USB port is located at the front of the centre console, below the climate control system.

This port can be used to charge connected USB devices and also connect an audio device to the infotainment system. See *USB Port* ⇨ *136*.



A USB port may also be located at the rear of the centre console.

This port is only for charging USB devices.

230V AC Power Outlet

If equipped, this power outlet can be used to connect electrical equipment that uses a maximum limit of 150 watts.



The power outlet is at the rear of the centre console.

An indicator light on the outlet turns on to show it is in use. The light comes on when the ignition is on and equipment requiring less than 150 watts is plugged into the outlet, and no system fault is detected.

The indicator light does not come on when the ignition is off or if the equipment is not fully seated into the outlet.

If equipment is connected using more than 150 watts or a system fault is detected, a protection circuit shuts off the power supply and the indicator light turns off.

To reset the circuit, unplug the item and then plug it back in, or turn the ignition off and also ensure Retained Accessory Power (RAP) is off. Then turn the ignition back on. See *Retained Accessory Power (RAP)* ⇨ *218*.

The power restarts when equipment using 150 watts or less is plugged into the outlet and a system fault is not detected.

The power outlet is not designed for the following and may not work properly if they are plugged in:

- Equipment with high initial peak wattage, such as compressor-driven refrigerators and electric power tools.
- Other equipment requiring an extremely stable power supply.
- Medical equipment.

Wireless Charging



If equipped, the vehicle has a wireless charging pocket at the front of the centre console.

The system operates at 145 kHz and wirelessly charges one PMA or Qi compatible mobile device at a time. The power output of the system is capable of charging at a rate up to 1 amp (5W), as requested by the compatible mobile device.

To check for phone or other device compatibility, see your dealer for details.

⚠ Warning

Wireless charging can affect the operation of an implanted pacemaker or other medical devices. If you have one, it is recommended to consult with your doctor before using the wireless charging system.

The vehicle must be on, in Accessory mode, or Retained Accessory Power (RAP) must be active. The wireless charging feature may not correctly indicate charging when the vehicle is in RAP. See *Retained Accessory Power (RAP)* ⇨ *218*.

The operating temperature is −20 °C to 60 °C for the charging system and 0 °C to 35 °C for the phone.

⚠ Warning

Remove all objects from the charging pad before charging your mobile device. Objects, such as coins, keys, rings, paper clips, or cards, between the phone and charging pad will become very hot. On the rare occasion that the charging system does not detect an object, and the object gets wedged between the phone and charger, remove the phone and allow the object to cool before removing it from the charging pad, to prevent burns.

To charge a mobile device:

1. Remove all objects from the charging pad. The system may not charge if there are any objects between the mobile device and the charging pad.
2. Place the mobile device face up on the charging pad aligned against the back of the storage area.

3. The ϟ will appear on the ☎ on the infotainment display. This indicates the mobile device is correctly positioned and charging.

If ϟ does not appear on the infotainment display:

1. Remove the mobile device from the pad and wait three seconds.
2. Turn the mobile device 180 degrees before placing/aligning it on the pad again.

Warning Lights, Gauges, and Indicators

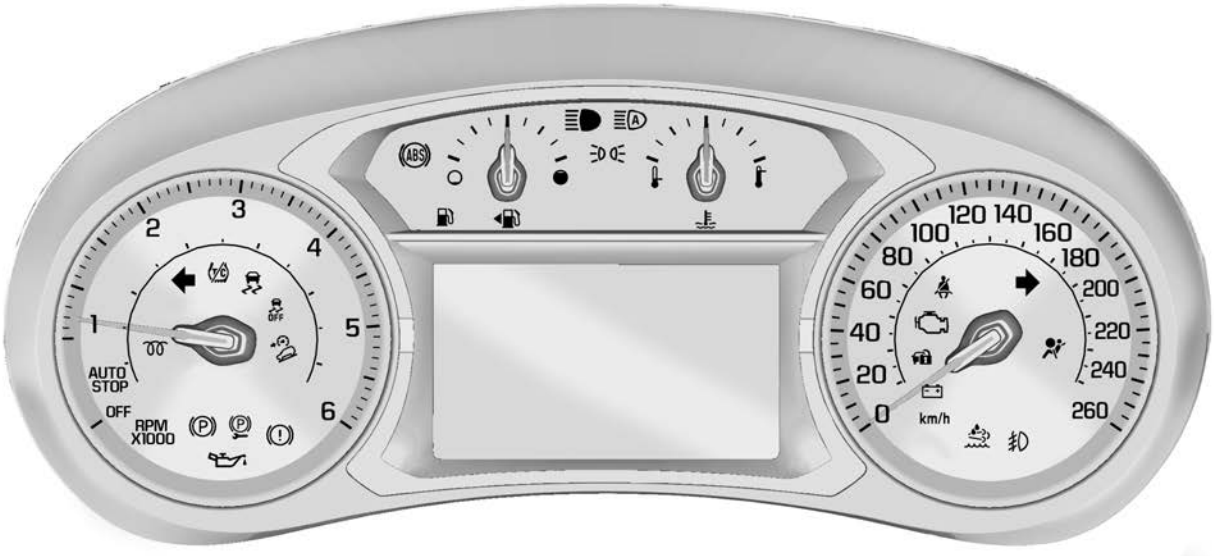
Warning lights and gauges can signal that something is wrong before it becomes serious enough to cause an expensive repair or replacement. Paying attention to the warning lights and gauges could prevent injury.

Some warning lights come on briefly when the engine is started to indicate they are working. When one of the warning lights comes on and stays on while driving, or when one of the gauges shows there may be a problem, check the section that explains what to do. Waiting to do repairs can be costly and even dangerous.

Instrument Cluster



Midlevel


ABS
A
1
2
3
4
5
6
AUTO STOP
OFF
RPM X1000
0
20
40
60
80
100
120
140
160
180
200
220
240
260
km/h

Uplevel

Note
Displays may vary depending on vehicle options and equipment.

Overview

Symbols Shown on Instrument Cluster

: AdBlue, see *AdBlue* ⇨ *223*

: Airbag Readiness, see *Airbag Readiness Light* ⇨ *97*

: Antilock Brake System (ABS), see *Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light* ⇨ *101*

: Brake System Warning, see *Brake System Warning Light* ⇨ *99*

: Charging System, see *Charging System Light* ⇨ *98*

: Cruise Control, see *Cruise Control Light* ⇨ *105*

: Electric Parking Brake, see *Electric Parking Brake Light* ⇨ *100*

: Electronic Stability Control (ESC) Off, see *Electronic Stability Control (ESC) Off Light* ⇨ *103*

: Engine Coolant Temperature, see *Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge* ⇨ *96*

: Engine Oil Pressure, see *Engine Oil Pressure Light* ⇨ *103*

: Headlamp High-Beam On, see *High-Beam On Light* ⇨ *105*

: High Beam Assist, see *High-Beam On Light* ⇨ *105*

: Hill Descent Control, see *Hill Descent Control Light* ⇨ *101*

: Lamps On, see *Lamps On Reminder* ⇨ *105*

: Low Fuel, see *Low Fuel Warning Light* ⇨ *104*

: Malfunction Indicator Lamp, see *Malfunction Indicator Lamp* ⇨ *98*

: Seat Belt Reminder, see *Seat Belt Reminders* ⇨ *96*

: Security, see *Security Light* ⇨ *104*

: Service Electric Parking Brake, see *Service Electric Parking Brake Light (Up-level Cluster)* ⇨ *100*

: Traction Control (TCS) / Electronic Stability Control (ESC), see *Traction Control System (TCS)/ Electronic Stability Control Light* ⇨ *102*

: Traction Off, see *Traction Off Light* ⇨ *102*

: Vehicle Ahead, see *Vehicle Ahead Indicator* ⇨ *102*

: Wait-to-start, see *Wait-to-Start Light* ⇨ *103*

Symbols Shown on Driver Information Center

: Lane Keep Assist, see *Lane Keep Assist (LKA) Light* ⇨ *101*

: Rear Seat Belt Reminder, see *Seat Belt Reminders* ⇨ *96*

: Up-shift, see *Upshift light* ⇨ *101*

Symbol Shown on Overhead Console

: Passenger Seat Belt Reminder, see *Seat Belt Reminders* ⇨ *96*

Speedometer

The speedometer shows the vehicle's speed in kilometres per hour (km/h).

Odometer

The odometer shows how far the vehicle has been driven in kilometres.

Trip Odometer

The trip odometer shows how far the vehicle has been driven since the trip odometer was last reset.

The trip odometer is accessed and reset through the Driver Information Centre (DIC). See *Driver Information Centre (DIC)* ⇨ *106*.

Tachometer

The tachometer displays the engine speed in revolutions per minute (rpm).

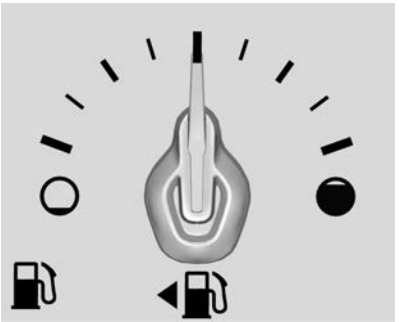
When pointing to AUTO STOP, the engine is off but the vehicle is on. The engine could auto start at any time. When the indicator points to OFF, the vehicle is off.

Drive the vehicle at a low engine speed for each gear as much as possible.

⚠ Warning

Do not allow the needle to remain in the warning/red zone.

Fuel Gauge



When the ignition is on, the fuel gauge indicates the amount of fuel in the tank. Up level shown, mid level is similar.

When the indicator nears empty, the low fuel light comes on. A message may also be displayed in the Driver Information Centre. There is a small amount of fuel left, but the fuel tank should be filled as soon as possible.

An arrow on the fuel pump symbol indicates the side of the vehicle the fuel door is on.

⚠ Danger

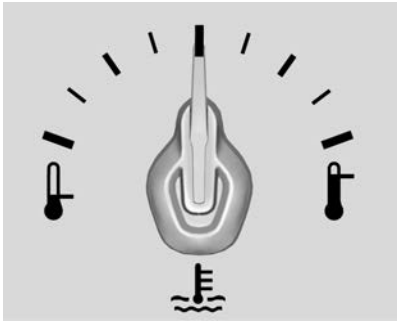
Before refuelling, stop the vehicle and switch the engine off.

Note

- Movement of the fuel within the fuel tank may cause the fuel gauge indicator to move when braking, accelerating, turning or if the vehicle is on an incline.
- The indicator takes a few seconds to stabilise after the ignition is turned on.

- The indicator returns to empty when the ignition is turned off.

Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge



This gauge shows the engine coolant temperature when the ignition is on. Up level shown, mid level is similar.

If the indicator moves toward the high end of the gauge, the engine is too hot.

If the engine coolant has overheated and the vehicle has been operating under normal driving conditions, pull off the road, stop the vehicle, and turn off the engine as soon as possible. See *Engine Overheating* ⇨ *287*.

Seat Belt Reminders

Driver Seat Belt Reminder Light

There is a driver seat belt reminder light on the instrument cluster.



When the vehicle is started, this light flashes and a chime may come on to remind the driver to fasten their seat belt. Then the light stays on solid until the belt is buckled. This cycle may continue several times if the driver remains or becomes unbuckled while the vehicle is moving.

If the driver seat belt is buckled, neither the light nor the chime comes on.

Passenger Seat Belt Reminder Light

The vehicle has a passenger seat belt reminder light located in the overhead console.



When the vehicle is started, this light flashes and a chime may come on to remind passengers to fasten their seat belt. Then the light stays on solid until the belt is buckled.

This cycle continues several times if the front passenger remains or becomes unbuckled while the vehicle is moving.

If the front passenger seat belt is buckled, neither the chime nor the light comes on.

The front passenger seat belt reminder light and chime may turn on if an object is put on the seat such as a briefcase, handbag, grocery bag, laptop, or other electronic device. To turn off the reminder light and/or chime, remove the object from the seat or buckle the seat belt.

Rear Passenger Belt Reminder Light



Mid-level Instrument Cluster

Rear seating positions monitored for seat belt use are represented by a symbol in the Driver Information Centre (DIC) indicating seat belt status.

When the vehicle is started, three seat belt symbols come on and stay on for several seconds in the instrument cluster to alert the driver that passengers may need to fasten their seat belts.

If a seat belt is not initially buckled, the instrument cluster displays a grey seat belt symbol. While the vehicle is moving, if a rear seat passenger that was previously buckled becomes unbuckled, the corresponding seat belt symbol will appear and a chime may sound.

Up-level Instrument Cluster

Rear seating positions monitored for seat belt use are represented by a coloured symbol in the Driver Information Centre (DIC) indicating seat belt status.

When the vehicle is started, three seat belt symbols come on and stay on for several seconds in the instrument cluster to alert the driver that passengers may need to fasten their seat belts.

After a rear seat passenger seat belt is buckled, the corresponding seat belt symbol in the instrument cluster turns green. If a seat belt is not initially buckled, the instrument cluster displays a grey seat belt symbol. While the vehicle is moving, if a rear seat passenger that was previously buckled becomes unbuckled, the corresponding seat belt symbol will change to flashing red and a chime may sound.

Airbag Readiness Light

This light shows if there is an electrical problem with the airbag system. The system check includes the airbag sensor(s), the pretensioners, the airbag modules, the wiring, and the crash sensing and diagnostic module. For more information on the airbag system, see *Airbag System* ⇨ *63*.



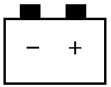
The airbag readiness light comes on for several seconds when the vehicle is started. If the light does not come on then, have it fixed immediately.

⚠ Warning

If the airbag readiness light stays on after the vehicle is started or comes on while driving, it means the airbag system might not be working properly. The airbags in the vehicle might not inflate in a crash, or they could even inflate without a crash. To help avoid injury, have the vehicle serviced right away.

If there is a problem with the airbag system, a Driver Information Centre (DIC) message may also come on.

Charging System Light



The charging system light comes on briefly when the ignition is turned on, but the engine is not running, as a check to show the light is working. The light turns off when the engine is started. If it does not, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer.

If the light stays on, or comes on while driving, there may be a problem with the electrical charging system. Have it checked by your dealer. Driving while this light is on could drain the battery.

When this light comes on, the Driver Information Centre (DIC) also displays a message.

If a short distance must be driven with the light on, be sure to turn off all accessories, such as the radio and air conditioner.

Malfunction Indicator Lamp

This light comes on when the ignition is turned on as a check to show it is working. If it does not, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer.

If the light comes on while the engine is running, a malfunction has been detected and the vehicle may require service.

This light may also come on when the system has detected a problem with the AdBlue system (for diesel engine). See *AdBlue* ⇨ *223*.



Malfunctions are often indicated by the system before any problem is noticeable. Being aware of the light and seeking service promptly when it comes on may prevent damage.

Caution

If the vehicle is continually driven with this light on, the emission controls might not work as well, the vehicle fuel economy might not be as good, and the engine might not run as smoothly. This may lead to costly repairs that might not be covered by the New Vehicle Voluntary Warranty.

Modifications made to the engine, transmission, exhaust, intake, or fuel system of the vehicle can affect the vehicle's emission controls and can cause this light to come on. Modifications to these systems could lead to costly repairs not covered by the New Vehicle Voluntary Warranty.

If the light is flashing (petrol engines only) : A malfunction has been detected that could damage the emission control system and increase vehicle emissions. Diagnosis and service may be required.

To help prevent damage, reduce vehicle speed and avoid hard accelerations and uphill gradients. If towing a trailer, reduce the amount of cargo being hauled as soon as possible.

If the light continues to flash, find a safe place to park. Turn the engine off and wait at least 10 seconds before restarting the engine. If the light is still flashing, follow the previous guidelines and see your dealer for service as soon as possible.

If the light is on steady (all engines) : A malfunction has been detected. Diagnosis and service may be required.

Check the following:

- A loose or missing fuel cap may cause the light to come on. See *Filling the Tank (Petrol Engines)* ⇨ *262* or *Filling the Tank (Diesel Engine)* ⇨ *263*. A few driving trips with the cap properly installed may turn the light off.
- Poor fuel quality can cause inefficient engine operation and poor driveability, which may go away once the engine is warmed up. If this occurs, change the fuel brand. It may require at least one full tank of the correct fuel to turn the light off. See *Fuel* ⇨ *256*.

If the light remains on, see your dealer.

Brake System Warning Light

The vehicle brake system consists of two hydraulic circuits. If one circuit is not working, the remaining circuit can still work to stop the vehicle. For normal braking performance, both circuits need to be working.

If the warning light comes on, there is a problem with the braking system. Have the brake system inspected right away.



This light should come on briefly when the engine is started. If it does not come on then, have it fixed so it will be ready to warn you if there is a problem.

If the light comes on and stays on, there is a brake problem.

⚠ Warning

The brake system might not be working properly if the brake system warning light is on. Driving with the brake system warning light on can lead to a crash. If the light is still on after the vehicle has been pulled off the road and carefully stopped, have the vehicle towed for service.

Electric Parking Brake Light



This light comes on when the parking brake is applied. If the light continues flashing after the parking brake is released, or while driving, there is a problem with the Electric Parking Brake system or another system. A message may also display in the Driver Information Centre (DIC).

If the light does not come on, or remains flashing, see your dealer.

Service Electric Parking Brake Light (Up-level Cluster)



This light should come on briefly when starting the vehicle. If it does not come on, have it fixed so it will be ready to warn if there is a problem.

If this light stays on, take the vehicle to your dealer as soon as possible. See the information for the Electric Parking Brake under *Electric Parking Brake* ⇨ *231*. A message may also display in the Driver Information Centre (DIC).

Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light



This light comes on briefly when the engine is started.

If the light does not come on, have it fixed so it will be ready to warn if there is a problem.

If the ABS light comes on and stays on while driving, stop as soon as possible and turn the ignition off. Start the engine again to reset the system. If the light stays on after driving at a speed above 20 km/h, see your dealer for service. A chime may also sound when the light comes on steady.

If the regular brake system warning light is not on, the vehicle still has brakes, but not antilock brakes. If the regular brake system warning light is also on, the vehicle does not have antilock brakes and there is a problem with the regular brakes. See *Brake System Warning Light* ⇨ *99*.

Upshift light



The vehicle may have an upshift light which is displayed in the Driver Information Centre.

This light comes on when an up-shift is recommended for best fuel economy. The number displayed with the arrow indicates the recommended gear.

Hill Descent Control Light



If equipped, the Hill Descent Control light comes on when the system is ready for use. When the light flashes, the system is active.

See *Hill Descent Control (HDC)* ⇨ *237*.

Lane Keep Assist (LKA) Light



If equipped, this light is displayed in the Driver Information Centre (DIC) and is green if LKA is available to assist.

The light will turn amber and the LKA may assist by gently turning the steering wheel if the vehicle approaches a detected lane marking without using the turn signal in that direction.

This light is amber and flashes as a Lane Departure Warning (LDW) alert, to indicate that the lane marking has been crossed.

See *Lane Keep Assist (LKA)* ⇨ *254*.

Vehicle Ahead Indicator



If equipped, this indicator will display green when a vehicle is detected ahead. It will change to amber when the distance to the preceding vehicle becomes small, or when approaching the vehicle too rapidly.

See *Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System* ⇨ *248*.

Traction Off Light



This light comes on briefly while starting the engine. If it does not, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer. If the system is working normally, the indicator light then turns off.

The traction off light comes on when the Traction Control System (TCS) has been turned off through the Driver Information Centre (DIC).

This light and the ESC OFF light come on when Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system is turned off.

If the TCS is off, wheel speed will be limited when necessary to protect the driveline from damage. Adjust driving accordingly.

See *Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control* ⇨ *234*.

Traction Control System (TCS)/Electronic Stability Control Light



This light comes on briefly when the engine is started.

If the light does not come on, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer. If the system is working normally, the indicator light turns off.

If the light is on and not flashing, the TCS and potentially the ESC system have been disabled. A Driver Information Centre (DIC) message may also display. Check the DIC messages to determine which feature(s) is no longer functioning and whether the vehicle requires service.

If the light is on and flashing, the TCS and/or the ESC system is actively working.

See *Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control* ⇨ *234*.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC) Off Light



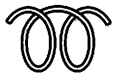
This light comes on briefly while starting the vehicle. If it does not, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer.

This light comes on when the ESC system is turned off. If ESC is off, the Traction Control System (TCS) is also off.

If the ESC and TCS are off, the system does not assist in controlling the vehicle. Turn on the TCS and the ESC systems and the warning light turns off.

See *Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control* ⇨ *234*.

Wait-to-Start Light



For diesel engines, the wait-to-start light shows that the engine is functioning properly and indicates when the engine can be started.

The fast warm-up glow plug system makes the wait-to-start light stay on for a shorter amount of time than most diesel engines.

For more information, see *Starting the Engine* ⇨ *217*.

Engine Oil Pressure Light

Caution
Lack of proper engine oil maintenance can damage the engine. Driving with the engine oil low can also damage the engine. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Check the oil level as soon as possible. Add oil if required, but if the oil level is within the operating range and the oil pressure is still low, have the vehicle serviced. Always follow the maintenance schedule for changing engine oil.

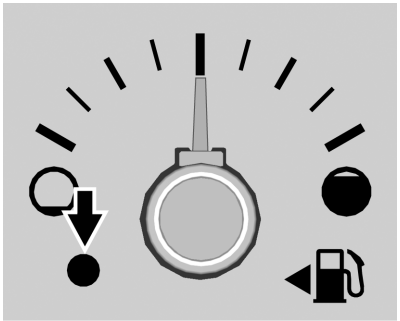


This light should come on briefly as the engine is started. If it does not come on, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer.

If the light comes on and stays on, it means that oil is not flowing through the engine properly. The vehicle could be low on oil and might have some other system problem. See your dealer.

Low Fuel Warning Light

Mid level



This light comes on for a few seconds when the ignition is turned on as a check to indicate it is working. If it does not come on, see your dealer.

The low fuel warning light comes on and a chime sounds when the vehicle is low on fuel. The light turns off when fuel is added to the fuel tank.

Up level



This light is near the fuel gauge and comes on briefly when the ignition is turned on as a check to show it is working.

It also comes on when the fuel tank is low on fuel. The light turns off when fuel is added. If it does not, see your dealer.

AdBlue Warning Light



This light, a Driver Information Centre (DIC) message, and a chime come on when there is an issue with the AdBlue system.

If the issue is not corrected, the light will continue to flash or remain illuminated. In some instances an engine start may be prevented.

See *AdBlue* ⇨ *223*.

Security Light



The security light should come on briefly as the engine is started. If it does not come on, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer. If the system is working normally, the indicator light turns off.

If the light stays on and the engine does not start, there could be a problem with the theft-deterrent system. See *Immobiliser Operation* ⇨ *39*.

High-Beam On Light



This light comes on when the high-beam headlamps are in use. See *Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer* ⇨ *123*.

High Beam Assist



If equipped, this light comes on when the high beam assist system is enabled. See *Exterior Lamp Controls* ⇨ *121*.

Front Fog Lamp Light



This light comes on when the fog lamps are on.

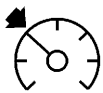
The light goes out when the fog lamps are turned off. See *Fog Lamps* ⇨ *125*.

Lamps On Reminder



This light comes on when the exterior lights are in use. See *Exterior Lamp Controls* ⇨ *121*.

Cruise Control Light



The cruise control light is white when the cruise control is on and ready. It turns green when the cruise control is set and active.

The light turns off when the cruise control is turned off. See *Cruise Control* ⇨ *237*.

Information Displays

Driver Information Centre (DIC)

The DIC displays are shown in the center of the instrument cluster. See *Instrument Cluster* ⇨ *92*. The displays show the status of many vehicle systems.

Note

Display items may vary depending on vehicle options and equipment.

To navigate the DIC screens and menus, use the steering wheel controls.



△ **or** ▽ **:** Press to move up or down in a list.

◁ **or** ▷ **:** Press to move between the interactive display zones in the cluster.

✓ **:** Press to open a menu or select a menu item. Press and hold to reset values on certain screens.

Midlevel DIC

Use ◁ or ▷ to choose the Trip, Vehicle, or ECO menus. Use △ or ▽ to scroll through items in each menu.

Trip/Fuel Menu (TRIP) Items

Speed : Displays how fast the vehicle is moving in kilometres per hour (km/h). The speedometer cannot be reset.

Trip 1 or Trip 2, Average Fuel Consumption : Displays the current distance travelled in kilometres (km) from the last reset for the trip odometer. The trip odometer can be reset to zero by pressing and holding ✓ while the trip odometer display is showing.

Also displays the approximate average fuel usage in litres per 100 kilometres (L/100 km) recorded since the last time this menu item was reset. This number reflects only the approximate average fuel economy the vehicle has right now, and will change as driving conditions change. Reset the average consumption by pressing ✓ when it is displayed.

Fuel Range : Displays the approximate distance the vehicle can be driven without refuelling. The fuel range estimate is based on an

average of the vehicle's fuel economy over recent driving history and the amount of fuel remaining in the fuel tank. Fuel range cannot be reset.

Average Vehicle Speed : Displays the average speed of the vehicle in kilometres per hour (km/h). This average is based on the various vehicle speeds recorded since the last reset. Reset the average speed by pressing ✓ when it is displayed.

Timer : To start the timer, press ✓ while Timer is displayed. The display will show the amount of time that has passed since the timer was last reset, not including time the ignition is off. Time will continue to be counted as long as the ignition is on, even if another display is being shown on the DIC. The timer will record up to 99 hours, 59 minutes, and 59 seconds (99:59:59) after which the display will return to zero. To stop the timer, press ✓ briefly while the Timer is displayed. To reset the timer to zero, press and hold ✓.

Blank Display : Displays no information.

Vehicle Information Menu (VEHICLE) Items

Remaining Oil Life : Displays an estimate of the engine oil's remaining useful life. If Remaining Oil Life 99% is displayed, that means 99% of the current oil life remains.

When the remaining oil life is low, the **Change Engine Oil Soon** message will appear on the display. The oil should be changed as soon as possible. See *Engine Oil* ⇨ *281*.

The oil life display must be reset after each oil change. Do not reset the oil life display accidentally at any time other than when the oil has just been changed. It cannot be reset accurately until the next oil change. To reset the engine oil life system, see *Engine Oil Life System* ⇨ *283*.

Oil Pressure : Oil pressure is displayed in either kilopascal (kPa) or pounds per square inch (psi).

Following Distance : If equipped, the current follow time to the vehicle ahead is displayed as a time value. See *Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System* ⇨ *248*.

Battery Voltage : Displays the current battery voltage, if equipped. Battery voltage changes are normal while driving. See *Charging System Light* ⇨ *98*. If there is a problem with the battery charging system, the DIC will display a message.

Coolant Temperature : Displays the coolant temperature in degrees Celsius (°C).

AdBlue Range (Diesel Engine) : If equipped, displays how far the vehicle can travel before the AdBlue requires filling. See *AdBlue* ⇨ *223*.

TC/ESC : Displays the current status (on or off) of the Traction Control and Electronic Stability Control systems. Press ✓ to turn on or off Traction Control or Electronic Stability Control. See *Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control* ⇨ *234*.

Speed Warning : This display is used to set the vehicle speed at which the speed warning chime sounds and the alert is displayed. The speed can be set by pressing ✓ while the speed warning display is showing.

ECO Drive Assist Menu (ECO) Items

Fuel Economy : Displays the approximate instantaneous fuel economy as a number and bar graph. Displayed above the bar graph is a running average of fuel economy for the most recently travelled selected distance. Displayed below the bar graph is the best average fuel economy that has been achieved for the selected distance. The selected distance is displayed at the top of the page as 'last xxx km'. Press ✓ to change the distance or reset best value.

The display provides information on how current driving behavior affects the running average and how well recent driving compares to the best that has been achieved for the selected distance.

Economy Trend : Shows history of the Average Fuel Economy from the last 50 km. Each bar represents about 5 km of driving. During driving the bars will shift to always reflect the most recent distance on the right side. Press and hold ✓ to clear the graph or press ✓ to reset through the menu.

Uplevel DIC

Info Items

The following is the list of all possible DIC Info page displays. Some may not be available for your particular vehicle.

Some items may not be turned on by default but can be turned on either through a sub-menu on the right or the Options menu. See “Options Items” further in this section.

Speed : Shows the vehicle speed in kilometres per hour (km/h).

Speed Sign Assistant :



Displays the current speed limit in kilometres per hour (km/h).

The display information is sourced from the onboard navigation system. If at any time you lose navigation, or if there is no data available for the speed limit in the current area, two dashes in the speed sign are displayed.

This feature is to be used as a guide only and does not replace current posted speed limits. As the information is sourced from the onboard navigation system's database, there is a possibility posted limits have changed since the database was produced.

Trip A or Trip B : Shows the current distance travelled, in kilometres (km), since the trip odometer was last reset.

This also shows the approximate average litres per 100 kilometres (L/100 km). This number is calculated based on the number of L/100 km recorded since the last time this menu item was reset. This number reflects only the approximate average fuel economy that the vehicle has right now, and will change as driving conditions change.

Press and hold ✓ while this display is active to reset the trip odometer and the average fuel economy. Trip A and Trip B can also be reset by pressing ▷ and choosing reset.

Fuel Information : Fuel Range: Shows the approximate distance the vehicle can be driven without refuelling. LOW will be displayed when the vehicle is low on fuel. The fuel range estimate is based on an average of the vehicle's fuel economy over recent driving history and the amount of fuel remaining in the fuel tank.

Instant Fuel Economy: Shows real-time fuel usage as you are driving.

Oil Life : Shows an estimate of the oil's remaining useful life.
If **Remaining Oil Life 99%** is displayed, that means 99% of the current oil life remains.

When the remaining oil life is low, the **Change Engine Oil Soon** message will appear on the display. The oil should be changed as soon as possible. See *Engine Oil* ⇨ *281*.

The Oil Life display must be reset after each oil change. It will not reset itself. Do not to reset the Oil Life display at any time other than when the oil has just been changed. It cannot be reset accurately until the next oil change. To reset the engine oil life system, press and hold ✓ for several seconds while the Oil Life display is active. See *Engine Oil Life System* ⇨ *283*.

Fuel Economy : Displays the approximate instantaneous fuel economy as a number and bar graph. Displayed above the bar graph is a running average of fuel economy for the most recently travelled selected distance. Displayed below the bar graph is the best average fuel economy that has been achieved for the selected distance.

The selected distance is displayed at the top of the page as 'Last xxx km'. Press ▷ to select the distance or reset best value.

Use △ and ▽ to choose the distance and press ✓. Press △ and ▽ to select “Reset Best Score.” Press ✓ to reset the best average fuel economy. After reset, the best value displays “-,-” until the selected distance has been travelled.

The display provides information on how current driving behavior affects the running average and how well recent driving compares to the best that has been achieved for the selected distance.

Average Speed : Displays the average vehicle speed of the vehicle in kilometres per hour

(km/h). This average is based on the various vehicle speeds recorded since the last reset. Reset the average speed by pressing ✓.

Timer : This display can be used as a timer. To start the timer, press ✓ while this display is active. The display will show the amount of time that has passed since the timer was last reset. To stop the timer, press ✓ briefly while this display is active and the timer is running. To reset the timer to zero, press and hold ✓ while this display is active, or press ▷ and select reset.

AdBlue Range (Diesel Engine) : If equipped, displays how far the vehicle can travel before the AdBlue requires filling. See *AdBlue* ⇨ *223*.

Follow Distance : If equipped, the current follow time to the vehicle ahead is displayed as a time value on this page.

Eco Statistics : Shows history of the Average Fuel Economy from the last 50 km. Each bar represents about 5 km of driving. During driving the bars will shift to always reflect the most recent distance on the right side. Press and hold ✓ to clear the graph or press ▷ to reset through the menu.

Battery Voltage : Displays the current battery voltage, if equipped. Battery voltage changes are normal while driving. See *Charging System Light* ⇨ *98*. If there is a problem with the battery charging system, the DIC will display a message.

Coolant Temperature : Displays the coolant temperature in degrees Celsius (°C).

Oil Pressure : Oil pressure is displayed in either kilopascal (kPa) or pounds per square inch (psi). Oil pressure can vary with engine speed, outside temperature, and oil viscosity. On some models, the oil pump will vary engine oil pressure according to engine needs. Oil pressure may change quickly as the engine speed or load varies. This is normal. If the oil pressure warning light or a DIC message indicates oil pressure outside the normal operating range, check the vehicle's oil as soon as possible.

Audio Items

Enables browsing for music, selecting from favourites or changing the audio source.

Phone Items

Enables managing and performing phone calls, scrolling through contacts or operating a connected hands free mobile phone.

Navigation Items

Enables route guidance.

Options Items

Info Pages : Select Edit List to turn on or off the items displayed in the Info Items pages.

1. Press ◁ to access the applications.
2. Press △ or ▽ to scroll to the Options menu.
3. Press ✓ to enter the Options menu.

4. Scroll to Info Pages and press ▷.
5. Press △ or ▽ to move through the list of possible information displays.
6. Press ✓ while an item is highlighted to select or deselect that item. When an item is selected, a checkmark will appear next to it.

Speed Warning : Alerts the driver when a set speed is exceeded.

Press ✓ to turn on and then press ▷ and select Set Speed Warning to change the setting.

Traction & Stability : Enables the traction control and electronic stability control systems to be turned on or off. See *Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control* ⇨ *234*.

Vehicle Messages

Messages displayed on the DIC indicate the status of the vehicle or an action that may be needed to correct a condition, or displayed in response to an action. Multiple messages may appear one after another.

The messages that do not require immediate action can be acknowledged and cleared by pressing ✓. The messages that require immediate action cannot be cleared until that action is performed.

All messages should be taken seriously; clearing the message does not correct the problem.

If a SERVICE message appears, see your dealer.

Follow the instructions given in the messages. The system may display messages regarding the following topics:

- Service Messages
- Fluid Levels
- Vehicle Security
- Brakes
- Ride Control Systems
- Driver Assistance Systems
- Cruise Control
- Lighting and Bulb Replacement
- Wiper/Washer Systems
- Doors and Windows
- Seat Belts
- Airbag Systems
- Engine and Transmission
- Battery

Engine Power Messages

ENGINE POWER IS REDUCED

This message displays when the vehicle's engine power is reduced. Reduced engine power can affect the vehicle's ability to accelerate. If this message is on, but there is no reduction in performance, proceed to your destination. The performance may be reduced the next time the vehicle is driven. The

vehicle may be driven while this message is on, but maximum acceleration and speed may be reduced. Any time this message stays on, or displays repeatedly, the vehicle should be taken to your dealer for service as soon as possible.

Vehicle Speed Messages

SPEED LIMITED TO XXX KM/H

This message shows the vehicle speed has been limited to the speed displayed. The limited speed is a protection for various engine and vehicle systems such as the lubrication and cooling systems, etc.

Vehicle Personalisation

Use the audio system controls to access the personalisation menus for customising vehicle features.

Note

The following are all possible personalisation features. Depending on the vehicle and options, some may not be available or named slightly different.

Infotainment System Audio System Controls

To access the personalisation menu:

1. Touch SETTINGS on the Home Page on the infotainment display.
2. Touch the desired feature to display a list of available options.
3. Touch the desired option.
4. Touch the back icon to return to the previous menu.

Personalisation Menus

The following list of menu items may be available:

- Time and Date
- Rear Seat Reminder
- Language
- Valet Mode
- Radio
- Vehicle
- Bluetooth
- Apple CarPlay
- Android Auto
- USB Auto Launch
- Voice
- Display
- Rear Camera
- Return to Factory Settings
- Software Information

Each menu is detailed in the following information.

Time and Date

Manually set the time and date. See *Clock ⇨ 86*.

Rear Seat Reminder

This allows for a chime and a message when the rear door has been opened before or during operation of the vehicle.

Select Off or On.

Language

Select Language, then select from the available language(s).

The selected language will display on the system, and voice recognition will reflect the selected language.

Valet Mode

This will lock the infotainment system and steering wheel controls. It may also limit access to vehicle storage locations, if equipped.

To enable valet mode:

1. Enter a four-digit code on the keypad.
2. Select Enter to go to the confirmation screen.
3. Re-enter the four-digit code.

Touch Lock or Unlock to lock or unlock the system. Touch Back to go back to the previous menu.

Radio

Touch and the following may display:

- Manage Favourites
- Number of Favourites Shown
- Audible Touch Feedback
- Text Scroll
- Tone Settings
- Auto Volume
- Bose AudioPilot
- Maximum Startup Volume

Manage Favourites

This allows favourites to be edited. See *AM-FM Radio ⇨ 134* or *AM-FM Radio (Inc. DAB) ⇨ 157*.

Number of Favourites Shown

Touch to set the number of favourites to display.

Select the desired number or select Auto and the infotainment system will automatically adjust the number of favourites shown.

Audible Touch Feedback

This allows Audible Touch Feedback to be turned on or off.

Select Off or On.

Text Scroll

This allows scrolling of text on the display such as radio station identification, messages or music information.

Select Off or On.

Tone Settings

Select to adjust the radio tone. See *Operation ⇨ 133* or “Infotainment System Settings” under *AM-FM Radio (Inc. DAB) ⇨ 157*.

Auto Volume

This feature adjusts the volume based on the vehicle speed.

Select Off, Low, Medium-Low, Medium, Medium-High, or High.

Bose AudioPilot

AudioPilot is noise compensation technology that adjusts the volume based on the background noise and vehicle speed.

Select Off or On.

Maximum Startup Volume

This feature sets the maximum startup volume. If the vehicle is started and the volume is greater than this level, the volume is adjusted to this level.

To set the maximum startup volume, touch + or − to increase or decrease.

Vehicle

Select and the following may display:

- Climate and Air Quality
- Collision/Detection Systems
- Comfort and Convenience
- Lighting
- Power Door Locks
- Remote Lock, Unlock, Start

Climate and Air Quality

Select and the following may display:

- Auto Fan Speed
- Auto Demist
- Auto Rear Demist

Auto Fan Speed

This feature will set the auto fan speed.

Select Low, Medium, or High.

Auto Demist

When set to On, the front demist will automatically react to temperature and humidity conditions that may cause fogging.

Select Off or On.

Auto Rear Demist

This feature will automatically turn on the rear window demister when it is cold outside.

Select Off or On.

Collision/Detection Systems

Select the Collision/Detection Systems menu and the following may be displayed if equipped:

- Alert Type
- Forward Collision System
- Park Assist
- Rear Cross Traffic Alert
- Lane Change Alert

Alert Type

This feature will set crash alerts to beeps or seat vibrations. This setting affects all crash alerts including Forward Collision, Lane Departure Warning, Parking Assist, and Backing Warning alerts.

Select Beeps or Safety Alert Seat.

Forward Collision System

This feature will turn on or off the Forward Collision Alert (FCA) and Autonomous Emergency Braking (AEB). The Off setting disables all FCA and AEB functions. With the Alert and Brake setting, both FCA and AEB are available. The Alert setting disables AEB. See *Autonomous Emergency Braking (AEB)* ⇨ *250*.

Select Off, Alert, or Alert and Brake.

Park Assist

If equipped, this allows the feature to be turned on or off. See *Parking Assist* ⇨ *243*.

Select Off or On.

Rear Cross Traffic Alert

This allows the feature to be turned on or off. See *Rear Vision Camera (RVC)* ⇨ *241*.

Select Off or On.

Lane Change Alert

This allows the feature to be turned on or off. See *Lane Change Alert (LCA)* ⇨ *252*.

Select Off or On.

Comfort and Convenience

Select and the following may display:

- Auto Memory Recall
- Easy Exit Options
- Chime Volume
- Hands Free Tailgate Control
- Personalisation by Driver
- Rainsense Wipers
- Auto Wipe in Reverse Gear
- Extended Hill Start Assist

Auto Memory Recall

This feature automatically recalls the current driver's previously stored 1 or 2 button positions when the ignition is changed from off to on or Accessory mode. See *Memory Seats* ⇨ *52*.

Select Off or On.

Easy Exit Options

This feature automatically recalls the previously stored Exit button position when exiting the vehicle. See *Memory Seats* ⇨ *52*.

Select Off or On.

Chime Volume

This allows the selection of the chime volume level.

Touch + or − to adjust the volume.

Hands Free Tailgate Control

The liftgate may be operated with a kicking motion under the rear bumper between the left exhaust pipe and the number plate. See *Liftgate* ⇨ *33*.

Select Off, On-Open and Close, or On-Open Only.

Personalisation by Driver

Activates or deactivates the personalisation function.

Select Off or On.

Rainsense Wipers

Activates or deactivates automatic wiping of the windscreen with the rain sensor. See *Windshield Wiper/ Washer* ⇨ *83*.

Select Off or On.

Auto Wipe in Reverse Gear

When on and the front wiper is on, the rear wiper will automatically activate when the vehicle is shifted to R (Reverse).

Select Off or On.

Extended Hill Start Assist

This allows the duration of the Hill Start Assist to be changed.

Select Extended Hold or Standard Hold.

Lighting

Select and the following may display:

- Vehicle Locator Lights
- Exit Lighting

Vehicle Locator Lights

This feature will flash the exterior lamps and allows some of the exterior lamps and most of the interior lamps to turn on briefly when on the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter is pressed to locate the vehicle.

Select Off or On.

Exit Lighting

This allows the selection of how long the exterior lamps stay on when leaving the vehicle when it is dark outside.

Select Off, 30 Seconds, 60 Seconds, or 120 Seconds.

Power Door Locks

Select and the following may display:

- Unlocked Door Anti-Lockout
- Auto Door Lock

Unlocked Door Anti-Lockout

When on, this feature will keep the driver door from locking when the door is open. If this feature is turned on, the Delayed Door Lock menu will not be available.

Select Off or On.

Auto Door Lock

Activates the automatic door locking function after the automatic transmission is shifted from Park (P) or the vehicle exceeds approx. 13 km/h (manual transmission).

Select Off or On.

Remote Lock, Unlock, Start

Select and the following may display:

- Remote Unlock Light Feedback
- Remote Lock Feedback
- Remote Door Unlock
- Remote Start Auto Cool Seats
- Remote Start Auto Heat Seats
- Remote Window Operation
- Passive Door Unlock

- Passive Door Lock
- Remote Left in Vehicle Alert

Remote Unlock Light Feedback

When on, the exterior lamps will flash when unlocking the vehicle with the RKE transmitter.

Select Off or Flash Lights.

Remote Lock Feedback

This allows selection of what type of feedback is given when locking the vehicle with the RKE transmitter.

Select Off, Lights and Horn, Lights Only, or Horn Only.

Remote Door Unlock

This allows selection of which doors will unlock when pressing on the RKE transmitter.

Select All Doors or Driver Door.

Remote Start Auto Cool Seats

If equipped and turned on, this feature will turn the ventilated seats on when using remote start on warm days.

Select Off or On.

Remote Start Auto Heat Seats

If equipped and turned on, this feature will turn the heated seats on when using remote start on cold days.

Select Off or On.

Remote Window Operation

This allows the windows to be opened when pressing on the RKE transmitter. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation* ⇨ *24*.

Select Off or On.

Passive Door Unlock

This allows the selection of what doors will unlock when using the button on the driver door to unlock the vehicle.

Select All Doors or Driver Door.

Passive Door Lock

This allows passive locking to be turned on or off and selects feedback. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation* ⇨ *24*.

Select Off, On with Horn Chirp, or On.

Remote Left in Vehicle Alert

This feature sounds an alert when the RKE transmitter is left in the vehicle. This menu may also enable Remote No Longer In Vehicle Alert.

Select Off or On.

Bluetooth

Select and the following may display:

- Device Information
- Pair New Device
- Device Management
- Change Pairing PIN
- Ringtones
- Sort Order
- Voice Mail Numbers
- Text Message Alerts

Device Information

See information about the device name, address, and PIN code.

Pair New Device

Select to pair a new device. See *Bluetooth* ⇨ *144* or *Bluetooth* ⇨ *195*.

Device Management

Select to connect to a different phone source, disconnect a phone, or delete a phone.

Change Pairing PIN

Select to change the PIN of a device.

Ringtones

Touch to change the ring tone for the specific phone. The phone does not need to be connected to change the ring tone.

Sort Order

Select to change the order of the contacts list.

Select First/Last or Last/First.

Voice Mail Numbers

This feature displays the voice mail number for all connected phones. To change the voice mail number, touch the edit symbol. Type a new number, then touch Save.

Text Message Alerts

This feature allows text messages to be received. See *Text Messaging* ⇨ *201*.

Select Off or On.

Apple CarPlay

Select and the following may display:

- Apple CarPlay
- Manage Apple CarPlay Devices

Apple CarPlay

This feature allows Apple devices to be connected to the infotainment system through a USB port.

Select Off or On.

Manage Apple CarPlay Devices

Select to manage Apple devices. Apple CarPlay must be on for this feature to be accessed.

Android Auto

Select and the following may display:

- Android Auto
- Manage Android Auto Devices

Android Auto

This feature allows Android devices to be connected to the infotainment system through a USB port.

Select Off or On.

Manage Android Auto Devices

Select to manage Android devices. Android Auto must be on for this feature to be accessed.

USB Auto Launch

This allows Android and Apple CarPlay devices to automatically connect when plugged into the USB port.

Select Off or On.

Voice

Select and the following may display:

- Confidence Threshold
- Prompt Length
- Audio Feedback Speed
- Display “What Can I Say?” Tips

Confidence Threshold

This feature allows the adjustment of the sensitivity of the speech recognition system.

Select Confirm More or Confirm Less.

Prompt Length

This feature adjusts the voice prompt length.

Select Short or Long.

Audio Feedback Speed

This feature adjusts the audio feedback speed.

Select Slow, Medium, or Fast.

Display “What Can I Say?” Tips

This feature gives voice command tips.

Select Off or On.

Display

Select and the following may display:

- Calibrate Touchscreen
- Turn Display Off

Calibrate Touchscreen

Select to calibrate the touchscreen, then follow the prompts.

Turn Display Off

Select to turn the display off. Touch anywhere on the infotainment display area or press any controls on the infotainment system fascia to turn the display on.

Rear Camera

Select and the following may display:

- Guidance Lines
- Rear Park Assist Symbols

Guidance Lines

Select to turn Off or On. See *Rear Vision Camera (RVC)* ⇨ *241*.

Rear Park Assist Symbols

Select to turn Off or On. See *Rear Vision Camera (RVC)* ⇨ *241*.

Return to Factory Settings

Select and the following may display:

- Restore Vehicle Settings
- Clear All Private Data
- Restore Radio Settings

Restore Vehicle Settings

This allows selection of restoring vehicle settings.

Select Restore or Cancel.

Clear All Private Data

This allows selection to clear all private information from the vehicle.

Select Delete or Cancel.

Restore Radio Settings

This allows selection to restore radio settings.

Select Restore or Cancel.

Software Information

Touch to view the version of the infotainment system software.

Lighting

Exterior Lighting
Exterior Lamp Controls 121
Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer 123
Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) 123
Automatic Headlamp System 123
Headlamp Leveling Control . . . 124
Hazard Warning Flashers 125
Turn and Lane-Change Signals 125
Fog Lamps 125

Interior Lighting
Instrument Panel Illumination Control 126
Courtesy Lamps 126
Dome Lamps 126
Reading Lamps 127

Lighting Features
Entry Lighting 127
Exit Lighting 127
Battery Power Protection 128
Exterior Lighting Battery Saver 128

Exterior Lighting

Exterior Lamp Controls



The exterior lamp control is on the instrument panel on the outer side of the steering column.

There are four positions.

⏻ **:** Turns the exterior lamps off and deactivates AUTO mode. Turn to ⏻ again to reactivate AUTO mode.

AUTO : Turns the exterior and instrument panel lamps on and off automatically depending on outside lighting.

: Turns on the parking, tail, number plate and instrument panel lamps.

: Additionally turns on the headlamps.

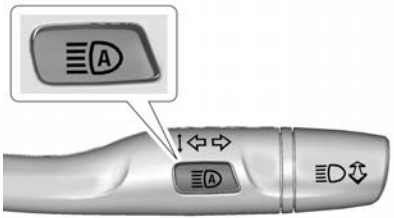
High Beam Assist

If equipped, High Beam Assist turns the vehicle's high-beam headlamps on and off automatically when it is dark enough and there is no other traffic present.



This light comes on in the instrument cluster when High Beam Assist is enabled.

Enabling High Beam Assist



Press (A) on the turn signal lever when it is dark outside and the exterior lamp control is in AUTO or ≡D. The blue high-beam on light is displayed on the instrument cluster when high beams are on.

Driving with High Beam Assist

The system only activates high beams when driving over 40 km/h.

There is a sensor near the top centre of the windscreen that automatically controls the system. Keep this area of the windscreen clear of debris for best system performance.

The high-beam headlamps remain on, under automatic control, until one of the following situations occurs:

- The system detects an approaching vehicle's headlamps.
- The system detects a preceding vehicle's tail lamps.
- The outside light is bright enough that high-beam headlamps are not required.
- The vehicle's speed drops below 20 km/h.
- Use the button on the turn signal lever to disable High Beam Assist.
- The front fog lamps are turned on.

High beams may not turn off automatically if the system cannot detect another vehicle's headlamps or tail lamps due to any of the following:

- The other vehicle's head/tail lamps are missing, damaged, obstructed from view, or otherwise undetected.
- The other vehicle's head/tail lamps are covered with dirt, snow, and/or road spray.
- The other vehicle's head/tail lamps cannot be detected due to dense exhaust fumes, smoke, fog, snow, road spray, mist, or other airborne obstructions.
- The vehicle's windscreen is dirty, cracked, or obstructed by something that blocks the view of the light sensor.
- The vehicle is loaded such that the front end points upward, causing the light sensor to aim too high and not detect headlamps and tail lamps.

- The vehicle is being driven on winding or hilly roads.

High Beam Assist may need to be disabled manually if any of the above conditions exists.

Headlamp High/ Low-Beam Changer

To activate high beam:

- When the headlamps are on, push the turn signal lever away from you and release.



- The high beam light turns on in the instrument cluster.

To return to low beam:

- Push the lever again or pull it towards you and release.

To flash the high beam lamps:

- Pull the lever towards you and release.
- The lamps can be flashed even if the headlamps are off.

Daytime Running Lamps (DRL)

DRL can make it easier for others to see the front of your vehicle during the day.

The DRL system comes on during daylight when the following conditions are met:

- The ignition is on.
- The exterior lamp control is in AUTO.
- The light sensor determines it is daytime.

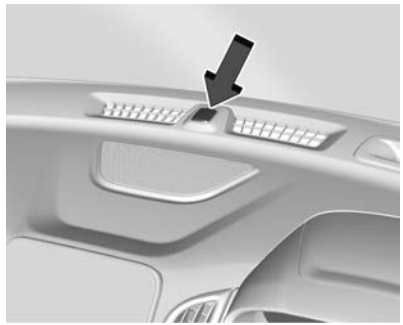
When the DRL are on, the tail lamps, park lamps, instrument panel lights, and other lamps are not on. The instrument cluster will be lit.

The DRL turns off when the exterior lamp control is turned to ⏻ or the ignition is off.

The regular headlamp system should be turned on when needed.

Automatic Headlamp System

When the exterior lamp control is set to AUTO and it is dark enough outside, the headlamps come on automatically.



There is a light sensor on top of the instrument panel. Do not cover the sensor; otherwise the headlamps will come on when they are not needed.

The system may also turn on the headlamps when driving through a parking garage or tunnel.

When it is bright enough outside, the headlamps will turn off or may change to Daytime Running Lamps (DRL).

The automatic headlamp system turns off when the exterior lamp control is turned to ⏻ or the ignition is off.

Lights On with Wipers

If the windscreen wipers are activated in daylight with the engine on, and the exterior lamp control is in AUTO, the headlamps, park lamps, and other exterior lamps come on. The transition time for the lamps coming on varies based on wiper speed. When the wipers are not operating, these lamps turn off. Move the exterior lamp control to ⏻ or to disable this feature.

Headlamp Leveling Control



Manual Headlamp Levelling

If equipped with the manual headlamp levelling control, the knob is near the exterior lamp control. This allows the headlamp level to be adjusted to suit the vehicle load. Correct adjustment of the headlamp level can reduce the glare for other drivers.

Low beam headlamps must be on to adjust the headlamp level.

: Turn the knob up or down to adjust the headlamps.

- 0 = Front seat occupied.
- 1 = All seats occupied.
- 2 = All seats occupied and load in the luggage compartment.
- 3 = Driver seat occupied and load in the luggage compartment.

Automatic Headlamp Levelling

If equipped, the angle of the headlamps is adjusted automatically based on vehicle load.

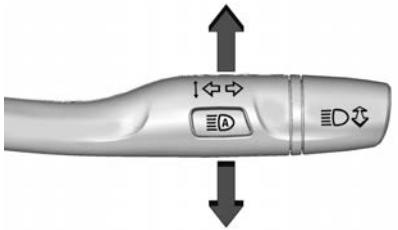
Hazard Warning Flashers



⚠ : Press to make the front and rear turn signal lamps flash on and off. This warns others that you are having trouble.

Press ⚠ again to turn the flashers off.

Turn and Lane-Change Signals



Move the lever all the way up or down to signal a turn.

An arrow on the instrument cluster will flash in the direction of the turn or lane change.

Raise or lower the lever until the arrow starts to flash to signal a lane change. Hold it there until the lane change is complete. If the lever is moved momentarily to the lane change position, the arrow will flash three times.

The lever returns to its starting position when it is released.

If after signalling a turn or lane change, the arrow flashes rapidly or does not come on, a signal bulb may be burnt out.

Have any burnt out bulbs replaced. If a bulb is not burnt out, check the fuse. See *Instrument Panel Fuse Block* ⇨ *299*.

Fog Lamps



The fog lamps button is on the instrument panel beside the steering wheel.

To turn on the fog lamps, the ignition and the headlamps or park lamps must be on.

: Press to turn on or off. An indicator light on the instrument cluster comes on when the fog lamps are on.

In very heavy fog, vision may be improved by having the park lamps and fog lamps on and turning the headlamps off.

Check state laws regarding the use of fog lamps when driving.

Interior Lighting

Instrument Panel Illumination Control



The brightness of the instrument cluster display, infotainment display and controls, steering wheel controls, and all other illuminated controls including feature status indicators can be adjusted.

The knob for this feature is on the instrument panel beside the steering column.

Push the knob to extend it and then turn the knob clockwise or anticlockwise to brighten or dim the lights. Push the knob back in when the desired setting is achieved.

Courtesy Lamps

The courtesy lamps come on when any door is opened and the OFF indicator light is turned off. See *Dome Lamps* ⇨ *126*.

Dome Lamps



The dome lamp controls are in the overhead console.

To operate, press the following buttons:

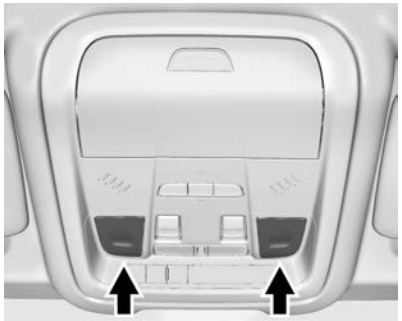
OFF : Press to turn off the dome lamps when a door is open. An indicator light on the button will

turn on when the dome lamp override is activated. Press OFF again to deactivate this feature and the indicator light will turn off. The dome lamps will come on when doors are opened.

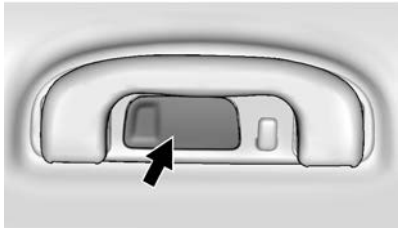
ON/OFF : Press to turn the dome lamps on manually.

Reading Lamps

There are reading lamps in the overhead console and over the rear passenger doors. These lamps come on when any door is opened.



Press the lamp lenses to manually turn the front reading lamps on or off.



Press the lamp lens to manually turn the rear passenger reading lamps on or off.

Lighting Features

Entry Lighting

Some exterior lamps and interior lamps turn on briefly at night, or in areas with limited lighting, when is pressed on the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter. When a door is opened, the interior lamps come on. They stay on for about 20 seconds. When all of the doors have been closed or the ignition is turned on, they gradually fade out.

This feature can be changed. See “Vehicle Locator Lights” under *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *112*.

Exit Lighting

Some exterior lamps and interior lamps come on at night, or in areas with limited lighting, when the driver door is opened after the ignition is turned off. The dome lamp comes on after the ignition is turned off. The exterior lamps and dome lamp remain on for a set amount of time, then automatically turn off.

To turn the exterior lamps turn off immediately, turn the exterior lamp control to off.

This feature can be changed. See *Vehicle Personalisation ⇨ 112*.

Battery Power Protection

This feature shuts off the interior lamps if they are left on for more than 10 minutes when the ignition is off. This helps to prevent the battery from running down.

Exterior Lighting Battery Saver

The exterior lamps turn off about 10 minutes after the ignition is turned off if the park lamps or headlamps have been manually left on. This protects against draining the battery. To restart the 10 minute timer, turn the exterior lamp control to the off position and then back to the park lamp or headlamp position.

To keep the lamps on for more than 10 minutes, the ignition must be on or in Accessory mode.

Infotainment System

MyLink

Introduction

Introduction 130
Theft-Deterrent Feature 130
Overview 131
Home Page 132
Steering Wheel Controls 132
Operation 133

Radio

AM-FM Radio 134
Radio Reception 135
Multi-Band Antenna 136

Audio Players

USB Port 136
Auxiliary Devices 142
Bluetooth Audio 142

Phone

Bluetooth 144
Apple CarPlay and Android Auto 147
Hands-Free Phone 148

MyLink with Built-in Navigation

Introduction

Introduction 150
Theft-Deterrent Feature 151
Overview 151
Steering Wheel Controls 153
Using the System 154

Radio

AM-FM Radio (Inc. DAB) 157
Radio Reception 160
Multi-Band Antenna 160

Audio Players

USB Port 161
Auxiliary Devices 164
Bluetooth Audio 165

Navigation

Using the Navigation System 166
Maps 172
Navigation Symbols 172
Destination 173
Global Positioning System (GPS) 187
Vehicle Positioning 188
Problems with Route Guidance 188
If the System Needs Service 189
Map Data Updates 189
Database Coverage Explanations 189

Voice Recognition

Voice Recognition 189

Phone

Bluetooth 195
Text Messaging 201
Apple CarPlay and Android Auto 202

Introduction

Two infotainment systems are available for this vehicle:

- MyLink (without built-in navigation)
- MyLink with Built-in Navigation

  On some models, this system may also include a Digital Audio Broadcast (DAB+) radio tuner.

The following pages describe the features and operation of the MyLink system. For vehicles fitted with the MyLink with Built-in Navigation system, see *Introduction* ⇨ *150*.

Read the following pages to become familiar with these features.

⚠ Warning

Taking your eyes off the road for too long or too often while using any infotainment feature can cause a crash. You or others could be injured or killed. Do not

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

give extended attention to infotainment tasks while driving. Limit your glances at the vehicle displays and focus your attention on driving. Use voice commands whenever possible.

The MyLink infotainment system has built-in features intended to help avoid distraction by disabling some functions when driving. These functions may grey out when they are unavailable.

Before driving:

- Become familiar with the operation and infotainment display controls.
- Set up the audio by presetting favourite stations and tone.
- Set up phone numbers in advance so they can be called easily by pressing a single button or by using a single voice command using Bluetooth® phone capability.

To play the infotainment system with the ignition off, see *Retained Accessory Power (RAP)* ⇨ *218*.

Theft-Deterrent Feature

The infotainment system has an electronic security system installed to prevent theft.

The infotainment system only works in the vehicle in which it was first installed, and cannot be used in another vehicle.

Overview



1. ⌂
   - Press to go to the Home Page. See “Home Page” further down in this section.
2. ⏮
   - Radio: Press and release to fast-seek the strongest previous station.
   - USB/Music/Pictures: Press to go to the previous content. Press and hold to fast rewind.
3. ⏻
   - Press to turn the power on.
   - Press and hold to turn the power off.
   - Press to mute/unmute the system when on.
   - Turn to decrease or increase the volume.
4. ⏭
   - Radio: Press and release to fast-seek the next strongest station.

- USB/Music/Pictures: Press to go to the next content. Press and hold to fast forward.

5.

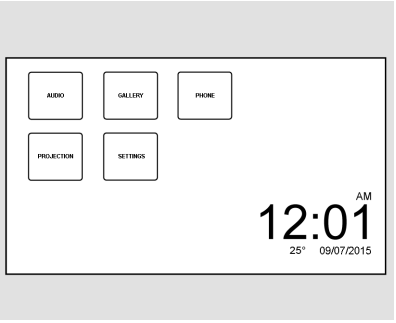
- Press and release to access the phone screen, answer an incoming call, or access the device home screen.

Infotainment Display Controls

Infotainment controls display on the screen when available. When a function is unavailable, the button may grey out. When a function is selected, the button may highlight.

Home Page

Home Page Features



Press ⌂ to go to the Home Page.

Audio : Touch to select AM, FM, USB/iPod/Bluetooth Audio, or AUX.

Gallery : Touch to view a picture.

Phone : Touch to activate the phone features. See *Bluetooth* ⇨ *144*.

Projection : Touch to access supported devices when connected. See *Apple CarPlay and Android Auto* ⇨ *147*.

Settings : Touch to access the Personalisation menu. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *112*.

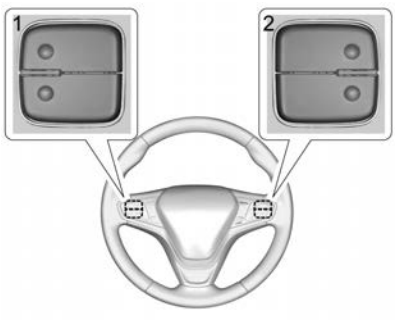
Steering Wheel Controls



Some of the audio controls can be adjusted on the steering wheel.

: Press to answer an incoming call or start voice recognition. See *Bluetooth* ⇨ *144*.

: Press to reject an incoming call or end a current call. Press to mute or unmute the infotainment system when not on a call.



Favourite and volume switches may be located on the back of the steering wheel.

1. Favourite: When on a radio source, press to select the next or previous favourite. When on a media source, press to select the next or previous track.
2. Volume: Press to increase or decrease the volume.

Operation

Controls

The infotainment system is operated by using the dial and buttons on the infotainment system fascia, the menus shown on the display, and steering wheel controls.

Turning the System On or Off

⏻ **:** Press to turn the radio on. Press and hold to turn the radio off.

Automatic Switch-Off

If the infotainment system has been turned on after the ignition is off, the system will turn off automatically after 10 minutes.

Volume Control

⏻ **:** Turn to increase or decrease. Press when the system is on to mute and unmute the system.

System Settings

The following describes the main settings available when using the audio features of the infotainment system. For system settings not shown here, see *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *112*.

Auto Volume

This feature automatically adjusts the radio volume to compensate for road and wind noise.

The level of volume compensation can be selected, or the feature can be turned off.

Auto Volume Settings

1. Touch SETTINGS on the Home Page.
2. Select Radio.
3. Select Auto Volume and choose between selections.
4. Touch Back on the infotainment display to go back to the source screen.

Tone Settings

The tone settings can be set for each radio band and each audio player source.

Custom Tone Settings

1. Touch SETTINGS on the Home Page.
2. Select Radio.
3. Select Tone Settings.
   - Bass, Midrange, or Treble: Touch − or +.
   - Fader or Balance: Adjust the front/rear or left/right speakers by dragging the dot in the vehicle image on the display.
4. Touch Back on the infotainment display to go back to the source screen.

Radio

AM-FM Radio

Playing the Radio

Audio Source Menu

⌂ : Press to go to the Home Page.

⏻ : Press to turn on, mute, or unmute the system. Press and hold to turn off the system.

Selecting a Band

1. Press ⌂.
2. Touch AUDIO.
3. Touch Source.
4. Select AM or FM.

The last station that was playing starts playing again.

Selecting a Station

Seek Tuning

If the radio station is not known:

Press ⏮ or ⏭ to automatically search for available radio stations.

Direct Tune

From the AM or FM menu:

1. Touch Tune.
2. Enter the station number.
3. Touch Go.

Favourites

1. Touch < or > to scroll through the favourite pages.
2. Touch the station to select it.

Update Station List

- From the AM or FM menu, touch Menu, then touch Update Station List. The broadcasting list updating will begin.
- During the AM or FM broadcasting list update, touch Cancel to stop the updates.

Station List

1. From the AM or FM menu, touch Menu.
2. Select Station List.

3. Touch ▲ or ▼ to scroll through the list. Touch the station to select it.

Menu

Touch to choose between available menus for the current source.

Storing a Station as a Favourite

Stations from all bands can be stored in any order in the favourite pages.

Up to 25 stations can be stored.

Storing Stations

To store the station to a position in the list, touch the corresponding button 1−5 until a beep is heard.

1. Select the desired station.
2. Touch < or > to select the desired page of saved favourites.
3. Touch and hold any of the preset buttons to save the current radio station to that button of the selected favourites page.

To change a preset button, tune to the new desired radio station and touch and hold the preset button.

Radio Reception

Frequency interference and static can occur during normal radio reception if items such as mobile phone chargers, vehicle convenience accessories, and external electronic devices are plugged into the accessory power outlet.

If there is interference or static, unplug the item from the accessory power outlet.

FM

FM signals only reach about 15 to 65 km. Although the radio has a built-in electronic circuit that automatically works to reduce interference, some static can occur, especially around tall buildings or hills, causing the sound to fade in and out.

AM

The range for most AM stations is greater than for FM, especially at night. The longer range can cause station frequencies to interfere with each other. Static can occur when things like storms and power lines interfere with radio reception. When this happens, try reducing the treble on the radio.

Mobile Phone Usage

Mobile phone usage, such as making or receiving phone calls, charging, or just having the phone on may cause static interference with the radio. Unplug the phone or turn it off if this happens.

Multi-Band Antenna

The multi-band antenna is on the roof of the vehicle. The antenna is used for AM-FM radio and other features, if equipped. Keep the antenna clear of obstructions for clear reception.

If the vehicle has a sunroof, and it is open, reception can also be affected.

Audio Players

USB Port

Using the USB Port

The infotainment system can play music by connecting an auxiliary device to the USB port.

Note

When using media devices such as USB and mobile devices, check the source. Untrusted devices could contain files that adversely affect system operation or performance. Avoid using if the content or origin cannot be trusted.

USB Support

There is a USB port at the front of the centre console for data and charging. It may contain two sockets. If equipped, there are two USB charge-only ports on the rear of the centre console.

See *Power Outlets* ⇨ *87*. The USB ports use USB 2.0 standard.

USB Supported Devices

- USB Flash Drives
- iPods/MP3 players
- Mobile phones with audio functionality
- Portable USB Hard Drives

Not all iPods, MP3 players, mobile phones and USB drives are compatible with the USB port.

Make sure the iPod has the latest firmware from Apple for optimum operation. See www.apple.com/itunes.

For help with identifying your iPod, go to www.apple.com/support.

The USB port can play both lower and upper case .mp3, .wma, .ogg, and .wav files stored on a USB storage device.

USB Supported File and Folder Structure

The infotainment system supports:

- FAT16
- FAT32

- exFAT

Connecting a USB Storage Device

To connect a USB storage device, connect the device to the front USB port.

If compatible, the device will be charged while it is connected to the vehicle, if the ignition is on or in Accessory mode. See *Ignition Positions* ⇨ *215*. When the ignition is turned off, the device automatically powers off and will not charge or draw power from the vehicle's battery.

Audio System Information

The infotainment system can play the music files contained in the USB storage device or iPod/iPhone products.

Using MP3/WMA/OGG/WAV Files

- Music files with .mp3, .wma, .ogg, and .wav file name extensions can be played.
- MP3 files that can be played: Bit rate: 8 kbps to 320 kbps. Sampling frequency: 48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz, 24 kHz, 22.05 kHz, and 16 kHz.
- Files with a bit rate above 128 kbps will result in higher quality sound.
- ID3 Tag information for MP3 files, such as the album name and the artist, can be played.
- To display album title, track title, and artist information, the file should be compatible with the ID3 Tag V1 and V2 formats.

Using USB Storage Devices or iPod/iPhone

- Use a USB or flash memory type storage device. Do not connect using a USB adaptor.
- Do not connect and reconnect the USB device repeatedly in a short time, as this may cause static electricity and problems using the device.
- Use a USB device with a metal connecting terminal.
- Connection with i-Stick Type USB storage devices may be faulty due to vehicle vibration.
- Do not touch the USB connecting terminal.
- Only USB storage devices formatted in FAT16/32 or exFAT file systems are recognised. NTFS and other file systems are not recognised.
- The time it takes to process files will depend on the USB storage device type and capacity, and the type of files stored.
- Some USB storage device files may not be compatible.
- Up to two USB devices and one iPod can be played through a USB hub. All devices may not be supported, depending on the performance of the USB hub. If there is not enough power supply, it may not operate normally.

- Do not disconnect the USB storage device while it is playing. This may cause damage to the product or affect the performance of the USB device.
- Disconnect the USB storage device when the ignition is turned off. If the ignition is turned on while the USB device is connected, the USB device may be damaged or may not operate normally.
- USB storage devices can only be connected for playing music, viewing photo files, or upgrading.
- Do not use the USB terminal to charge USB accessory equipment. The heat generated may cause performance issues or damage.
- Music files to which Digital Right Management (DRM) is applied cannot be played.
- USB storage device that has a capacity limit of no more than 5,000 files, such as music, photo, video, 15 levels of folder structure. Normal usage cannot be guaranteed for a storage device that exceeds this limit. The iPod/iPhone can play all music files that are supported. The music file lists will only show up to 5,000 files on the display. These files are sorted in alphabetical order.
- Some iPod/iPhone product models may not support the connectivity or functionality of this product.
- Only connect the iPod/iPhone with connection cables supported by iPod/iPhone products. Other connection cables cannot be used.
- The iPod/iPhone may be damaged if it is connected to the vehicle with the ignition on. When not in use, disconnect the iPod/iPhone.
- When the iPod/iPhone is connected to the USB port with an iPod/iPhone cable, Bluetooth music is not supported.
- The iPod/iPhone playback functions and the information displayed may be different when played on the infotainment system.

	Step 1	Step 2
Playlists	Playlists	Songs
Artists	Albums/ All Songs	Songs
Albums	Albums	Songs
Songs	Songs	
Genres	Albums/ All Songs	Songs
Composer	Albums/ All Songs	Songs
Audiobooks	Songs	

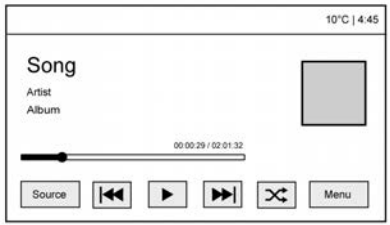
- Refer to the table for the classification items related to the search function provided by the iPod/iPhone.

USB Player

Playing Music from a USB Device

- Connect the USB device to the front USB port.
- Play will start automatically after the system has finished reading the USB device.

- If a non-readable USB device is connected, an error message displays and the system will switch to the previous audio function.



If the USB device is already connected:

1. Press ⌂.
2. Touch AUDIO.
3. Touch Source.
4. Touch USB.

To stop the USB device and select another media source, touch Source, then select the other source.

To remove the USB device, select another function, then remove the USB device.

Pause

- Touch ❚❚ to pause.
- Touch ▶ to resume.

Changing to Next/Previous Files

- Touch ⏭ to change to the next file.
- Touch ⏮ within five seconds of the playback time to play the previous file.

Returning to the Beginning of the Current File

Touch ⏮ after five seconds of the playback time.

Scanning Forwards or Backwards

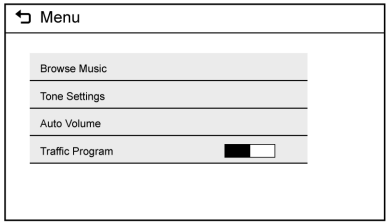
Touch and hold ⏮ or ⏭ during playback to rewind or fast forward. Release the button to resume playback at normal speed.

Playing Files Randomly

Touch ⤮ during playback.

- ON : Plays all files randomly.
- OFF : Returns to normal playback.

Using the USB Music Menu



1. Touch Menu during playback.
2. Touch the desired menu.

Applicable audio extensions are asx, m3u, .pls, .wpl, b4s, and .xspf.

Browse Music

1. Touch Browse Music.
2. Touch the desired music.

Tone Settings

Touch Tone Settings. The Tone Settings menu is displayed. See “Tone Settings” under “Radio Controls” in *Operation ⇨ 133*. To

stop the device and select another media source, touch Source, then select the other source.

Auto Volume

Touch Auto Volume. The Auto Volume menu is displayed. See “Auto Volume” under “Radio Controls” in *Operation* ⇨ *133*.

MTP (Media Transfer Protocol)

- Connect an MTP supported device.
- Play will start automatically after the system has finished reading the MTP device.
- If a non-readable MTP device is connected, an error message displays and the system will switch to the previous audio function.

iPod/iPhone Player

This feature is limited to models supporting the iPod/iPhone connection.

Playing Music Files

- Connect the iPod/iPhone to the USB port.
- Play will start from the previously played point after the system has finished reading the USB device.
- If a non-readable USB device is connected, an error message displays and the system will switch to the previous audio function.

If the iPod/iPhone is already connected:

1. Press ⌂.
2. Touch AUDIO.
3. Touch Source.
4. Touch iPod.

To stop the device and select another media source, touch Source, then select the other source.

To remove the device, select another function, then remove the device.

Pause

- Touch ❚❚ to pause.
- Touch ▶ to resume.

Changing to the Next/ Previous Song

- Touch ⏭ to change to the next song.
- Touch ⏮ within two seconds of the playback time to play the previous song.

Returning to the Beginning of the Current File

Touch ⏮ after two seconds of the playback time.

Scanning Forwards or Backwards

Touch and hold ⏮ or ⏭ during playback to rewind or fast forward. Release the button to resume playback at normal speed.

Playing Files Randomly

Touch ⤮ during playback.

- ON: Plays all files randomly.

- OFF: Returns to normal playback.

Using the iPod Menu

- Touch Menu during playback.
- Touch the appropriate play mode.

Browse Music

1. Touch Browse Music.
2. Touch the desired music.

Tone Settings

Touch Tone Settings. The Tone Settings menu is displayed. See "Tone Settings" under "Radio Controls" in *Operation* ⇨ *133*.

Auto Volume

Touch Auto Volume. The Auto Volume menu is displayed. See "Auto Volume" under "Radio Controls" in *Operation* ⇨ *133*.

Picture System Information

The infotainment system can view picture files stored on a USB storage device and devices that support Media Transfer Protocol (MTP).

- Supported file extensions: .jpg, .bmp, .png, .gif.
- Animated GIF files are not supported.
- Some files may not operate due to a different recording format or the condition of the file.

Viewing Pictures

1. Connect the USB device to the USB port.
2. Touch the infotainment display to open to full screen. Touch the infotainment display again to return to the previous screen.

If the USB device is already connected:

1. Press ⌂.
2. Touch GALLERY.

Some features are disabled while the vehicle is in motion.

Viewing a Slide Show

1. Touch ▶ from the picture screen.
2. Touch the infotainment display to cancel the slide show during the slide show playback.

Viewing a Previous or Next Picture

Touch < or > from the picture screen.

Rotating a Picture

Touch ↻ from the picture screen.

Enlarging a Picture

Touch 🔍 from the picture screen.

Using the USB Picture Menu

1. Touch MENU from the picture screen.
2. Touch the appropriate menu:
   - Slide Show Time: Allows selection of the slide show interval.
   - Clock, Temp. Display: Allows selection of On or Off to show the clock and temperature on the full screen.

- Display Settings: Adjusts for Brightness and Contrast.

3. Touch ⮌ to exit.

Auxiliary Devices

Using the Auxiliary Input Jack

The auxiliary input jack can be used to connect external audio devices such as an iPod, iPhone, MP3 player, CD player and other supported devices for use as another source for audio listening. This input jack is not an audio output; do not plug headphones into the auxiliary input jack.

The auxiliary input jack is located at the front of the centre console.

The infotainment system can play music connected by the auxiliary device.

Play will begin when the system has finished reading the information on the device.

Playing Music

To play music from the device, if the device is already connected:

1. Press ⌂.
2. Touch AUDIO.
3. Touch Source.
4. Touch AUX.
5. Touch ⮌.

To adjust the tone settings, see “Tone Settings” in *Operation* ⇨ *133*.

Bluetooth Audio

Before playing Bluetooth music, read the following information:

- A mobile phone or Bluetooth device that supports Advanced Audio Distribution Profile (A2DP) versions over 1.2 must be paired and connected to the infotainment system.

  See *Bluetooth* ⇨ *144*.

- ♪ will appear on the infotainment display if the stereo headset is successfully connected.
- The sound played by the Bluetooth device is delivered through the infotainment system.
- Bluetooth music can be played only when a Bluetooth device has been connected. To play Bluetooth music, connect the Bluetooth phone to the infotainment system. See *Bluetooth* ⇨ *144*.
- If the Bluetooth device is disconnected while playing phone music, the music is discontinued. The audio streaming function may not be supported in some Bluetooth phones. Only one function can be used at a time between the Bluetooth hands-free or Phone music function. For example, if you convert to Bluetooth hands-free while playing Phone music, the music is discontinued. Playing music from

the car is not possible when there are no music files stored in the mobile phone.

Playing Bluetooth Music

1. Press ⌂.
2. Touch AUDIO.
3. Touch Source.
4. Touch Bluetooth.

Pause

Touch ❙❙ to pause.

Touch ▶ to resume.

Playing the Next Song

Touch ⏭.

Playing the Previous Song

Touch ⏮ within two seconds of playback time to play the previous song.

Returning to the Beginning of the Current Song

Touch ⏮ after two seconds of playback time.

Search

Touch and hold ⏮ or ⏭ to rewind or fast forward.

Playing Music Randomly

Touch ⤮ during playback. Touch again to return to normal play.

This function may not be supported depending on the Bluetooth device.

Do not change the track too quickly when playing Bluetooth music.

Conditions that may occur when playing Bluetooth music:

- It takes time to transmit data from the Bluetooth device to the infotainment system.
- If the mobile phone or Bluetooth device is not in the waiting screen mode, it may not automatically play.
- The infotainment system transmits the order to play from the Bluetooth device in the Bluetooth music play mode. If this is done in a different mode, then the device transmits the order to stop. Depending on the Bluetooth device options, this order to play/stop may take time to activate.
- If the Bluetooth music playback is not functioning, then check to see if the Bluetooth device is in the waiting screen mode.
- Sounds may be cut off during the Bluetooth music playback.
- The infotainment system outputs the audio from the mobile phone or Bluetooth device as it is transmitted.

Phone

Bluetooth

Overview

The infotainment system can interact with many Bluetooth phones, PDAs, or other devices to:

- Place and receive hands-free calls.
- Transmit hands-free data.
- Play audio streaming files.

The device must be paired first. See “Pairing” under “Bluetooth (Infotainment Controls)” later in this section.

To minimise driver distraction, before driving, and with the vehicle parked:

- Become familiar with the features of the mobile phone. Organise the phone book and contact lists clearly and delete duplicate or rarely used entries. If possible, program speed dial or other shortcuts.
- Review the controls and operation of the infotainment system.
- Pair mobile phone(s) to the vehicle. The system may not work with all mobile phones. See “Pairing” under “Bluetooth (Infotainment Controls)” later in this section.

⚠ Danger

Taking your eyes off the road for too long or too often while using any infotainment feature can cause a crash. You or others could be injured or killed. Do not give extended attention to infotainment tasks while driving. Limit your glances at the vehicle displays and focus your attention on driving. Use voice commands whenever possible.

⚠ Warning

It is illegal to touch your phone when driving.

Make sure that Bluetooth® is activated before driving. If not, stop at a safe place to use a mobile phone.

The Bluetooth system can use a Bluetooth-capable mobile phone with a Hands-Free Profile to make and receive phone calls. The infotainment system is used to control the system. The system can be used while the ignition is on or in Accessory mode. See *Ignition Positions* ⇨ *215*.

Not all phones support all functions and not all phones work with the Bluetooth system. See www.holden.com.au for more information about compatible phones.

The Bluetooth system range can be up to 9.1 m.

There may be restrictions on using Bluetooth wireless technology in some locations.

Due to the variety of Bluetooth devices and their firmware versions, the device may respond differently when performing over Bluetooth.

During a phone call, an image of the current contact from the phone's contact list may be displayed. Not all phones are compatible with this feature.

Refer to the mobile phone manufacturer's user guide for questions about the phone's Bluetooth functionality.

Bluetooth Controls

Use the buttons on the infotainment system and the steering wheel to operate the system.

See *Steering Wheel Controls* ⇨ *132*.

Pairing

A Bluetooth-enabled mobile phone must be paired to the Bluetooth system and then connected to the vehicle before it can be used. See your mobile phone manufacturer's user guide for Bluetooth functions before pairing the mobile phone.

Pairing Information

- Up to 10 mobile phones can be paired to the Bluetooth system.
- The pairing process is disabled when the vehicle is moving.
- Pairing only needs to be completed once, unless the pairing information on the mobile phone changes or the mobile phone is deleted from the system.
- Only one paired mobile phone can be connected to the Bluetooth system at a time.
- If multiple paired mobile phones are within range of the system, the system connects to the first available paired mobile phone in the order that they were first paired.

When the Bluetooth device and infotainment system are successfully paired, the phone book is downloaded automatically. This is dependent on the type of phone paired. If the automatic download does not occur, proceed with the phone book download on the phone.

Pairing a Phone – With No Paired Device Currently in the System

When there is no paired device on the infotainment system:

1. Press ⌂.
2. Touch PHONE, press ✆ on the infotainment system fascia, or press ✆ on the steering wheel.
3. Touch Search Device.
4. Touch the desired device to pair on the searched list screen.
5. If the phone supports SSP (Secure Simple Pairing), touch Yes on the pop-up screen of the Bluetooth device and infotainment system.

If the phone does not support SSP (Secure Simple Pairing), input the Personal Identification Number (PIN) code (default: 1234) to the Bluetooth device.

6. When the Bluetooth device and infotainment system are successfully paired, the phone screen is displayed on the infotainment system.

   If the connection fails, a failure message is displayed on the infotainment system.

Pairing a Phone – With a Previously Paired Device in the System

When a paired device is in the infotainment system:

1. Press ⌂.
2. Touch SETTINGS.
3. Touch Bluetooth, then Device Management.
4. Touch the desired device to pair. When the Bluetooth device and infotainment system are successfully paired, ♪ / ✆ is displayed on the pair device screen. If no desired device is available go to Step 5.
5. Touch Search Device to search for the desired device.
6. Touch the desired device to pair on the searched list screen.
7. If the phone supports SSP (Secure Simple Pairing), touch Yes on the pop-up screen of the Bluetooth device and infotainment system.

   If the phone does not support SSP (Secure Simple Pairing), input the Personal Identification Number (PIN) code (default: 1234) to the Bluetooth device.

- The connected phone is highlighted by ✆.
- ♪ / ✆ indicates the hands-free and phone music functions are enabled.
- ✆ indicates only the hands-free function is enabled.
- ♪ indicates only Bluetooth music is enabled.

Connecting a Paired Bluetooth Device

1. Press ⌂.
2. Touch SETTINGS.
3. Touch Bluetooth, then Device Management.
4. Touch the device to be connected.

Checking the Bluetooth Connection

1. Press ⌂.
2. Touch SETTINGS.
3. Touch Bluetooth, then Device Management.
4. The paired device will show.

Disconnecting a Bluetooth Device

1. Press ⌂.
2. Touch SETTINGS.
3. Touch Bluetooth, then Device Management.

4. Touch the name of the device to be disconnected.
5. Touch Disconnect.

Deleting a Bluetooth Device

1. Press ⌂.
2. Touch SETTINGS.
3. Touch Bluetooth, then Device Management.
4. Touch the device to delete.
5. Touch 🗑
6. Touch Delete.

Apple CarPlay and Android Auto

Android Auto and/or Apple CarPlay capability may be available through a compatible smartphone.

To use Android Auto and/or Apple CarPlay:

1. Download the Android Auto App to your phone from the Google Play store. No App is required for Apple CarPlay.
2. Connect an Android phone or iPhone by using the compatible phone USB cable and plugging into a USB data port. For best performance, use the device's factory-provided USB cable. Aftermarket or third-party cables may not work.
3. When the phone is first connected to activate Apple CarPlay or Android Auto, the message “Device Projection Privacy Consent” will appear.
   - Select Continue to launch Apple CarPlay or Android Auto.
   - Select Disable to remove Apple CarPlay and Android Auto capability from the vehicle Settings menu. Other functions may still work.

PROJECTION on the Home Page will change to Android Auto or Apple CarPlay depending on the phone. Android Auto and/or Apple CarPlay may automatically launch upon USB connection. If not, touch the ANDROID AUTO and/or APPLE CARPLAY icon on the Home Page to launch.

Press ⌂ to return to the Home Page.

For further information on how to set up Android Auto and Apple CarPlay in the vehicle, see your dealer.

Android Auto is provided by Google and is subject to Google’s terms and privacy policy. Apple CarPlay is provided by Apple and is subject to Apple's terms and privacy policy. Data plan rates apply. For Android Auto support see https://support.google.com/androidauto. For Apple CarPlay support see www.apple.com/ios/carplay/. Apple or Google may change or suspend availability at any time. Android Auto, Android, Google, Google Play, and other marks are trademarks of Google Inc.; Apple CarPlay is a trademark of Apple Inc.

Hands-Free Phone

General Information

The hands-free phone system can use a Bluetooth-capable mobile phone with a hands-free profile to make and receive phone calls. The infotainment system and voice control are used to operate the system. Not all phones support all functions and not all phones work with the hands-free phone system.

Hands-Free Phone Controls

Use the buttons on the infotainment system and the steering wheel to operate the hands-free phone system.

Steering Wheel Controls

Steering wheel controls can be used to:

- Answer incoming calls.
- Confirm system information.
- End a call.
- Decline a call.
- Cancel an operation.
- Make outgoing calls using the call list.

: Press to answer incoming calls.

: Press to end a call, decline a call, or cancel an operation.

Making a Call by Entering a Phone Number

- Press on the infotainment system fascia.
- Press , then touch PHONE on the infotainment display.
- Press on the steering wheel.

If a wrong number is entered, touch to delete the number one digit at a time, or touch and hold to delete all digits of the number.

Switching a Call to Mobile Phone (Private Mode)

To switch the call to the mobile phone from hands-free:

1. Touch .
2. Touch again to switch back to hands-free.

Turning the Microphone On and Off

Touch to turn the microphone on or off.

Calling by Redial

To call by using redial:

- Press on the steering wheel controls to display the redial guidance screen.
- Touch on the infotainment display.

Redialling is not possible when there is no call history.

Taking Calls

When a phone call comes through the connected Bluetooth mobile phone, the audio system will be muted or paused and the phone will ring with the relevant information displayed.

Press on the steering wheel controls, touch on the infotainment display, or press on the infotainment system fascia.

To reject the call, press on the steering wheel controls or touch Reject on the infotainment display.

Using the Contacts Menu

1. Touch contacts on the phone screen.
2. Touch ▲ or ▼ to scroll through the list.
3. Touch the phone book entry to call.
4. If there is more than one number associated with the name, touch the number to dial.

Searching for Contacts Entries

1. Touch contacts on the phone screen.
2. Touch on the contacts screen.
3. Use the keypad to input the name to search. For details, see “Searching for a Name” following.
4. Touch the phone book entry to call.
5. If there is more than one number associated with the name, touch the number to dial.

When the Bluetooth device and infotainment system are successfully paired, the phone book will download. Some phones may not download automatically. If this happens, connect it again or proceed with the phone book download on the phone.

Searching for a Name

Select characters by using the keypad on the phone book screen. As characters are selected, the names that include those characters will display on the phone book screen. As more characters of the name are entered, the list of possible names is shortened.

To search for the name Alex:

1. Touch (abc) to select the first character.
2. Touch (jkl) three times to select the second character.
3. Touch (def) two times to select the third character.
4. Touch (wxy) two times to select the fourth character.

Making a Call from Call History

1. Touch Call History on the phone screen.
2. Touch one of the following for:
   - All calls history.
   - Dialled calls.
   - Missed calls.
   - Received calls.
3. Select the contact entry to call.

Making a Call with Speed Dial Numbers

Touch and hold the speed dial number using the keypad on the phone screen.

Only speed dial numbers already stored on the mobile phone can be used for speed dial calls. Up to two-digit speed dial numbers are supported.

For two-digit speed dial numbers, touch and hold the second digit to make a call to the speed dial number.

Introduction

Two infotainment systems are available for this vehicle:

- MyLink (without built-in navigation)
- MyLink with Built-in Navigation

  On some models, this system may also include a Digital Audio Broadcast (DAB+) radio tuner.

The following pages describe the features and operation of the MyLink with Built-in Navigation system. For vehicles fitted with a MyLink system, see *Introduction* ⇨ *130*.

Read the following pages to become familiar with these features.

⚠ Warning

Taking your eyes off the road for too long or too often while using any infotainment feature can cause a crash. You or others could be injured or killed. Do not

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

give extended attention to infotainment tasks while driving. Limit your glances at the vehicle displays and focus your attention on driving. Use voice commands whenever possible.

The MyLink with Built-in Navigation infotainment system has features intended to help avoid distraction by disabling some functions when driving. These functions may grey out when they are unavailable. Many infotainment features may also be available through the Driver Information Centre (DIC) and steering wheel controls.

Before driving:

- Become familiar with the operation and infotainment display controls.
- Set up the audio by presetting favourite stations and tone.

- Set up phone numbers in advance so they can be called easily by pressing a single button or by using a single voice command using Bluetooth® phone capability.

To play the infotainment system with the ignition off, see *Retained Accessory Power (RAP)* ⇨ *218*.

Theft-Deterrent Feature

The infotainment system has an electronic security system installed to prevent theft.

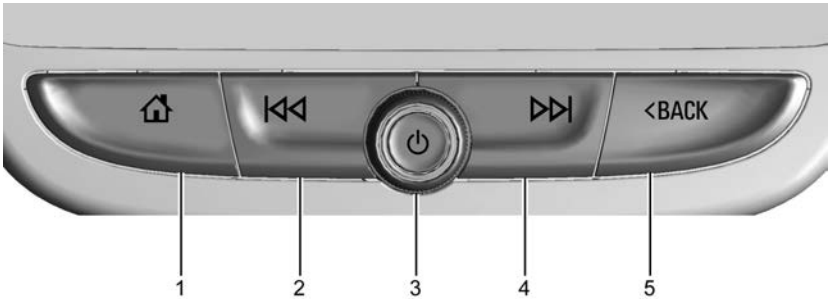
The infotainment system only works in the vehicle in which it was first installed, and cannot be used in another vehicle.

Overview

Note

Some vehicle models include a Digital Audio Broadcast (DAB+) radio tuner. The descriptions in the following sections include operation of the DAB+ system, however it may not be fitted to your vehicle.

The infotainment system is controlled by using the infotainment display, controls on the infotainment fascia steering wheel controls, and voice recognition.



1. ⌂ (Home Page)
2. ⏮
3. ⏻ (Power)
4. ⏭
5. < BACK

Power:

- When off, press ⏻ or to turn the system on. Press and hold to turn off.
- When on, press ⏻ to mute the system. Press ⏻ again to unmute the system.

When the power is on and the system is not muted, a quick status pane will display when ⏻ is pressed. Pressing ⏻ will mute the system and trigger this pane to display. A long press is required to actually power down the system.

Volume:

Turn ⏻ to increase or decrease the volume.

⌂ **:** Press to go to the Home Page. See “Home Page” in this section.

⏮ **:**

- AM, FM or DAB: Press to scan for the previous strong station. See *AM-FM Radio (Inc. DAB)* ⇨ *157*.
- USB, AUX, or Bluetooth Audio: Press to seek to the beginning of the current or previous track.
- USB, AUX, or Bluetooth Audio: Press and hold to quickly reverse through a track. Release to return to playing speed. See *USB Port* ⇨ *161*, *Auxiliary Devices* ⇨ *164* or *Bluetooth Audio* ⇨ *165*.

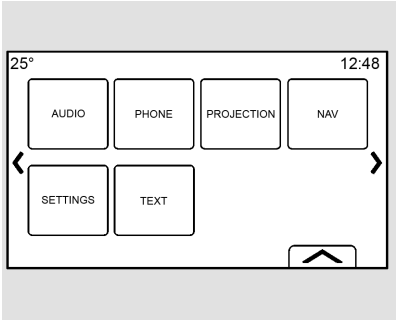
⏭ **:**

- AM, FM or DAB: Press to scan for the next strong station.
- USB, AUX, or Bluetooth Audio: Press to seek the next track.

- USB, AUX, or Bluetooth Audio: Press and hold to fast forward through a track. Release to return to playing speed. See *USB Port* ⇨ *161*, *Auxiliary Devices* ⇨ *164* or *Bluetooth Audio* ⇨ *165*.

< **BACK :** Press to return to the previous screen in a menu.

Home Page



The Home Page is where vehicle application icons are accessed. Some applications are disabled when the vehicle is moving.

The Home Page can be set up to have up to five pages with eight icons per page.

Touch 《 or 》 to access the pages of icons.

《 **:** Touch to go to the previous Home Page.

》 **:** Touch to go to the next Home Page.

: Touch this interaction selector to display the favourites list.

Touch a preset in Favourites to begin the process of saving a favourite application.

Touch and hold the preset to store the current application as a favourite. The name of the application will show in favourites.

Managing Home Page Icons

1. Touch and hold any of the Home Page icons to enter edit mode.
2. Continue holding the icon and drag it to the desired position.
3. Release your finger to drop the icon in the desired position.
4. To move an application to another page, drag the icon to the edge of the screen towards the desired page.
5. Continue dragging and dropping application icons as desired.
6. Press ⌂ to exit edit mode.

Steering Wheel Controls



Some of the audio controls can be adjusted on the steering wheel.

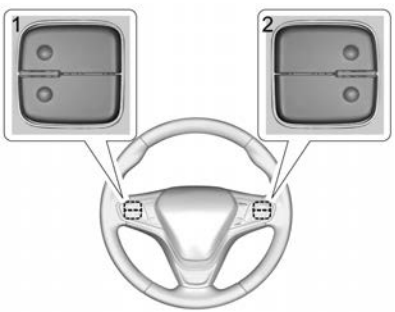
: Press to answer an incoming call or start voice recognition. See *Bluetooth* ⇨ *195*.

: Press to reject an incoming call or end a current call. Press to mute or unmute the infotainment system when not on a call.

◁ **or** ▷ **:** Press to go to the previous or next menu on the Driver Information Centre (DIC).

△ **or** ▽ **:** Press to go to the next or previous list on the DIC.

✓ **:** Press to select a highlighted menu option.



Favourite and volume switches may be fitted on the back of the steering wheel.

1. Favourite: When on a radio source, press to select the next or previous favourite. When on a media source, press to select the next or previous track.
2. Volume: Press to increase or decrease the volume.

Using the System

Infotainment Display Features

Infotainment display features show on the display when available. When a feature is unavailable, it may grey out. When a feature is selected, it may highlight.

Home Page Features

Touch the icons on the Home Page to launch an application.

Audio

Touch the Audio icon to display the active audio source page. Available sources may include AM, FM, DAB, USB, Bluetooth, and AUX Input.

Phone

Touch the Phone icon to display the Phone main page. See *Bluetooth* ⇨ *195*.

Projection

Touch the Projection icon to activate Android Auto or Apple CarPlay (if equipped) after a supported device is connected. See *Apple CarPlay and Android Auto* ⇨ *202*.

Nav

Touch the Nav icon to display the navigation map. See *Using the Navigation System* ⇨ *166*.

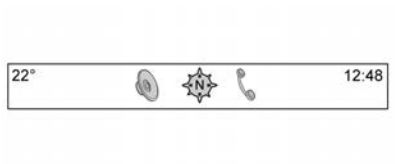
Settings

Touch the Settings icon to display the Settings menu. See “System Settings” further in this section.

Text

Touch the Text icon to display the Text menu. See *Text Messaging* ⇨ *201*.

Applications Tray



The applications tray is at the top centre of the display. The applications tray can have three to five applications.

To add an application from the Home Page to the applications tray:

1. Touch and hold any icon on the Home Page to enter edit mode.
2. Drag the icon to the applications tray.

   To remove an item from the applications tray, drag the icon from the applications tray back to the Home Page.

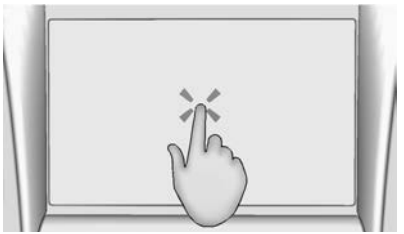
   Press ⌂ to exit edit mode.

Adding or removing applications from the applications tray will not remove them from the Home Page.

Infotainment Gestures

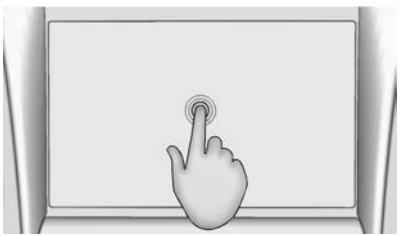
Use the following finger gestures to control the infotainment system.

Touch/Tap



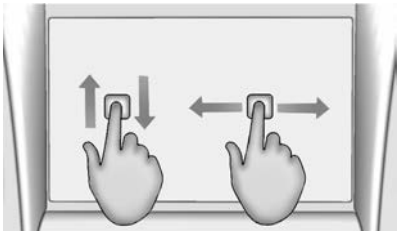
Touch/tap is used to select an icon or option, activate an application, or change the location inside a map.

Touch and Hold



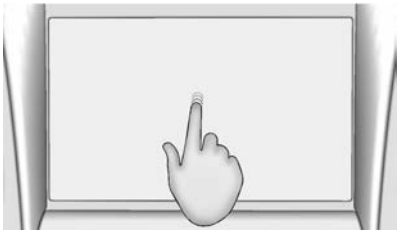
Touch and hold can be used to start another gesture, to move, or to delete an application.

Drag



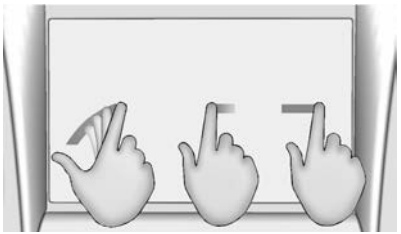
Drag is used to move applications on the Home Page, or to pan the map. To drag the item, it must be held and moved along the display to the new location. This can be done up, down, right, or left.

Nudge



Nudge is used to move items a short distance on a list or a map. To nudge, hold and quickly move the selected item up or down to a new location.

Fling or Swipe



Fling or swipe is used to scroll through a list, pan the map, or change page views. Do this by placing a finger on the display then moving it rapidly up and down or right and left.

Turn

Turn ⏻ on the infotainment system fascia to perform functions such as tuning the radio or scrolling lists.

Cleaning High Gloss Surfaces and Displays

For vehicles with high gloss surfaces or vehicle displays, use a microfibre cloth to wipe surfaces. Before wiping the surface with the microfibre cloth, use a soft bristle brush to remove dirt that could scratch the surface. Then use the microfibre cloth by gently rubbing to clean.

Never use window cleaners or solvents. Periodically hand wash the microfibre cloth separately, using mild soap. Do not use bleach or fabric softener. Rinse thoroughly and air dry before next use.

System Settings

The following describes the main settings available when using the audio features of the infotainment system. For system settings not shown here, see *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *112*.

Auto Volume

This feature automatically adjusts the radio volume to compensate for road and wind noise.

The level of volume compensation can be selected, or the feature can be turned off.

Auto Volume Settings

1. Touch SETTINGS on the Home Page.
2. Select Radio.
3. Select Auto Volume and choose between selections.
4. Touch Back on the infotainment display to go back to the source screen.

Tone Settings

The tone settings can be set for each radio band and each audio player source.

Custom Tone Settings

1. Touch SETTINGS on the Home Page.
2. Select Radio.
3. Select Tone Settings.
   - Bass, Midrange, or Treble: Touch − or +.
   - Fader or Balance: Adjust the front/rear or left/right speakers by dragging the dot in the vehicle image on the display.
4. Touch Back on the infotainment display to go back to the source screen.

Radio

AM-FM Radio (Inc. DAB)

Playing the Radio

While on the Audio main page the available sources may include AM, FM, DAB, USB, Bluetooth, and AUX Input.

- Touch the Audio icon on the Home Page to scroll through AM, FM, DAB, USB, Bluetooth, and AUX Input.

Infotainment System Settings

Touch the Menu icon on the infotainment display to display the following menus:

Tone Settings:

- Bass, Midrange, Treble, and Surround (if equipped): Touch + or − to adjust. Surround adjusts the headrest speaker volume only.
- Balance: Touch the arrows for more sound from the left or right speakers. The middle position balances the sound between the left and right speakers.
- Fade: Touch the arrows for more sound from the front or rear speakers. The middle position balances the sound between the front and rear speakers.

EQ : If equipped with a Bose sound system, the Equaliser settings are selected via the Tone Settings menu. Touch the left or right arrows to cycle through the EQ options. The available choices are Custom or Talk.

Auto Volume (If Equipped) : This feature adjusts the volume based on vehicle speed. The options are Off, Low, Medium - Low, Medium, Medium - High, or High. Touch the Back icon on the infotainment display to go to the previous menu.

Bose AudioPilot Noise Compensation Technology (If Equipped) : When turned on, AudioPilot technology detects ambient noise and vehicle speed to continuously adjust many aspects of the audio signal so that the music will sound the same at a set volume level.

The options are On and Off.

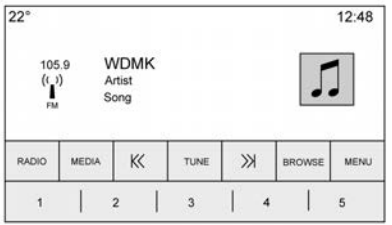
This feature is most effective at lower radio volume settings where background noise can affect how well the music is being played through the vehicle's audio system. At a higher volume setting, where the music is louder than the background noise, AudioPilot might make few or no adjustments.

For more information on Bose AudioPilot Noise Compensation Technology, see your dealer.

Update Station List : For AM, FM and DAB only, touch to update the station list. Touch the Back icon on the infotainment display to go to the previous menu.

Finding a Station

Seeking a Station

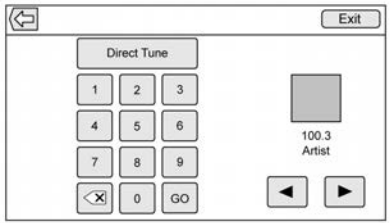


Touch ⏮ or ⏭ to search for the previous or next strongest station.

Tuning a Station

Touch the Tune icon on the infotainment display to show the Direct Tune window.

Direct Tune



Access Direct Tune on the infotainment display to bring up the keypad. Navigate up and down through all frequencies or directly enter a station using the keypad. When a new station is entered, the information about that station displays on the right side. This information will update with each new valid frequency.

The keypad will grey out entries that do not contribute to a valid frequency and will automatically place a decimal point within the frequency number.

A valid station will automatically tune to the new frequency but not close the Direct Tune window. Touch the Back icon or Exit on the infotainment display.

The tune arrows on the right side of the Direct Tune display tunings through the entire station list, one station step at a time per touch. A touch and hold advances 10 frequency steps per second.

Touch (X) to delete one number at a time. Touch and hold (X) to delete all numbers.

In AM, FM and DAB modes, touch ⏮ or ⏭ for the radio to go to the next or previous strong station. Touch Direct Tune to advance to the next or previous frequency step in AM, FM or DAB mode, or to directly enter or tune to the frequency on the keypad.

Storing Radio Station Presets

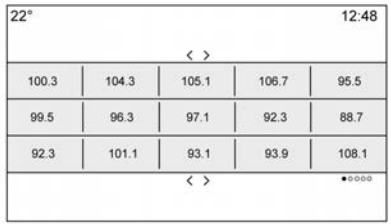
Favourites are stored in the area near the bottom of the infotainment display.

Up to 60 preset stations can be stored under the following:

AM, FM or DAB Radio Stations : Touch and hold a favourite preset to save the current station as a favourite. Touch a favourite preset in the favourites location to recall a favourite station.

Mixed-Audio Favourites

Favourites that can be stored include radio stations, media favourites, contacts, destinations, navigation, or applications.



To scroll through the favourites:

- Drag up on the top border of the favourites bar to view the favourites. To close the favourites, drag them down.

- Slide a finger to the right or left to scroll through each page of favourites.

Tone Settings : Touch and hold a preset to store the current tone settings as a favourite. Drag ⌃ up from near the bottom to bring up favourites. Touch a saved favourite to recall a favourite tone setting.

The number of favourites displayed is automatically adjusted by default, but can be manually adjusted in the Settings menu under Radio and then Number of Favourites Shown.

Radio Reception

Unplug electronic devices from the accessory power outlets if there is interference or static in the radio.

FM

FM signals only reach about 15 to 65 km. Although the radio has a built-in electronic circuit that automatically works to reduce interference, some static can occur, especially around tall buildings or hills, causing the sound to fade in and out.

AM

The range for most AM stations is greater than for FM, especially at night. The longer range can cause station frequencies to interfere with each other. Static can also occur when things like storms and power lines interfere with radio reception. When this happens, try reducing the treble on the radio.

Digital Audio Broadcasting (DAB)

DAB is a universal broadcasting system that indicates stations by radio program name on the infotainment display. The DAB signal produces a constant volume and is not affected by interference from nearby frequencies.

The reception quality of DAB improves if the signal is reflected by natural obstacles or buildings. If the DAB signal is unclear, reception is interrupted completely.

Mobile Phone Usage

Mobile phone usage, such as making or receiving phone calls, charging, or just having the phone on may cause static interference in the radio. Unplug the phone or turn it off if this happens.

Multi-Band Antenna

The roof antenna is used for radio reception and the navigation system GPS (Global Positioning System).

Keep it clear of obstructions for clear reception. If the vehicle has a sunroof, and it is open, reception can also be affected.

Audio Players

USB Port

Using the USB Port

The infotainment system can play music by connecting an auxiliary device to the USB port.

Note

When using media devices such as USB and mobile devices, check the source. Untrusted devices could contain files that adversely affect system operation or performance. Avoid using if the content or origin cannot be trusted.

USB Support

There is a USB port at the front of the centre console for data and charging. It may contain two sockets. If equipped, there are two USB charge-only ports on the rear of the centre console.

See *Power Outlets* ⇨ *87*. The USB ports use USB 2.0 standard.

USB Supported Devices

- USB flash drives
- iPods/MP3 players
- Mobile phones with audio functionality
- Portable USB hard drives

Not all devices are compatible with the USB port.

Make sure the iPod has the latest firmware from Apple for optimum operation. See www.apple.com/itunes.

For help with identifying your iPod, go to www.apple.com/support.

The USB port can play both lower and upper case .mp3, .wma, .ogg, and .wav files stored on a USB storage device.

USB Supported File and Folder Structure

The infotainment system supports:

- FAT16
- FAT32
- exFAT

Connecting a USB Storage Device

To connect a USB storage device, connect the device to the front USB port.

If compatible, the device will be charged while it is connected to the vehicle, if the ignition is on or in Accessory mode. See *Ignition Positions* ⇨ *215*. When the vehicle is turned off, the device automatically powers off and will not charge or draw power from the vehicle's battery.

Playing from a USB

Gracenote

When plugging in a USB device, Gracenote service builds voice tags for music. Voice tags allow artists, albums with hard to pronounce names, and nicknames to be used to play music through voice recognition.

While indexing, infotainment features are available.

USB MP3 Player and USB Drives

- The USB MP3 players and USB drives connected must comply with the USB Mass Storage Class specification (USB MSC).
- Hard disk drives are not supported.
- The following restrictions apply for the data stored on a USB MP3 player or USB device:
  - Applicable audio extensions are mp3, wma, aac, m4a, and aif.
  - WMA and Apple lossless files are not supported.
  - Supported file systems are FAT32 and NTFS.

To play a USB device:

- Connect the USB.
- Touch the Media icon on the infotainment system fascia until the connected device is shown.

Use the following when playing an active USB source:

▶ : Touch to play the current media source.

⏸ : Press to pause play of the current media source.

⏮ :

- Press to seek to the beginning of the current or previous track. If the track has been playing for less than two seconds, the previous track plays. If playing longer than 2–5 seconds, depending on the device, the current track restarts.
- Press and hold to reverse quickly through playback. Release to return to playing speed. Elapsed time displays.

⏭ :

- Press to seek to the next track.
- Press and hold to advance quickly through playback. Release to return to playing speed. Elapsed time displays.

USB Menu

Touch the Menu icon on the infotainment display to show the USB menu. The following may be available:

Shuffle : Touch the shuffle icon to play the tracks randomly. Touch again to stop shuffle.

Tone : Touch + or − on the Tone icon to adjust the tone settings. See *AM-FM Radio (Inc. DAB)* ⇨ *157*.

Auto Volume (If Equipped) : This feature adjusts the volume based on the vehicle speed. See *AM-FM Radio (Inc. DAB)* ⇨ *157*.

Bose AudioPilot Noise Compensation Technology (If Equipped) : This feature adjusts the volume based on the noise in the vehicle and speed. See *AM-FM Radio (Inc. DAB)* ⇨ *157*.

USB Browse Menu

Touch anywhere between the top and bottom menus or touch the Browse icon on the infotainment

display to view the Browse menu and the following options are shown along the bottom of the display:

Playlists:

1. Touch to view the playlists stored on the USB.
2. Select a playlist to view the list of all songs in that playlist.
3. Select a song from the list to begin playback.

Artists:

1. Touch to view the list of artists stored on the USB.
2. Select an artist name to view a list of all albums by the artist.
3. To select a song, touch All Songs or touch an album and then select a song from the list.

Albums:

1. Touch to view the albums on the USB.
2. Touch the album to view a list of all songs on the album.
3. Touch a song from the list to begin playback.

Songs:

1. Touch to display a list of All Songs on the USB.
2. To begin playback, select a song from the list.

Genres:

1. Touch to view the genres on the USB.
2. Touch a genre to view a list of artists.
3. Touch an artist to view albums by that artist.
4. Touch an album to view songs on the album.
5. Touch a song to start playback.

Podcasts, Composers, Audiobooks, and Folder View (if equipped) are shown when the More icon is selected from near the bottom of the display.

Podcasts:

1. Touch to view the podcasts on the USB.
2. Touch a podcast.
3. Touch an episode to start playback.

Composers:

1. Touch to view the composers on the USB.
2. Touch Composers to view a list of albums by that composer.
3. Touch an album to view a list of songs.
4. Touch a song from the list to begin playback.

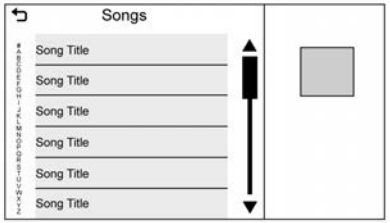
Audiobooks:

1. Touch to view the audiobooks stored on the device.
2. Touch the audiobook from the list. Touch a chapter to begin playback.

Folder View (If Equipped):

1. Touch to view the directories on the USB.

2. Touch a folder to view a list of all files.
3. Touch a file from the list to begin playback.



When a list of songs, albums, artists, or other types of media display, a vertical keyboard appears on one side of the list and a scroll bar on the other side. When using the vertical keyboard, touch the beginning character of the desired name to display the zoom bubble of that character. Release the finger from the infotainment display and the zoom bubble disappears.

Touch the scroll bar to move the list up and down.

File System and Naming

The songs, artists, albums, and genres are taken from the file's song information and are only displayed if present. The radio displays the file name as the track name if the song information is not available.

Loss of Audio

If a phone currently paired over Bluetooth is plugged in with a USB cable, the system will automatically mute the phone audio. Playback can be resumed by changing the audio source from Bluetooth to USB cable.

Touch the Media icon on the infotainment display while sourced on USB to resume playback.

Bluetooth Streaming Audio and Voice Recognition

See *Bluetooth Audio* ⇨ *165* for information using voice recognition with Bluetooth streaming audio.

Make sure all devices have the latest software downloaded.

Auxiliary Devices

Using the Auxiliary Input Jack

The auxiliary input jack can be used to connect external audio devices such as an iPod, iPhone, MP3 player, CD player and other supported devices for use as another source for audio listening. This input jack is not an audio output; do not plug headphones into the front auxiliary input jack.

The auxiliary input jack is located at the front of the centre console.

The infotainment system can play music connected by the auxiliary device.

Connect a 3.5 mm cable from the auxiliary device to the auxiliary input jack. When a device is connected, the system can play audio from the device over the vehicle speakers.

Play will begin when the system has finished reading the information on the device.

If an auxiliary device has already been connected, but a different source is currently active, touch the Media icon on the infotainment display to scroll through audio source displays, until the AUX Input source appears.

Playing from the AUX Port

An auxiliary device is played through the audio system and controlled through the device itself.

AUX Menu

Press the Menu icon on the infotainment display to show the AUX Input menu and the following may display:

Tone Settings : Select to adjust Bass, Midrange, Treble, Balance, Fade, and EQ (Equaliser). See *AM-FM Radio (Inc. DAB)* ⇨ *157*.

Auto Volume (If Equipped) : This feature adjusts the volume based on the vehicle speed. See *AM-FM Radio (Inc. DAB)* ⇨ *157*.

Bose AudioPilot Noise Compensation Technology (If Equipped) : This feature adjusts the volume based on the noise in the vehicle and speed. See “Bose AudioPilot” in *AM-FM Radio (Inc. DAB)* ⇨ *157*.

Bluetooth Audio

Music may be played from a paired Bluetooth device. See *Bluetooth* ⇨ *195* for help pairing a device.

The music can be controlled by either the infotainment controls or the controls on the device.

Music can be launched by touching the Media icon on the infotainment display.

To play music via Bluetooth:

1. Power on the device, and pair to connect the device.
2. Once paired, go into the audio application from the Home Page or through the applications tray. Select the Media icon until Bluetooth displays.

Bluetooth Audio Menu

Touch the Menu icon on the infotainment display to show the Bluetooth Audio menu. The following may be available:

Tone Settings : Touch + or − to adjust the tone settings. See *AM-FM Radio (Inc. DAB)* ⇨ *157*.

Auto Volume (If Equipped) : This feature adjusts the volume based on the vehicle speed. See *AM-FM Radio (Inc. DAB)* ⇨ *157*.

Bose AudioPilot Noise Compensation Technology (If Equipped) : This feature adjusts the volume based on the noise in the vehicle and speed. See *AM-FM Radio (Inc. DAB)* ⇨ *157*.

Touch the Back icon on the infotainment display to go back to the previous menu.

Manage Bluetooth Devices : Touch to go to the Bluetooth page to add or delete devices.

When using the Bluetooth audio source, the infotainment system may not be able to launch specific

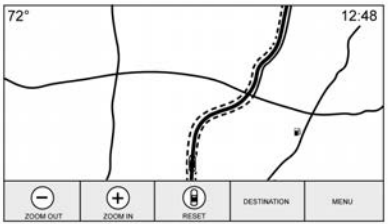
applications on your device. Use the device to start audio playback when it is safe to do so.

All devices launch audio differently. When selecting Bluetooth audio as a source, the system may show as paused on the screen. Touch play on the device or touch ▶ to begin playback.

Some phones support sending Bluetooth music information to display on the infotainment system. When the system receives this information, it will check to see if any is available and display it. For more information about supported Bluetooth features, see your dealer.

Navigation

Using the Navigation System

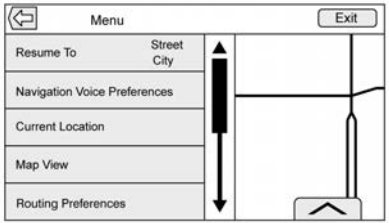


Touch the Nav icon on the Home Page or Nav in the applications tray to access the navigation application.

Touch the Menu icon from the map view to access the Navigation Menu. Features displayed in the Navigation Menu can be selected to adjust navigation preferences.

To exit a list, touch Exit in the top right corner of the map to return to the main map view.

When the display is not in use, it will time out and remove the controls. Touch anywhere along the bottom or top of the display to show the controls.



Additional navigation features are:

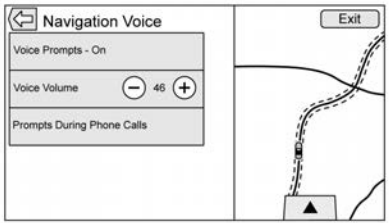
- Cancel Route/Resume To
- Navigation Voice Preferences
- Current Location
- Map View
- Routing Preferences
- Display “Places of Interest” Icons
- Personal Data

Cancel Route/Resume To

- While under route guidance, this option displays Cancel Route. Touch Cancel Route to cancel route guidance. No further prompts will be given. This option then changes to Resume To.
- Touch the Resume To option to resume route guidance to the last entered destination.
- The last location that the system has provided guidance to can be resumed by touching on this option.
- If the route includes way points, the entire route can be suspended using the Cancel Route option. When Resume To is touched, all waypoints are resumed for guidance.

Navigation Voice Preferences

Touch the Navigation Voice Preferences option to adjust the voice preferences.



The following options can be adjusted:

- Voice Prompts On-Off
- Voice Volume
- Prompts During Phone Calls On-Off

Voice Prompts

Touch the Voice Prompts option to toggle voice prompts On and Off.

Voice Volume

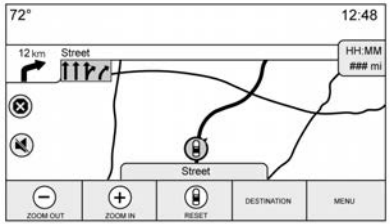
Adjust the loudness of the audio feedback by touching − or +. If a manoeuvre prompt is being played, and the main volume is adjusted, the prompt volume will update and be saved.

Prompts During Phone Calls

When enabled, the system plays a shorter prompt while on a phone call. This setting can be configured as to whether a prompt would be heard during a phone conversation.

When this setting is Off, only the short alert tone is played when approaching the maneuver.

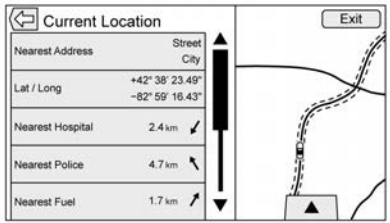
Voice Prompts Mute Icon



Touch the Mute icon on the left side of the map while in map view to turn voice prompts On or Off.

Current Location

Touch the Current Location feature to display a Current Location list.



The following information is displayed on the Current Location options:

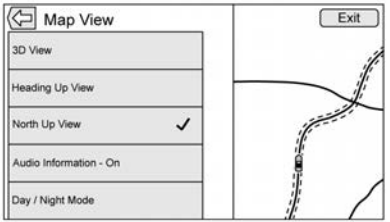
- Nearest Address
- Lat/Long
- Nearest Hospital
- Nearest Police
- Nearest Fuel
- Nearest Service

Touch on any of the options to display the destination details view for the selected location to begin guidance.

Touch Nearest Address and then touch Save to store the current location to the Address Book.

Map View

Touch to select the desired map view. A checkmark appears to indicate a view has been selected.



3D View : The 3D View is a Heading Up view but it does include perspective. Map items will appear larger as the vehicle comes closer.

Heading Up View : The Heading Up View keeps the vehicle's current heading at the top of the view. The vehicle icon always faces the top of the view as the map rotates.

North Up View : The North Up View keeps north at the top of the view. The vehicle icon is placed in the centre of the view and rotates to indicate the heading for the vehicle.

Audio Information : Touch to turn the audio information view on or off from the main map view.

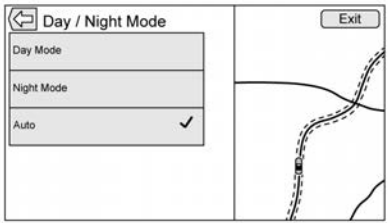
The audio status screen contains:

- Station Frequency
- Artist Information
- Song Information
- ▶ / ❚❚ or ⏮ or ⏭ Station Controls

Touch the ⏮ or ⏭ station controls to go to the next or previous strong signal station or digital channel.

When the audio status pane displays Artist and Song Information, touch ⏮ or ⏭ to go to the next or previous track based on the current media mode.

Day/Night Mode



Touch to access the Day/Night Mode menu.

The options are:

- Day Mode: Brightens the map background.
- Night Mode: Darkens the map background.
- Auto: Adjusts the display background automatically depending on the exterior lighting conditions.

Routing Preferences

Touch the Routing Preferences list item to access the Routing Preferences menu. Options on how the routes are created for route guidance are listed on this menu.

Route Style

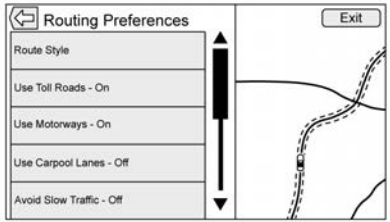
Touch this list item to change the route type preferences.

The options are:

- Fast (default)
- Eco Friendly (if equipped)
- Short
- Configure Eco Profile

Configure Eco Profile can be used to configure two settings for the Eco Friendly route. These parameters are roof load and trailer. For each parameter, the options are None, Small, Medium, and Large. Touch to scroll through the list. The default for both is None.

These preferences are used for all routes generated.



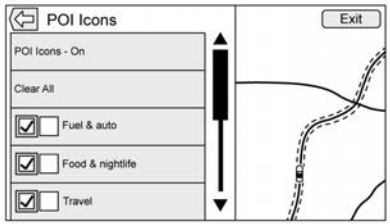
Route segment preferences are other options showing on the Routing Preferences menu.

This includes:

- Use Toll Roads On/Off
- Use Freeways On/Off
- Use Carpool Lanes On/Off
- Avoid Slow Traffic On/Off
- Use Tunnels On/Off
- Use Time Restricted Roads On/Off

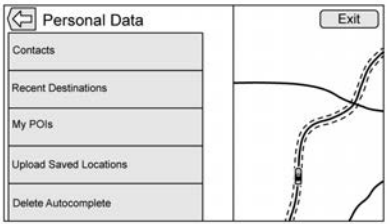
Display Places of Interest Icons

Places of Interest (POI) icons can be displayed on the map using this view.



- The POI icons can be turned On and Off. Touch the check box next to the POI icon to display the icon.
- Touch Clear All to reset the icons that are displayed on the map.
- A subcategory can be selected instead of the entire category. Touch the list item itself rather than the checkbox. The subcategories will display. Select any of those categories to navigate down the hierarchy.
- When a higher-level category has some of its subcategories selected, the checkmark (tick) next to it is greyed out. This indicates that only some of the categories below are shown. Touch the greyed-out checkmark to turn all of the icons for that category on or off.

Personal Data



Data that the system has saved during the course of using the navigation system can be managed through:

- Contacts
- Recent Destinations
- My POIs (if equipped)
- Upload Saved Locations

Contacts

1. Touch Delete All Entries to delete the entire list of contacts. A pop-up displays to confirm.
2. Touch Edit Contacts List to display the Contacts to edit.

Recent Destinations

- Touch Delete Individual Destinations to display a recent destinations list. Touch the individual entry to delete.
- Touch Delete All Destinations to delete the entire recent destination list. A pop-up displays asking to confirm the deletion.

My POIs

- Touch My POIs to display a menu of other options.
- Touch Delete Individual Categories. A My POIs category list displays.
- Touch the individual entry to delete.
- Touch Delete All My POIs to delete the entire list of categories. A pop-up displays asking to confirm the deletion.

Upload Saved Locations

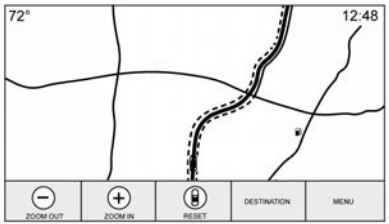
Touch to upload any saved locations such as downloaded POIs and all entries in the vehicle address book to the USB device.

- Touch Upload Saved Locations to save the Vehicle Contacts list and any MyPOIs that have been saved to the vehicle.
- Once saved locations have been uploaded to a USB, they can be transferred to a different vehicle or restored to the current address book.

Map Adjustments

ZOOM −/+ can be used to adjust the scale of view on the map. When the end of the zoom level is reached, ZOOM −/+ will grey out.

Scroll Features



- To scroll within the map, touch anywhere on the map view.
- Nudge or slide a finger on the map; the map moves in the direction of the finger.
- Fling a finger on the map; the map will start scrolling in a short continuous scroll.
- Touch the location on the map; the map re-centres to the location that was touched on.
- Touch a location twice on the map; the map zooms in one level to the location that was touched twice on.
- When the map is re-centred away from being locked to the vehicle position, the cross-hairs will show in the centre of the map. As the map continues to be re-centred, the cross-hairs will remain on the screen. When the cross-hairs are shown on the display, a call-out with more information shows. If the map is moved from the current location, the crosshairs will disappear along with the callout.
- Touch the call-out next to the cross-hairs to display the destination details view. From this view, route guidance can be received or saved to the vehicle's contact list.
- When the map is re-centred, the straight-line distance from the vehicle to the selected point is displayed in the call-out. In addition, a heading direction in the form of an arrow is displayed to indicate the direction. The arrow is shown in relation to the current vehicle heading.

- Touch a POI icon shown on the map and the name of the POI is shown in the address call-out, along with the city name and state. If the call-out is selected, the Destination Details view for the POI is shown.
- After panning the map away from the vehicle, touch the Reset icon to return the map back to the current position.
- Touch the Overview icon to quickly get a view of the entire route. The route Overview takes the place of the Reset icon during route guidance. Touch Reset to return the map to the current position.

Maps

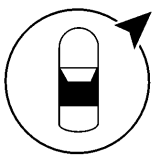
The map database is stored in the internal flash memory that is used in the navigation system.

Detailed Areas

Road network attributes are contained in the map database for detailed areas. Attributes include information such as street names, street addresses, and turn restrictions. A detailed area includes all major highways, service roads, and residential roads. The detailed areas include Places of Interest (POIs) such as restaurants, airports, banks, hospitals, police stations, petrol stations, tourist attractions, and historical monuments. The map database may not include data for newly constructed areas or map database corrections that are completed after production. The navigation system provides full route guidance in the detailed map areas.

Navigation Symbols

The following are the most common symbols that appear on the map view.



or



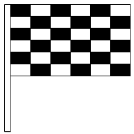
The vehicle symbol indicates the current position and heading direction of the vehicle on the map. When under route guidance, a circle with an arrow is added to the vehicle symbol which indicates the direction to the destination.

Vehicle Address Callout

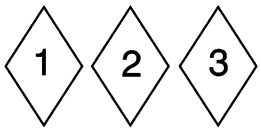
Tap on the vehicle icon to have the current address of the vehicle overlaid on the map next to the vehicle icon in a callout. Another tap hides the information.

Any address information about the vehicle's current location will be shown, including the street, city, and state names.

Tap on this callout to save the current address to the vehicle address book.



The destination symbol marks the final destination after a route has been planned.



The waypoint symbol marks one or more set waypoints.

A waypoint is a stopover destination point added to the planned route.



The estimated time to the destination displays. Touch Arrival to toggle to duration and to the distance of the destination.



This symbol indicates the recommended maneuver that should be performed. Touch it to display the turn list or waypoint list.



The No GPS symbol appears when there is no Global Positioning System (GPS) satellite signal. When the GPS is gone, the vehicle position on the map may not be accurate.

Autozoom

As a maneuver is being approached, the map automatically zooms in to give greater detail.

If lane guidance is available for the maneuver, this is also shown.

When the system begins to autozoom, it zooms in to its minimum level. After the maneuver is performed, the system slowly zooms back out.

Destination

If route guidance is not active, touch the Nav icon on the Home Page to access the map view.

Touch the Destination icon from the map view to enter a destination.

Available methods of entering a destination are Voice Recognition, Address, Recent Destination, Contacts, and POIs. Several options can be selected to plan a route. Some destination items may be greyed out if no destination was previously entered or saved.

Touch the Destination icon on the infotainment display to go to the destination entry views.

Available Methods of Search

- Address (entries by hierarchy)
- Intersection
- Places of interest (POIs)
- Recent (destinations)
- Contacts

Touch the Destination icon on the infotainment display and the last used destination view is shown. This mode is retained. The initial default is Address.

Navigation Next Turn Manoeuvre Alert

The navigation system may need to get the attention of the driver in certain situations.

If not in the navigation application when a near manoeuvre prompt is given, it is shown as an alert. The alert contains the turn indicator and the option to display the main navigation view, or dismiss the alert. The alert also contains the name of the street to turn on and a countdown bar.

Auto-Capitalisation

The shift key is automatically enabled when a period is entered on the keyboard. Once the first character is typed after the period, the next character will change to lower-case.

Alpha-Numeric Keyboard

The keyboard is used in multiple locations throughout the system and can be used with many features. The navigation system uses the keyboard's alpha-numeric keyboard.

The keyboard can also be modified to include characters appropriate for the region configured in the vehicle settings.

✓ **:** Touch to search for the destination details of an address or place of interest entered in the text field. Once ✓ is touched, the activity indicator displays in the list of possible matches.

▽ **:** Touch to display a list of matches.

When there are multiple matches, a dropdown arrow is shown after the autocomplete text. This dropdown displays an entire list of matches. Touch the appropriate match without having to enter more text.

✕ **:** Touch to delete the last typed character. Touch and hold this icon to clear the entire text field. If the entire text field has been deleted, this icon becomes an Undo option. Touching Undo will restore the deleted text.

Exit : Touch to return to the previous Map view.

SYM : Touch to show the symbol keyboard.

Space : Touch to enter a space between characters or the words of a name.

^ **:** Touch to display the interaction selector.

⊕ **:** If equipped, touch to switch between Alpha-Numeric Keyboard and Character Recognition.

Special Characters

As the characters are typed on the keyboard, a pop-up of the letter touched displays above the key that was touched.

Continue to touch and hold, and any additional special characters associated with that letter are displayed around the current letter. To select one of the special characters, slide a finger left or right to adjust the highlight of the special character.

Special Character List

The following characters have special characters beneath them:

E - É È Ê Ë Ę Ė Ē
Y - Ÿ
U - Ū Ú Ù Ü Û
I - Ī Į Í Ì Ï Î
O - Õ Ø Œ Õ Ó Ò Ö Ô
A - À Á Â Ä Æ Ã Å Ā
S - ß(for lowercase s) Ś Š
Ł - Ł
Z - Ź Ž Ż
C - Ç Ć Č
N - Ñ Ń
. - …

More Characters:
0 - °
! - ¡
$ - ¥ £ ¢
& - §
" - «»
? - ¿
(- [{
) -] }
.com - .net .org

Character Handwriting Recognition

Character handwriting recognition is offered as an alternative to using a keyboard.

This character input method allows the drawing out of characters instead of picking them out from the keyboard.

Character handwriting recognition has two main modes, upper case and mixed case. The upper case mode is used for Destination Entry while mixed case is used for all other character entry modes.

This feature is available by touching the globe icon from the keyboard screen.

The Handwriting Recognition screen is split into different zones:

- **Drawing Pad:** This is the area to draw a character. Draw a character in the display area.

  When the first character is complete, a representation of that character can be seen, and there is an audible response. If the character is correct, the next character can be started immediately.

  - To delete the last entered character, draw a line from left to right across the character field.
  - To create a space, draw a line from right to left across the character field.

- **Prioritised Guess List:** This area displays a list of guesses for the character drawn.
  If character recognition displays the incorrect character, look at this list and see if the desired character is available to select. Scroll up or down the list, then highlight the desired character. Selecting a character from the list will replace the incorrect character with the desired character. The character is displayed in the character entry section of the display.

- **Character Entry:** This is the area across the top of the screen. This section can look different depending on which feature is being used.

Option Settings

This section is an area on the right side of the Character Recognition display. This section will only look different if the characters displayed on the display are in upper case or mixed case.

- **:** Touch from the infotainment display. The draw speed setting will adjust the speed of the character recognition feature. The settings are: Faster, Default, and Slower.
- **Audio Feedback:** Touch to turn Audio Feedback On or Off.

  Audio feedback is an audible response to an action that has occurred while using the Character Recognition.
- **ABC/abc:** Touch from the infotainment display to view the available character sets. Select a character set to change. Multiple character sets may not be supported by some regions. This option also displays the sentence case of upper or lower case characters that are currently active in a mixed case mode. If only one character set is available for the desired region, touching the character recognition will only open and close the character recognition window.

  If mixed case character mode is supported, the last characters of character recognition will be upper and lower case.

One-Shot Search

Enter a full or partial Address, Contact, or POI into the search bar and the system will search and display all of the matches.

The contacts that are searched include both connected phone's contacts list and the vehicle's contacts list.

Search Process

The process of prioritising the search is to help shorten the length of time at finding the results. If there is a 100% match found when a search type is carried out, the remaining searches abort.

The system conducts the search in the following order:

1. Vehicle Contacts List
2. Connected Phone Contacts List
3. POIs
4. Addresses

The Contacts are done first because the list will be relatively short and can be done quickly.

POIs are done next because the amount of time it takes to search for the average POI is consistent. The less deviation during a search would mean an average of less time taken.

The Addresses are last because the standard deviation for an address search is very large. Some address searches are very quick, but others

may take very long. Because of this, the address search would not be conducted unless a good match could not be found in either Contacts or POIs.

Autocomplete

The autocomplete is preloaded with all recent destinations and POI category names. Previous POI name searches are remembered.

If only one type of result is found, the single type result is shown. Within each group, they are listed in confidence order. This means the highest confidence result will be at the top.

If multiple types of matches are found, the result list with the highest confidence match displays.

Address and Contact matches are shown in full width list format. The match results will display unique icons for full addresses, streets, intersections, cities, and countries.

POIs show in a split list format with the map on one side displaying the locations of the matches. The brand icon or category icon will display for the match results.

When a list displays, the results for a particular type can be filtered by touching the filters along the top of the screen. If there are no particular results for a selected type, a message is indicated in the list.

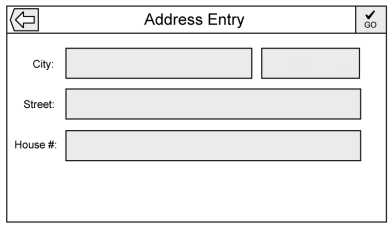
For example:

- For no addresses: “No Addresses Found Within country”
- For no POIs: “No POIs Found Within <75 km / 800 km>”. This distance is shown depending on what radius is completed and what current units are selected.
- For no contacts: “No Contacts Found”

The system performs partial searches on contacts, so typing a first name or last name would find a match. The entire contact name does not need to be entered for it to be found in a search.

Touching a contact listed on the results list displays the standard contact details view to select an item, such as an address to start routing, or a phone number to place a call.

Address



- A destination can be searched by typing out the address, intersection, highway, or freeway entrance ramps on the keyboard. This information is typed and displayed in the information field. Touch the search icon to start the search.

For example:

City: Crawford

Street: Main Rd

House #: 12334

- Country information does not have to be included in the search field if entering an address that is located in the same country.
- Whenever the keyboard view is entered, the last text that was typed, even if it was not searched on, will display.
- A partial or complete address can be typed in the search field. If a partial address is typed, the system attempts to use local knowledge to fill in additional information. For example, if no city name or country are given, the system assumes a search for something in the current city or a nearby city in the current country. The system is also capable of recognising address formats according to other regions.

If a destination address or location being entered is outside of the country, the country abbreviation must be added after the address.

Spelling Mistakes

The system is able to offer alternatives if the searched term is not found exactly. The system uses the closest term it finds and provides those results.

The system first searches the entered term exactly. If no matches are found, partial words are used.

Search in Process

Touch Search and the results screen displays with the activity indicator. There is a non-selectable list item in the list that says “Searching” to indicate that it is in process.

Once the results are found, the correct list will display.

No Results Found

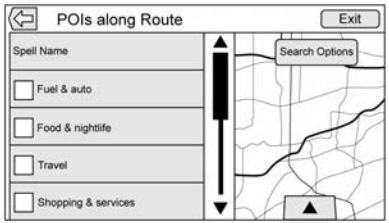
If no results are found from an entered search term, a pop-up displays indicating there are no results found. Touch OK to return to the keyboard view.

Results Display

If only a single match is found at the end of a search, the list is not shown but the Destination Details view is shown. Touch Back from the Destination Details view to go back to the results list. If it was a POI search, Continue POI Search is available in case that was not the desired POI.

Places of Interest (POI)

While at the Home Page, touch the Nav icon to display a view of the map. Touch the Destination icon on the infotainment display to go to the destination entry views.



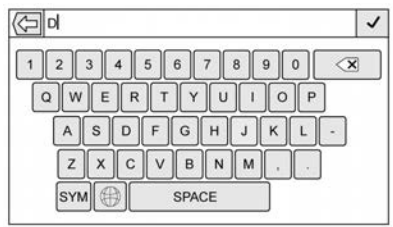
1. Touch the POIs option to display a list of POI categories.

   The first list item in every POI list is a search function. For the highest level of categories, touch Spell Name or select a category and search within that selection.
2. Select a POI category to display subcategories.
3. If a selected subcategory has no results in the surrounding area, the search is expanded until a result is found.
4. If a high-level category is selected, such as restaurants, the map zooms in to the region near the vehicle's position to show the nearest matches.

   When a list displays, it can be filtered for a particular type by touching the filter along the top of the display. If there are no particular results for a selected filter type, it is indicated in the list.
5. Pan or zoom the map using the finger gestures to minimise the POI list and to interact with the map. The icons that were shown before continue to be displayed and updated. The list is also updated based on where the map was panned or zoomed. The search for POIs is constrained to where the map has been moved to.
6. If the search map is touched to recentre, the crosshairs are shown to indicate the center of the new search location. If a POI icon is touched on while in the full expanded map, a callout for that location displays. Touch the callout to display the destination details view.
7. Touch the map reset option to return the map to automatic zooming and searching. It is recentred around the vehicle's position, the route, the destination, or another location that was specified for the search. The map Reset option is only displayed if the map was manually adjusted.

If multiple types of matches are found, the All list is shown with the results sorted by confidence order with the highest confidence result at the top.

Using the Keyboard



The POI can be searched by entering a POI name, category, name and category, or phone number on the keyboard.

For example, enter the information as:

POI Name: Worldwide Food

POI Category: Restaurants

POI Name and Category: Worldwide Food Restaurants

POI Phone Number: 0001222555

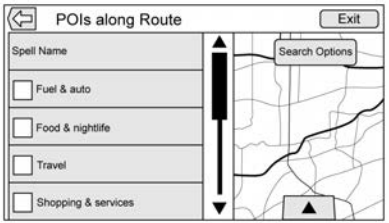
Additionally, a location may be entered if the POI is not nearby. This search will then be made around the location that is given.

For example, enter the information as:

POI Name and Location: Worldwide Food Melbourne Vic

The POI keyboard search results will display in the order in which they were found.

POI Search Location



If browsing for POIs or searching for results on a keyboard in a different location than what was searched previously, touch Search Options on the map view to specify a different location.

Touch an option displayed on the Select Search Area menu.

- POIs Along Route
- POIs Nearby
- POIs Near Destination
- POIs at Another Location

Favourite POIs

Locations, categories, or a particular POI chain ID can be saved as Favourites in the POIs view.

Tap the up arrow to reveal the interaction selector, then drag up on it to display the Favourites.

Touch and hold a preset, then touch the category to be stored. Whenever a set of POIs is grouped, such as in a category, the whole category is saved in the favourites for recall. Whenever a set of POIs that belong to the same chain ID is saved in the favourites, a POI chain saving pop up message displays asking to save only that location, or to save the entire chain. POIs are only grouped by chain when the sorting order is Alphabetical. Touch Sort to change the sorting order.

Recalling a POI Category or Chain

If a POI category or chain favourite is recalled, the system displays a list of matching results defaulting to nearby, but allows a search of other locations. Touch Search Options to specify a different location.

Creating and Downloading Predefined POIs (My POIs)

In addition to the POIs already stored in the Infotainment system, predefined POIs can be created.

While creating a predefined POI, the GPS coordinates for longitude and latitude of the POI's location and a descriptive name will need to be entered.

After creating the predefined POIs, they can be downloaded to the infotainment system from either a USB stick.

Once downloaded, the POI data becomes a selectable destination in the My POIs menu.

Creating a Text File with Information

Create a text file by using a simple text editor software. Save this file with a name and extension of .csv, for example, “TomsPOI.csv.”

Enter the POI information into the text file in the following format:

- Longitude coordinate, Latitude coordinate, “Name of POI,” “Additional information,” “Phone number.”

  Example: 7.0350000, 50.6318040, “Michaels Home,” “123 Maple Lane,” “02379234567.”
- The GPS coordinates must be expressed in decimal degrees and can be taken from a geographical map. The additional information and phone number strings are optional.
- The POI name and the additional information string may not exceed 60 characters.
- POI information for each destination address must be entered in a single separate line.

Storing the POI on a USB Device

In the root directory of a USB device, create a folder name “myPOIs,” for example, “F:\” is the root directory of the USB device.

In the “myPOIs” folder, store the text file with your POIs, for example, “F:\myPOIs\TomsPOIs.csv.”

Downloading the POI to the Infotainment System

Connect the USB drive containing the POI information to the USB port of the infotainment system.
A message displays prompting whether or not to download the POI information from the USB stick. All POIs found are saved even if they are in multiple folders.

Subfolders can also be created to organise the POIs into categories, for example, “F:\myPOIs\Restaurants\TomsPOIs.csv.”

If the message is dismissed or ignored, no POI information is downloaded. This prompt will not reoccur for the current ignition cycle.

When the system is finished downloading, a pop-up displays asking to specify a category for the new POIs, if desired.

Importing and Overwriting Categories

When POIs are found on a media device, the date of the file is examined and compared to the date for the files already in the system. If the file being downloaded is newer than the one on the system, that particular category of POIs is overwritten. Any other POIs that had previously been saved in other categories are not affected.

Address Book Download

If an Address Book is found on the connected USB device, the same alert is used to indicate that locations have been found and they can be downloaded. If there is already content in the vehicle Address Book, the system prompts if the stored content should be overwritten. Select Save to overwrite the existing Address Book information. Select Cancel to abort the import of information.

Browsing Downloaded POIs

Access the downloaded POIs by selecting the My POIs list item in the POIs list.

Editing My POIs

Downloaded POIs can be edited at a category level. These POIs can either be deleted as an entire category or be reassigned as another category. To edit the categories:

- Select Edit at the main category view to edit the POIs. Edit icons display next to each category name. There is no POI browsing in this mode. Only edit functions are available.
- Once an action such as deleting or reassigning has been selected, the changes are saved immediately.

Changing POI Categories

POI categories can be assigned to a different category by using the same method as assigning a category for an Address Book entry. When editing, one side of the screen displays the current category name.

Deleting POI Categories

POI categories can be deleted by selecting Edit and then Delete. A pop-up displays to confirm the deletion.

Saved Destinations

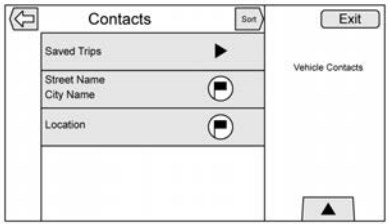
Select a saved destination from the Contacts or Recent Destinations.

Contacts

Select Contacts to view the vehicle's contact list or a connected Bluetooth device. If a particular contact has a single address associated with it, that contact has a Quick Route icon next to it. Contacts without this Quick Route icon either have multiple addresses or no address at all. Touch Quick Route to go to the Destination Details view.

Touch an address, either from the Quick Route on the contact list or a specific address from the contact

detail list, to go to the destination view showing that address on the map.



Trips from Contacts can be saved and recalled. The order is based on when the trip was last used. When the trips are saved, they are given a default title of the final destination name. If there are no saved trips, this list item is hidden.

Favourite Destinations

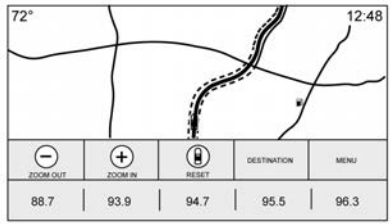
- Destinations can be saved as Favourites for recall later. Depending on the favourite, when an address or POI favourite is recalled, the Destination Details View is shown.
- When a favourite address is being routed to, it is shown active. Touch on the active favourite, to suspend that route.
- Save locations as Favourites for recall later in the Destination Details View.
- Save trips from the Address Book.

Storing Favourites from the Contact Details List

A contact name or any of the contact's information such as phone number or address from Contact Details can be stored as a Favourite.

- Touch and hold on the favourite location while viewing a contact on the Contact Details List. The contact name and all contact information can be stored.
- Touch to save as a favourite. The favourite label will be the name of the contact.
- Touch on the Favourite to display the destination view.

Storing Favourites from Map

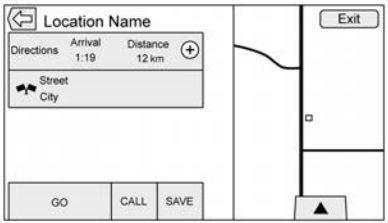


Favourite locations can be stored from the Map View.

If not under route guidance, the current vehicle location will be saved as a Favourite. If under route guidance, the final destination will be saved.

Touch and drag up on the row of interaction selector presets to reveal Favourites. Touch and hold on the favourite location from the map view to save it.

Route Guidance



- Touch Go to go to the main navigation view and to start route guidance.
- If the system has an active route, a pop-up will display, “What would you like to do with this destination?” The options are: Add As Waypoint, Set New Destination, or Cancel.
- If a waypoint is added, it is placed in the location that leads to the most efficient route.
- There is a maximum number of waypoints that can be added to the system. When the maximum number of waypoints has been reached, a pop-up displays indicating that a waypoint must first be deleted before a new one can be added. The system will hold this waypoint into a Pending Waypoints list and it will automatically be added to the route once a position is available, either by arriving at a waypoint, or by deleting one.
- To save a location, drag the arrow up to display the Favourites. Touch and hold a preset to store the shown location as a Favourite.

Estimated Time of Arrival (ETA) and Distance

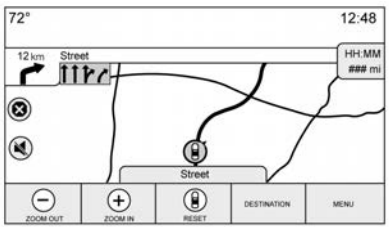
- When under route guidance, the system shows the ETA or travel time, or the driving distance.
- If in a waypoint trip, the ETA, travel time, and driving distance are all shown relative to the final destination.
- The final ETA is shown taking into consideration any time zone crossings that the route has travelled through.
- Touch the ETA information area to switch between the estimated arrival time, total driving time resulting, and driving distance.

Current Street Name

The current street name that the vehicle is driving on is displayed along the bottom centre of the display.

When driving off-road or on an unknown road, “Off Road Location” displays.

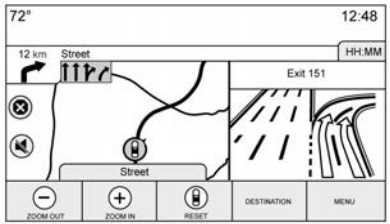
City Lane Guidance



When a manoeuvre is approached that has city lane guidance information, it replaces the normal manoeuvre indicator.

The arrows will expand toward the centre of the screen so that the manoeuvres can be identified in an easier way.

Highway Lane Guidance



The junction view image displays on the right edge of the screen and temporarily covers the Distance information. The current vehicle position and street name is moved left and centred in the available map display when this is displayed.

Off-Road Mode

When the vehicle is off-road, the system displays the off-road arrow in the turn indicator and displays “Off Road Location” in the street name field.

Destination Arrival

The route review information displays in the turn indicator location and the destination address displays in the street name field.

Audio Information

The audio information remains in the same position in the lower right corner of the display.

The current street name information remains in the same location, but will truncate if needed.

Turn List

Touch on the next turn indicator shown on the map to display the turn list or waypoint list. The interaction selector is minimised automatically. Drag the arrow up to reveal the following options:

Destination

Touch Destination on the infotainment display to add a waypoint or change the destination while viewing the turn list. When Destination is touched, the display shows the Destination menus.

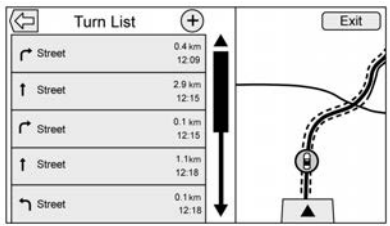
End Guidance

Touch End Guidance to suspend the current route in the turn list. When End Guidance is touched, the turn list is exited and the display returns to the main map view.

Avoid Areas

Touch Avoid Areas to select the highway name that is to be avoided. The system shows a pop-up asking how many miles or if the entire road should be avoided.

Turn List



- When under a waypoint trip, touch Turn List on the infotainment display to show the

turn list. When entering a turn list, the next manoeuvre instruction is spoken.

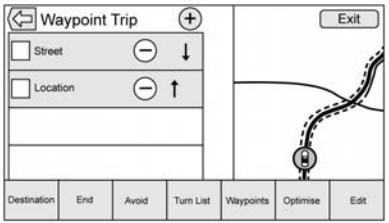
- The turn list title is the name or address of the destination. Touch on the information icon next to the name of the destination to display the destination information.
- The turn list is sorted in order with the next manoeuvre at the top of the list and the subsequent manoeuvres listed below it. The next manoeuvre is always highlighted upon entry into the Turn List to quickly show what the next manoeuvre is.
- Each manoeuvre indicates the distance between it and the previous manoeuvre or the vehicle's current location. The next manoeuvre at the top will count down until the manoeuvre is reached, and then the next manoeuvre will begin to count down.
- Each manoeuvre has an estimated time of arrival based on the current driving conditions.

Saved Trips

Waypoint trips can be saved for later recall. Touch Add in the waypoints list to save the trip to the Saved Trips list in the vehicle's contacts list. When trips are saved, they are given a default title of the final destination. Saved trips can be edited by selecting the Edit list option to access the edit screen for the saved entry. The only field that can be edited is the name field. Touch the name field to access the keyboard view. Type the name change. This change is automatically saved when executed by the keyboard.

The saved trip can also be deleted from the edit mode. Touch Delete and a delete confirmation pop-up will display.

Waypoints



- When under a waypoint trip, touch the next turn indicator to bring up the waypoint list. The last waypoint view is shown, which could be Waypoints, Turn List, or Edit Route.
- The waypoint list is sorted in order with the next waypoint at the top of the list. Each waypoint is indicated with a numbered icon, starting with the next waypoint.
- To indicate what segment of the route is for the next waypoint, and what is for the remainder of the route, they appear in different colors.

Optimised Route

- Touch Optimise to optimise the current waypoint trip.
- The optimisation is done according to how the preferences are set for new routes, for example, fastest route, shortest distance, or eco friendly.
- While the system is optimising the route, the waypoint trip has the Activity Indicator displayed over top of it. If the system is calculating the ETA and travel distance for a waypoint, the Activity Indicator is displayed in the list header.
- When either a waypoint trip is first created, or additional waypoints are added to an existing waypoint trip, they are added in the location that would lead to an optimised route.
- If a destination is already planned and a waypoint is added, it is either added before or after the current destination, whichever leads to the most optimal route.
- If under an existing waypoint trip consisting of two or more destinations, any additional waypoints are added in the location that would lead to the most optimal route.

Edit Route

- Touch Edit Route to modify the order or remove a waypoint from the route. Touch Delete to remove a waypoint from the route.
- A pop-up displays asking for confirmation of the waypoint deletion.

Global Positioning System (GPS)

The position of the vehicle is determined by using satellite signals, various vehicle signals, and map data.

At times, other interference such as the satellite condition, road configuration, condition of the vehicle, and/or other circumstances can affect the navigation system's ability to determine the accurate position of the vehicle.

The GPS shows the current position of the vehicle using signals sent by GPS satellites. When the vehicle is not receiving signals from the satellites, a symbol appears on the map screen. See *Navigation Symbols* ⇨ *172*.

This system might not be available or interference can occur if any of the following are true:

- Signals are obstructed by tall buildings, trees, large trucks, or a tunnel.
- Satellites are being repaired or improved.

For more information if the GPS is not functioning properly, see *Problems with Route Guidance* ⇨ *188* and *Map Data Updates* ⇨ *189*.

Vehicle Positioning

At times, the position of the vehicle on the map could be inaccurate due to one or more of the following reasons:

- The road system has changed.
- The vehicle is driving on slippery road surfaces such as sand, gravel, or snow.
- The vehicle is travelling on winding roads or long straight roads.
- The vehicle is approaching a tall building or a large vehicle.
- The surface streets run parallel to a freeway.
- The vehicle has been transferred by a vehicle carrier or a ferry.
- The current position calibration is set incorrectly.
- The vehicle is travelling at high speed.
- The vehicle changes directions more than once, or the vehicle is turning on a turn table in a parking lot.
- The vehicle is entering and/or exiting a parking lot, garage, or a lot with a roof.
- The GPS signal is not received.
- A roof carrier is installed on the vehicle.
- Tyre chains have been installed.
- The tyres are replaced or worn.
- The tyre pressure for the tyres is incorrect.
- This is the first navigation use after the map data is updated.
- The 12-volt battery is disconnected for several days.
- The vehicle is driving in heavy traffic where driving is at low speeds, and the vehicle is stopped and started repeatedly.

Problems with Route Guidance

Inappropriate route guidance can occur under one or more of the following conditions:

- The turn was not made on the road indicated.
- Route guidance might not be available when using automatic rerouting for the next right or left turn.
- The route might not be changed when using automatic rerouting.
- There is no route guidance when turning at an intersection.
- Plural names of places might be announced occasionally.
- It could take a long time to operate automatic rerouting during high-speed driving.
- Automatic rerouting might display a route returning to the set waypoint if heading for a destination without passing through a set waypoint.

- The route prohibits the entry of a vehicle due to a regulation by time or season or any other regulation which may be given.
- Some routes might not be searched.
- The route to the destination might not be shown if there are new roads, if roads have recently changed, or if certain roads are not listed in the map data. See *Maps* ⇨ *172*.

To recalibrate the vehicle's position on the map, park with the vehicle running for two to five minutes, until the vehicle position updates. Make sure the vehicle is parked in a location that is safe and has a clear view of the sky and away from large obstructions.

If the System Needs Service

If the navigation system needs service and the steps listed here have been followed but there are still problems, see *Problems with Route Guidance* ⇨ *188*.

Map Data Updates

The map data in the vehicle is the most up-to-date information available when the vehicle was produced. The map data is updated periodically, provided that the map information has changed.

For questions about the operation of the navigation system or the update process, see your dealer.

Database Coverage Explanations

Coverage areas vary with respect to the level of map detail available for any given area. Some areas feature greater levels of detail than others.

If this happens, it does not mean there is a problem with the system. As the map data is updated, more detail can become available for areas that previously had limited detail. See *Map Data Updates* ⇨ *189*.

Voice Recognition

Voice recognition allows for hands-free operation within the navigation, audio and phone applications. This feature can be started by pressing either on the steering wheel controls or touching the icon on the infotainment display.

However, not all features within these areas are supported by voice commands. Generally, only complex tasks that require multiple manual interactions to complete are supported by voice commands.

For example, tasks that take more than one or two touches such as selecting a song or artist to play from a media device would be supported by voice commands. Other tasks, like adjusting the volume or seeking up or down are audio features easily performed by pressing one or two controls, and are not supported by voice commands.

In general there are flexible ways to speak commands for completing tasks. Most of them, except destination entry and voice keypad, can be completed in a single command. If the task takes more than one command to complete, the first command should be to indicate the kind of task to be performed, like “Navigation Destination Entry.” The system replies with prompts that lead you through a dialogue to enter the necessary information. For example, if a destination for route guidance is needed, say “Navigation” or “Destination Entry.”

If your language supports it, try stating a One-Shot command, such as “Navigate to Address <number, street, city, state>.” This type of destination entry command is supported in some languages. Another example of a One-Shot Destination Entry command is, “Navigate to Place of Interest – Hotels.” If these commands don't work, try saying, “Navigate to Place of Interest” or “Navigate to Address” and the system will do the rest.

Voice recognition can be used when the ignition is on or when Retained Accessory Power (RAP) is active. See *Retained Accessory Power (RAP)* ⇨ *218*.

Using Voice Recognition

Voice recognition becomes available once the system has been initialised. This begins when the ignition is turned on. Initialisation may take a few moments.

1. Press on the steering wheel controls to activate voice recognition, or touch the icon on the infotainment display.
2. The audio system mutes and the system plays a prompt followed by a beep.
3. Wait until after the beep completes, then clearly speak one of the commands described in this section.

   Press to interrupt any voice recognition system prompt. For example, if the prompt seems to be taking too long to finish, press again and the beep should happen right away.

There are two voice prompt modes supported:

- Long verbal prompts: The longer prompts provide more information regarding the supported actions.
- Short prompts: The short prompts provide simple instructions about what can be stated.

If a command is not spoken, the voice recognition system says a help prompt.

Prompts and Screen Displays

While a voice recognition session is active, there will be corresponding options on screens displayed. Manual interaction in the voice recognition session is permitted. Interaction during a voice session may be completed entirely using voice commands, or some selections may expedite a session. If a selection is made using a

manual control, the dialogue will progress in the same way as if the selection was made through a voice command. Once the system is able to complete the task, or the session is terminated, the voice recognition dialogue stops.

An example of this type of manual intervention is touching on an entry of a displayed number list instead of speaking the number associated with the entry desired.

Cancelling Voice Recognition

- Touch . Touching this icon will terminate a voice recognition session which was initiated by touching the icon on the infotainment display.
- Touch or say “Cancel” or “Exit” to terminate the voice recognition session and show the display from which voice recognition was initiated.
- Press on the steering wheel controls to terminate the voice session and display the display from which voice recognition was initiated.

Helpful Hints for Speaking Commands

Voice recognition can understand commands that are either naturally stated in sentence form, or direct commands that state the application and the task.

Most languages do not support natural language commands in sentence form. For those languages, use direct commands like the examples shown on the display.

For best results:

- Listen for the prompt and wait for the beep before saying a command or reply.
- Say “Help” or look at the display for example commands.
- A voice recognition system prompt can be interrupted while it is playing by pressing .

  For example, if the prompt seems to be taking too long to finish, to speak the command without waiting for the prompt to complete, press .
- Speak the command naturally, not too fast, not too slow. Use direct commands without a lot of extra words.
- Usually Phone and Audio commands can be spoken in a single command.

  For example say, “Call <name> at work,” “Play” followed by the artist or song name, or “Tune” followed by the radio station number.
- Navigation destinations are too complex for a single command. First, say a command that explains the type of destination needed, such as I want directions to an “Address,” “Navigate to an Intersection,” “I

need to find a Place of Interest or POI," or "Directions to a Contact." The system responds by requesting more details. After saying "Place of Interest," only major chains are available by name. Chains are businesses with at least 20 locations. For other POIs, say the name of a category like "Restaurants," "Shopping Malls," or "Hospitals."

Most languages do not support natural language commands in sentence form. For those languages, use direct commands like the samples shown on the display.

There is no need to memorise specific command words. Direct commands might be more clearly understood by the system. An example of a direct command would be "Call <number>." Examples of these direct commands are displayed on most of the screens while a voice session is active. If "Phone" or "Phone Commands," is stated, the system understands that a phone call is requested and will respond with questions until enough details are gathered.

If the phone number has been saved with a name and a place, the direct command should include both, for example "Call <name> at work."

Using Voice Recognition for List Options

When a list is displayed, a voice prompt will ask to confirm or select an option from that list. A selection can be made by manually selecting the item, or by speaking the line number for the item to select.

When a display contains a list, there may be options that are available but not shown. The list on a voice recognition screen functions the same as a list on other screens. Scrolling or flinging can be used to help display other entries from the list.

Manually scrolling or paging the list on a display during a voice recognition session suspends the current voice recognition event and plays the prompt "Make your selection from the list using the manual controls or press < BACK to try again."

If manual selection takes more than 15 seconds, the session terminates and prompts that it has timed out. The display returns back to the display where voice recognition was initiated.

The Back Command

Say "Back" or press < BACK to go to the previous display.

If in voice recognition, and "Back" is stated all the way through to the initial screen, then "Back" is stated one more time, the voice recognition session will cancel.

Help

Say "Help" on any voice recognition display and the help prompt for the display is played. Additionally, a pop-up shows a text version of the help prompt. Depending on how voice recognition was initiated, the Help pop-up will either display on

the instrument cluster or the infotainment display. Touch Dismiss to make the pop-up go away.

Pressing while the help prompt is playing will terminate the prompt and a beep will be heard. Doing this will stop the help prompt so that a voice command can be used.

Voice Recognition for the Radio

Some audio screens have a voice recognition icon () to launch audio voice recognition. If the voice icon is touched in a radio display, the voice commands for radio and media features are available.

“Switch to AM” : Switch bands to AM and tune to the last AM radio station.

“Switch to FM” : Switch bands to FM and tune to the last FM radio station.

“Switch to DAB” : Switch bands to DAB and tune to the last DAB radio station.

“Tune to <AM frequency> AM” : Tune to the radio station whose frequency is identified in the command (like “nine fifty”).

“Tune to <FM frequency> FM” : Tune to the radio station whose frequency is identified in the command (like “one o one point one”).

“Tune to <DAB frequency> DAB” : Tune to the radio station whose frequency is identified in the command (like “one o one point one”).

Voice Recognition for Navigation

“Navigation” : Begin a dialogue to enter specific destination information.

“Navigation Commands” : Begin a dialogue to enter specific destination information.

“Destination Address” : Begin a dialogue to enter a specific destination address, which includes the entire address consisting of the house number, street name, city and country.

“Destination Intersection” : Begin a dialogue to enter a specific destination intersection.

“Destination Place of Interest” : Begin a dialogue to enter a destination Place of Interest category or major brand name (if equipped).

Not all brand names of businesses are available for voice entry. Most major chains, such as chains with more than 20 locations, should be available to search for by name, but the name must be precisely spoken. Nicknames or short names for the businesses will not likely be found. Lesser known businesses might have to be located by category, such as restaurants, hotels, or banks.

“Destination Contact” : Begin a dialogue to enter a specific destination contact name.

“Cancel Route” : End route guidance.

Voice Recognition for the Phone

“Call <contact name>” : Initiate a call to an entered contact. The command may include location if the contact has location numbers stored.

“Call <contact name> At Home,” “At Work,” “On Mobile,” or “On Other” : Initiate a call to an entered contact and location at home, at work, on mobile device, or on another phone.

“Call <phone number>” : Initiate a call to a standard phone number or emergency number.

If the call is being initiated outside of the country, say “Call <phone number>,” then after the system reads back the number, repeat the “Call” command to initiate the call. If the number is not correct, say “Delete.” This command will delete the number and allow it to be entered again. If the number is not complete, speak the remaining digits.

“Pair Phone” : Begin the Bluetooth pairing process. Follow instructions on the radio display.

“Switch Phone” : Select a different phone for outgoing calls.

“Voice Keypad” : Begins a dialogue to enter special numbers like international numbers. The numbers can be entered in groups of digits with each group of digits being repeated back by the system. If the group of digits is not correct, the command “Delete” will remove the last group of digits and allow them to be re-entered. Once the entire number has been entered, the command “Call” will start dialling the number.

“Voice Mail” : Initiate a call to voice mail numbers.

Voice Pass-Thru

Voice pass-thru allows access to the voice recognition commands on the mobile phone, for example, Siri or Voice Command. See the mobile phone manufacturer's user guide to see if the mobile phone supports this feature. To activate the phone voice recognition system, press and hold on the steering wheel controls for a few seconds.

Phone

Bluetooth

The Bluetooth-capable system can interact with many mobile phones, allowing:

- Placement and receipt of calls in a hands-free mode.
- Sharing of the mobile phone's address book or contact list with the vehicle.

To minimise driver distraction, before driving, and with the vehicle parked:

- Become familiar with the features of the mobile phone. Organise the phone book and contact lists clearly and delete duplicate or rarely used entries. If possible, program speed dial or other shortcuts.
- Review the controls and operation of the infotainment system.
- Pair mobile phone(s) to the vehicle. The system may not work with all mobile phones. See “Pairing” in this section.

⚠ Danger

Taking your eyes off the road for too long or too often while using any infotainment feature can cause a crash. You or others could be injured or killed. Do not give extended attention to infotainment tasks while driving. Limit your glances at the vehicle displays and focus your attention on driving. Use voice commands whenever possible.

⚠ Warning

It is illegal to touch your phone when driving.

Make sure that Bluetooth® is activated before driving. If not, stop at a safe place to use a mobile phone.

Vehicles with a Bluetooth system can use a Bluetooth-capable phone with a Hands-Free Profile to make and receive phone calls.

The infotainment system and voice recognition are used to control the system. The system can be used while the ignition is on or in Accessory mode. The range of the Bluetooth system can be up to 9.1 m.

Not all phones support all functions and not all phones work with the Bluetooth system. See www.holden.com.au for more information about compatible phones.

Bluetooth Controls

Use the features on the infotainment system and the steering wheel to operate the Bluetooth system.

Steering Wheel Controls

: Press to answer incoming calls, confirm system information, and start voice recognition.

: Press to end a call, decline a call, or cancel an operation. Press to mute or unmute the infotainment system when not on a call.

Infotainment System Controls

For information about how to navigate the menu system using the infotainment controls, see *Using the System ⇨ 154*.

PHONE : Touch the Phone icon on the Home Page to enter the phone main menu.

Audio System

When using the Bluetooth system, sound comes through the vehicle's front audio system speakers and overrides the audio system. Turn the volume knob during a call to change the volume level. The adjusted volume level remains in memory for later calls. The system maintains a minimum volume level.

Pairing

A Bluetooth-enabled mobile phone must be paired to the Bluetooth system and then connected to the vehicle before it can be used. See the mobile phone manufacturer's user guide for Bluetooth functions before pairing the mobile phone.

Pairing Information

- A Bluetooth phone with music capability can be paired to the vehicle as a phone and a music player at the same time.
- Up to 10 devices can be paired to the Bluetooth system.
- The pairing process is disabled when the vehicle is moving.
- Pairing only needs to be completed once, unless the pairing information on the mobile phone changes or the mobile phone is deleted from the system.
- One Bluetooth device can be connected to the Bluetooth system at a time.
- If multiple paired mobile phones are within range of the system, the system connects to the paired mobile phone in the order that they were last used in the system. To link to a different paired phone, see “Linking to a Different Phone” later in this section.

Pairing a Phone

1. Touch the Phone icon on the Home Page.
2. Touch Phone and touch Pair Device.
3. A four-digit Personal Identification Number (PIN) appears on the display. The PIN, if required, may be used in Step 5.
4. Start the pairing process on the mobile phone to be paired to the vehicle. See the mobile phone manufacturer's user guide for information on this process.
5. Locate “Holden MyLink” on the display. If required, follow the instructions on the mobile phone to enter the PIN provided in Step 3 or confirm the six-digit code shown on the display. After the PIN is

successfully entered (if required) or the code is confirmed, the system responds with “<Device name> has been successfully paired” when the pairing process is complete.

6. If “Holden MyLink” does not appear, turn the phone off or remove the phone battery and retry.
7. If the phone prompts to accept connection or allow phone book download, select always accept and allow. The phone book may not be available if not accepted.
8. Repeat Steps 1–7 to pair additional phones.

Listing All Paired and Connected Phones

1. Touch the Phone icon on the Home Page.
2. Touch Phones.

Disconnecting a Connected Phone

1. Touch the Phone icon on the Home Page.
2. Touch Phones.
3. Touch ✕ next to the phone to disconnect.

Deleting a Paired Phone

Only disconnected phones can be deleted.

1. Touch the Phone icon on the Home Page.
2. Touch Phones.
3. Touch ⊖ next to the phone to delete and follow the on-screen prompts.

Linking to a Different Phone

To link to a different phone, the new phone must be in the vehicle and paired to the Bluetooth system.

1. Touch the Phone icon on the Home Page.
2. Touch Phones.
3. Select the new phone to link to from the not connected device list.

Switching to Handset or Handsfree Mode

To switch between handset or handsfree mode, touch the Phone icon on the Home Page to display Call View.

- While the active call is hands-free, touch the Handset option to switch to the handset mode. The option changes to Handsfree once the Bluetooth device confirms it is operating as handset.
- While the active call is handset, touch the Handsfree option to switch to the hands free mode. The option changes to Handset once the Bluetooth device confirms it is operating as handsfree.

Making a Call Using Contacts and Recent Calls

Calls can be made through the Bluetooth system using personal mobile phone contact information for all phones that support the Phone Book feature. Become familiar with the phone settings and operation. Verify the mobile phone supports this feature.

When supported, the Contacts and Recent Calls menus are automatically available.

The Contacts menu accesses the phone book stored in the mobile phone.

The Recent Calls menu accesses the recent call list(s) from your mobile phone.

To make a call using the Contacts menu:

1. Touch the Phone icon on the Home Page.
2. Touch Contacts.
3. Touch the name to call.
4. Touch the desired contact number to call.

To make a call using the Recent Calls menu:

1. Touch the Phone icon on the Home Page.
2. Touch Recent.
3. Touch the name or number to call.
4. If necessary, select between Missed, Recent, or Sent calls by selecting the View option in the top corner of the list.

Making a Call Using the Keypad

To make a call by dialling the numbers:

1. Touch the Phone on the Home Page.
2. Touch Keypad and enter a phone number.
3. Touch Call to start dialling the number.

Accepting or Declining a Call

When an incoming call is received, the infotainment system mutes and a ring tone is heard in the vehicle.

Accepting a Call

There are a few ways to accept a call:

- Press on the steering wheel controls.
- Touch Answer on the infotainment display.

Declining a Call

There are a few ways to decline a call:

- Press on the steering wheel controls.
- Touch Ignore on the infotainment display.

Call Waiting

Call waiting must be supported on the Bluetooth phone and enabled by the wireless service carrier to work.

Accepting a Call

There are two ways to accept a call:

- Press on the steering wheel controls.
- Touch Answer on the infotainment display.

Declining a Call

There are two ways to decline a call:

- Press on the steering wheel controls.
- Touch Ignore on the infotainment display.

Switching Between Calls (Call Waiting Calls Only)

To switch between calls, touch the Phone icon on the Home Page to display Call View. While in Call View, touch the call information of the call on hold to change calls.

Three-Way Calling

Three-way calling must be supported on the Bluetooth phone and enabled by the wireless service carrier to work.

To start a three-way call while in a current call:

1. In the Call View, touch Add to add another call.
2. Initiate the second call by selecting from Recent, Contacts, or Keypad.
3. When the second call is active, touch the Merge option to conference the three-way call together.
4. Once all calls are merged, the Merge option becomes an Unmerge option. Touch to unmerge the calls. Some wireless service carriers may not allow a merged call to become unmerged.

Ending a Call

- Press on the steering wheel controls.
- Touch End on the infotainment display to end all existing calls, or touch End next to a call to end only that call.

Some wireless service carriers may not allow a merged call to become unmerged.

Dual Tone Multi-Frequency (DTMF) Tones

The in-vehicle Bluetooth system can send numbers during a call. This is used when calling a menu-driven phone system.

1. Touch the Phone icon on the Home Page.
2. While in the Call View, drag the arrow up to raise the interaction selector.
3. Touch Keypad and enter the number.

Voice Mail

The default voice mail number is the phone number of the currently connected phone. The voice mail number can be changed in Bluetooth settings.

To dial a voice mail number:

1. Touch the Phone icon on the Home Page.
2. Touch Voice Mail.
3. Touch Call.
4. Enter the DTMF tones using the keypad if needed.

Using Bluetooth Voice Recognition

To use voice recognition, press on the steering wheel controls. Use the commands below for the various voice features. For additional information, say “Help” while in a voice recognition menu. See *Voice Recognition* ⇨ *189* for help using voice recognition commands.

Making a Call

Calls can be made using the following commands.

Using the “Dial” or “Call” Command

To call a number:

1. Press . The system responds “Command Please,” followed by a tone.
2. Say “Dial” or “Call” followed by the complete phone number.

Use the “Voice Keypad” command for international numbers or special numbers which include * or #.

Once connected, the person called will be heard through the audio speakers.

To call using a contact from your phone book:

1. Press . The system responds “Command Please,” followed by a tone.
2. Say “Dial” or “Call” and then say the contact name. For example “Call <name> at Work.”

Once connected, the person called will be heard through the audio speakers.

Calling Local Emergency Numbers

1. Press . The system responds “Command Please,” followed by a tone.
2. Say “Call <emergency number>.”

Once connected, the person called will be heard through the audio speakers.

Using the “Switch Phone” Command

1. Press . The system responds “Command Please,” followed by a tone.
2. After the tone, say “Switch Phone.” The system displays a list of phones to select from.

Using the “Voice Keypad” Command

1. Press . The system responds “Command Please,” followed by a tone.

2. After the tone, say “Voice Keypad.” The system allows entry of special numbers and characters.

Using the “Voice Mail” Command

1. Press . The system responds “Command Please,” followed by a tone.
2. After the tone, say “Voice Mail.” The system dials the voice mail number of the connected phone.

Clearing the System

Unless information is deleted out of the vehicle Bluetooth system, it will be retained. This includes phone pairing information. For directions on how to delete this information, see “Deleting a Paired Phone.”

Text Messaging

The infotainment system may allow text messages to be received and replied to. Received messages can also be read aloud.

Before using the text messaging feature, check to see if the phone is compatible.

Text Menu

Inbox : Touch to display incoming messages. To view a message, touch the name of the sender. Touch to listen to the text message. Press < BACK on the infotainment system fascia or touch the Back icon on the infotainment display to go back to the previous menu.

Settings : See “Text Settings” later in this section.

Reply : Touch to reply using a predefined text message. See “Text Settings” later in this section.

Call : Touch to place a call to the sender of the text message.

Viewing a Text Message

While viewing a text message:

- Touch Reply to reply using a predefined text message.
- Touch Call to place a call to the sender of the text message.

Viewing Sender Information

If equipped, touch the name of the sender to view sender information if this information matches contact information already stored.

Select a Predefined Message : Touch to select from a set of quick messages. Touch the message to send.

Predefined Messages

These are short text messages that can be used to send so responses will not have to be typed.

The messages can be deleted or a new message can be added.

To add a new message:

1. Touch Text Settings, then touch Manage Predefined Messages.

2. While in the predefined messages list view, select Add New Predefined Message and a keyboard displays.
3. Type a new message and touch NEW MSG when done to add the message. Press < BACK on the infotainment system fascia or touch the Back icon on the infotainment display to go back to the predefined messages list. Touch the ✕ icon on the infotainment display to delete one character at a time.

Memory Full

This message may display if there is no more room on the phone to store messages.

Text Settings

Text Alerts : When on, this feature will display an alert when a new text message has been received. Touch to turn on or off.

Manage Predefined Messages : Touch to add, change, or delete predefined messages.

Apple CarPlay and Android Auto

If equipped, Android Auto and/or Apple CarPlay capability may be available through a compatible smartphone. If available, PROJECTION will appear on the Home Page of the infotainment display.

To use Android Auto and/or Apple CarPlay:

1. Download the Android Auto app to your phone from the GooglePlay store. No app is required for Apple CarPlay.
2. Connect an Android phone or iPhone by using the compatible phone USB cable and plugging into a USB data port. For best performance, use the device's factory-provided USB cable. Aftermarket or third-party cables may not work.
3. When the phone is first connected to activate Apple CarPlay or Android Auto, the message “Device Projection Privacy Consent” will appear.
   - Touch Continue to launch Apple CarPlay or Android Auto.
   - Touch Disable to remove Apple CarPlay and Android Auto capability from the vehicle Settings menu. Other functions may still work.

PROJECTION on the Home Page will change to Android Auto or Apple CarPlay depending on the phone. Android Auto and/or Apple CarPlay may automatically launch upon USB connection. If not, touch the ANDROID AUTO and/or APPLE CARPLAY icon on the Home Page to launch.

Press ⌂ on the infotainment system fascia to return to the Home Page.

For further information on how to set up Android Auto and Apple CarPlay in the vehicle see your dealer or “Customer Care” in the owner's manual.

Android Auto is provided by Google and is subject to Google’s terms and privacy policy. Apple CarPlay is provided by Apple and is subject to Apple's terms and privacy policy. Data plan rates apply. For Android Auto support see https://support.google.com/androidauto. For Apple CarPlay support see www.apple.com/ios/carplay/. Apple or Google may change or suspend availability at any time. Android Auto, Android, Google, Google Play, and other marks are trademarks of Google Inc.; Apple CarPlay is a trademark of Apple Inc.

Climate Controls

Climate Control Systems
Air Conditioning System 204
Dual Automatic Climate Control System 206

Air Vents
Air Vents 210

Maintenance
Air Intake 210
Passenger Compartment Air Filter 210
Air Conditioning Regular Operation 210

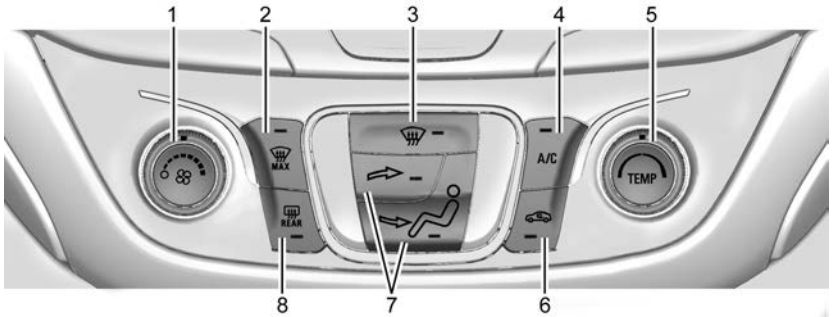
Climate Control Systems

Air Conditioning System

⚠ Danger

Do not sleep with the air conditioning or heating system on. Serious harm or death may occur due to a drop in oxygen level and/or body temperature.

The heating, cooling, and ventilation for the vehicle can be manually controlled with this system.



1. Fan Control
2. MAX Defrost
3. Defrost/Demist
4. A/C (Air Conditioning)
5. Temperature Control
6. Recirculation
7. Air Delivery Mode Controls
8. Rear Window Demister

: Turn the knob clockwise or anticlockwise to increase or decrease the fan speed or turn the fan off.

TEMP : Turn the knob clockwise or anticlockwise to increase or decrease the temperature.

Air Delivery Mode Controls :

Press , , and or a combination of the buttons to change the direction of the airflow. The indicator light in the button will turn on.

To change the current mode, select one or more of the following:

: Clears the windows of fog or moisture. Air is directed to the windscreen.

: Air is directed to the instrument panel outlets.

: Air is directed to the floor outlets.

MAX : Air is directed to the windscreen and the fan runs at a higher speed. Fog or frost is cleared from the windscreen more quickly. When the button is pressed again, the system returns to the previous mode setting.

For best results, clear all snow and ice from the windscreen before defrosting.

A/C : Press to turn the air conditioning system on or off. If the climate control system is turned off or the outside temperature falls below freezing, the air conditioner will not run.

: Press to turn on recirculation. An indicator light comes on. Air is recirculated to quickly cool the inside of the vehicle or to reduce the entry of outside air and odours.

Rear Window Demister

To operate, the engine must be running.

REAR : Press to turn the rear window demister on or off. An indicator light on the button comes on to show that the rear window demister is on.

The demister can be turned off by turning the ignition off or to Accessory mode.

The rear window demister can be set to automatic operation. See “Climate and Air Quality” under *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *112*. When Auto Rear Demist is selected, the rear window demister turns on automatically when the interior temperature is cold and the outside temperature is about 7° C and below. The auto rear demister turns off automatically.

The heated outside mirrors turn on when the rear window demister button is on and help to clear fog or frost from the surface of the mirror. See *Heated Mirrors* ⇨ *41*.

Caution

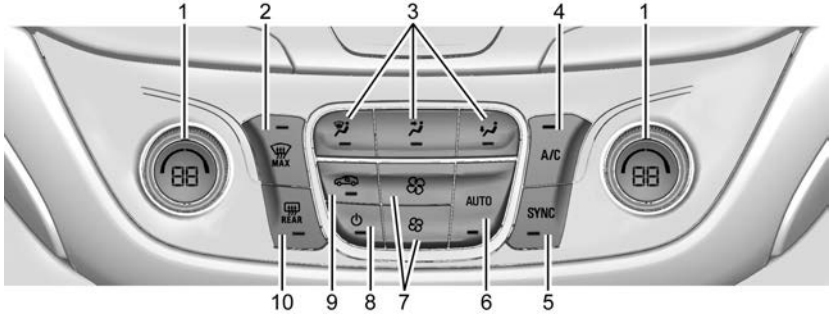
Do not try to clear frost or other material from the inside of the front windscreen and rear window with a razor blade or anything else that is sharp. This may damage the rear window demister grid and affect the radio's ability to pick up stations clearly. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

Dual Automatic Climate Control System

⚠ Danger

Do not sleep with the air conditioning or heating system on. Serious harm or death may occur due to a drop in oxygen level and/or body temperature.

The heating, cooling, and ventilation for the vehicle can be automatically controlled with this system.



1. Driver and Passenger Temperature Controls
2. MAX Defrost
3. Air Delivery Mode Controls
4. A/C (Air Conditioning)
5. SYNC (Synchronised Temperature)
6. AUTO (Automatic Operation)
7. Fan Control
8. Power
9. Recirculation
10. Rear Window Demister

Automatic Operation

The system automatically heats or cools the vehicle to the desired temperature:

- Fan Speed
- Air Delivery Mode
- Air Conditioning
- Recirculation

When AUTO is lit, all four functions operate automatically. Each function can also be manually set and the selected setting is displayed. Functions not manually set will continue to be automatically controlled, even if the AUTO indicator is not lit.

For automatic operation:

1. Press AUTO.
2. Set the temperature. Allow the system time to stabilise. Adjust the temperature as needed for best comfort.

To improve fuel efficiency and to cool the vehicle faster, recirculation may be automatically selected in warm weather. The recirculation light will not come on. Press to select recirculation; press it again to select outside air.

Driver and Passenger Temperature Control : The temperature can be adjusted separately for the driver and the passenger. Turn the knob clockwise or anticlockwise to increase or decrease the temperature.

SYNC : Press to link all climate zone settings to the driver setting. The SYNC indicator light will turn

on. When the passenger settings are adjusted, the SYNC indicator light turns off.

Manual Operation

⏻ **:** Press to turn the fan off or on. When off, no air will flow into the vehicle. Turning the fan on, pressing any other button, or turning a knob will turn the system back on using the current setting.

: Press to increase or decrease the fan speed. The fan speed setting appears on the main display. Pressing either button cancels automatic fan control and the fan is controlled manually. Press AUTO to return to automatic operation.

Air Delivery Mode Controls :

Press any combination of , , or to change the direction of the airflow. The indicator light in the button will turn on. The current mode appears in the display screen. Pressing any of the three buttons cancels automatic air delivery control and the direction of the airflow is controlled manually. Press AUTO to return to automatic operation.

To change the current mode, select one or more of the following:

: Clears the windows of fog or moisture. Air is directed to the windscreen.

: Air is directed to the instrument panel outlets.

: Air is directed to the floor outlets.

MAX : Air is directed to the windscreen and the fan runs at a higher speed. Fog or frost is cleared from the windscreen more quickly. When the button is pressed again, the system returns to the previous mode setting.

For best results, clear all snow and ice from the windscreen before defrosting.

A/C : Press to turn the air conditioning system on or off. If the climate control system is turned off or the outside temperature falls below freezing, the air conditioner will not run.

Pressing this button cancels automatic air conditioning and turns off the air conditioner. Press AUTO to return to automatic operation and the air conditioner runs automatically as needed. When the indicator light is on, the air conditioner runs automatically to cool the air inside the vehicle or to dry the air needed to demist the windscreen faster.

: Press to turn on recirculation. An indicator light comes on. Air is recirculated to quickly cool the inside of the vehicle or to reduce the entry of outside air and odours.

Auto Demist : The climate control system may have a sensor to automatically detect high humidity inside the vehicle. When high humidity is detected, the climate control system may adjust to outside air supply and turn on the air conditioner. The fan speed may slightly increase to help prevent fogging. If the climate control

system does not detect possible window fogging, it returns to normal operation.

To turn Auto Demist off or on, see “Climate and Air Quality” under *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *112*.

Rear Window Demister

To operate, the engine must be running.

REAR **:** Press to turn the rear window demister on or off. An indicator light on the button comes on to show that the rear window demister is on.

The demister can be turned off by turning the ignition off or to Accessory mode.

The rear window demister can be set to automatic operation. See “Climate and Air Quality” under *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *112*. When Auto Rear Demist is selected, the rear window demister turns on automatically when the interior temperature is cold and the outside temperature is about 7° C and below. The Auto Rear Demister turns off automatically.

The heated outside mirrors turn on when the rear window demister button is on and help to clear fog or frost from the surface of the mirror. See *Heated Mirrors* ⇨ *41*.

Caution

Do not try to clear frost or other material from the inside of the front windscreen and rear window with a razor blade or anything else that is sharp. This may damage the rear window demister grid and affect the radio's ability to pick up stations clearly. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

Remote Start Climate Control Operation : The climate control system may run when the vehicle is started remotely. The system uses the driver's previous settings to heat or cool the inside of the vehicle. The rear demist may come on during remote start based on cold ambient conditions. See *Remote Vehicle Start* ⇨ *28*.

Sensor

The solar sensor on top of the instrument panel near the windscreen monitors the solar heat.

The climate control system uses the sensor information to adjust the temperature, fan speed, recirculation, and air delivery mode for best comfort.

Do not cover the sensor; otherwise the automatic climate control system may not work properly.

Air Vents

Use the louvres located on the air vents to change the direction of the airflow.

To open or close off the airflow:

- On the centre air vents, move the slider knobs up or down.
- On the outer and rear air vents, move the slider knobs right or left.

⚠ Warning

Do not attach objects to the vents. Damage or injury may occur.

Fixed Air Vents

The demister and floor-level outlets are fixed. They direct air to the windscreen, front door windows and feet.

Maintenance

Air Intake

Outside air is drawn into the vehicle through the opening between the bonnet and the windscreen, unless recirculation has been selected.

Keep the area clear of debris.

Passenger Compartment Air Filter

Pollen/dust filter

A passenger compartment air filter may be fitted to filter contaminants such as pollen and dust from entering the vehicle. This can be fitted by a Holden Dealer. See the Service and Warranty Booklet for the maintenance schedule.

Air Conditioning Regular Operation

Switch air conditioning on for at least 5 to 10 minutes once every 2 weeks to lubricate the system, even in winter.

Driving and Operating

Driving Information
Driving Environment 212
Steering 213
Off-Road Driving 213

Starting and Operating
New Vehicle Break-In 215
Ignition Positions 215
Starting the Engine 217
Retained Accessory Power (RAP) 218
Automatic Engine Start/Stop Feature 219
Parking 220

Engine Exhaust
Engine Exhaust 221

Diesel Particulate Filter
Diesel Particulate Filter 221

AdBlue
AdBlue 223

Automatic Transmission
Automatic Transmission 226
Manual Mode 227

Manual Transmission
Manual Transmission 228

Drive Systems
All-Wheel Drive 230

Brakes
Antilock Brake System (ABS) 231
Electric Parking Brake 231
Brake Assist 233
Hill Start Assist (HSA) 233

Ride Control Systems
Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control 234
Hill Descent Control (HDC) . . . 237

Cruise Control
Cruise Control 237

Driver Assistance Systems
Driver Assistance Systems . . . 240
Rear Vision Camera (RVC) . . . 241
Parking Assist 243
Advanced Parking Assist 246
Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System 248
Autonomous Emergency Braking (AEB) 250
Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA) 252
Lane Change Alert (LCA) 252
Lane Departure Warning (LDW) 254
Lane Keep Assist (LKA) 254

Fuel
Fuel 256
Recommended Fuel 258
Water in Fuel (Diesel) 259
Running Out of Fuel (Diesel) 261
Filling the Tank (Petrol Engines) 262
Filling the Tank (Diesel Engine) 263

Trailer Towing
Trailer Towing 265
Trailer Sway Control (TSC) . . . 269

Conversions and Add-Ons
Add-On Electrical Equipment 269

Driving Information

Driving Environment

Before Entering the Vehicle

Check the windows, mirrors and lamps are clean.

Visually check tyre inflation. Check tyre pressures weekly.

Before Driving Off

1. Close and secure all doors.
2. Position the seat for comfortable driving.
3. Adjust rear view mirrors.
4. Fasten seat belts.
5. Check that warning indicators illuminate when turning the ignition on. See *Warning Lights, Gauges, and Indicators* ⇨ *91*.

All Wheel Drive (AWD)

The vehicle may be equipped with AWD which provides a high degree of stability and grip while driving. For further information see *All-Wheel Drive* ⇨ *230*.

Brakes

- Do not let the vehicle run down hills or coast with the engine off, as the power assistance does not operate.
- Ensure that there are no obstructions that could limit brake pedal use.
- Continuous or heavy use of brakes will shorten the life of the brake pads.
- See *Antilock Brake System (ABS)* ⇨ *231*.

Loading the Vehicle

Loading the vehicle may change the handling when driving. See *Vehicle Weight* ⇨ *329*.

Loose Articles

Do not leave loose articles or luggage in the passenger compartment. Secure in the rear load area.

⚠ Warning

Portable gas cylinders can leak, creating a risk of fire or explosion.

As a precaution, ensure adequate ventilation when carrying gas cylinders.

They must be restrained from rolling around and where possible, placed in the rear load compartment of the vehicle.

It is recommended that if gas cylinders are frequently transported that a purpose-built carrying compartment be used.

Ensure any transportation of gas cylinders complies with the applicable regulations.

Tyre Grip

Tyre grip decreases when water, snow, ice, gravel and other materials are on the road. Adjust your driving to the road conditions.

- Reduce speed during wet conditions.
- Regularly check the tyres are correctly inflated. See *Tyre Pressure* ⇨ *303*.
- Replace tyres when tread wear indicators are visible. See *Tread Depth* ⇨ *304*.

Steering

Electric Power Steering

The vehicle has electric power steering. It does not have power steering fluid. Regular maintenance is not required.

If power steering assist is lost due to a system malfunction, the vehicle can be steered, but may require increased effort.

If the steering assist is used for an extended period of time while the vehicle is not moving, power assist may be reduced.

If the steering wheel is turned until it reaches the end of its travel and is held against that position for an extended period of time, power steering assist may be reduced.

Normal use of the power steering assist should return when the system cools down.

See your dealer if there is a problem.

Off-Road Driving

All Wheel Drive (AWD) vehicles may be driven off-road. See *All-Wheel Drive* ⇨ *230*.

Front Wheel Drive (FWD) vehicles are designed primarily for on-road use or well maintained unsealed roads.

Caution

The AWD system is designed to provide additional traction and stability. The vehicle is not designed to be driven over severe four wheel drive tracks and may not have sufficient ground clearance.

Always drive with care and attention.

Travel with another vehicle when driving on remote or poor quality roads.

Before driving off-road:

- Check the fuel level. See *Fuel* ⇨ *256*.
- Check all tyre pressures. See *Tyre Pressure* ⇨ *331*.
- Check fluids levels. See *Engine Compartment Overview* ⇨ *276*.

While driving off-road:

- Be alert to unexpected restrictions.

- Be aware of uncommon noises from the tyres and the engine.
- Always drive at a speed at which you are able to maintain control of the vehicle.

Caution

When driving off-road, sudden motion and manoeuvres can make you lose control of the steering. This could cause a collision. Therefore, when driving on-road and off-road, you and your passengers should wear seat belts.

After driving off-road:

- Remove any debris from under the vehicle or bonnet. It may become a fire hazard.
- After driving through mud or sand, clean and check the brake linings.
- Check the body, steering, suspension, wheels, tyres, exhaust system, fuel lines and cooling system.

Note

Regular off-road driving requires more frequent maintenance.

Water Crossing

Before crossing water:

- Switch off the air-conditioning.
- Do not attempt to drive through water more than 300 mm deep.
- Never drive into fast-running water. The force of the water can easily move the vehicle sideways, possibly into deeper water.
- Drive through water slowly and evenly at a speed of 10 km/h. Driving too fast may cause water to enter the engine and cause major damage.

Immediately after driving through water, drive slowly and check the brake pedal force. If the brakes are wet, press firmly several times to dry them out quickly.

Starting and Operating

New Vehicle Break-In

Caution

Use the following guidelines to improve vehicle performance and longevity:

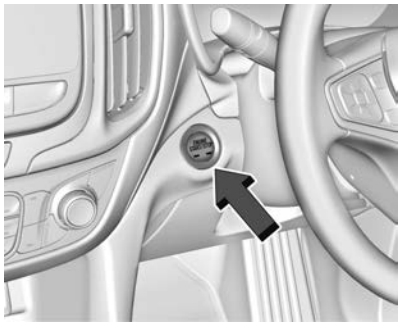
- Do not drive at any one constant speed, fast or slow, for the first 800 km.
- Do not make full-throttle starts and avoid down-shifting to brake or slow the vehicle.
- Avoid making hard stops for the first 350 km or so. During this time the new brake linings are not yet worn-in. Hard stops with new linings can result in premature wear and earlier replacement.

(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

Follow this guideline every time new brake linings are fitted.

Ignition Positions



The vehicle has an electronic keyless ignition with push-button start.

Pressing the ENGINE START/STOP button cycles through three modes:

- Accessory
- Ignition on, Engine Start / Run
- Engine Stop, Ignition off

The Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter must be in the vehicle for the system to operate.

If the push-button start is not working, the vehicle may be near a strong radio antenna signal causing interference to the keyless entry system. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation* ⇨ *24*.

Engine Stop, Ignition Off (No Indicator Lights)

When the vehicle is stopped, press ENGINE START/STOP once to turn the ignition off.

Automatic Transmission:

- If the vehicle is in P (Park), the ignition will turn off and Retained Accessory Power (RAP) will remain active. See *Retained Accessory Power (RAP)* ⇨ *218*.
- If the vehicle is not in P (Park), the ignition will return to Accessory mode and display the message **Shift To Park** in the Driver Information Centre (DIC).

When the vehicle is shifted into P (Park), the ignition system will turn off.

Manual Transmission:

- If the vehicle is stationary the ignition will turn off and Retained Accessory Power (RAP) will remain active. See *Retained Accessory Power (RAP)* ⇨ *218*.

⚠ Warning

Turning off the vehicle while moving may cause loss of power assist in the brake and steering systems and disable the airbags. While driving, only shut the vehicle off in an emergency.

Do not turn the engine off when the vehicle is moving.

If the vehicle must be turned off in an emergency:

1. Brake using a firm and steady pressure. Do not pump the brakes repeatedly as this may deplete power assist, requiring increased brake pedal force.
2. Shift the vehicle to N (Neutral). This can be done while the vehicle is moving. After shifting to N (Neutral), firmly apply the brakes and steer the vehicle to a safe location.
3. Come to a complete stop. Shift to P (Park) with an automatic transmission, or N (Neutral) with a manual transmission, and turn the ignition off.
4. Set the electric parking brake. See *Electric Parking Brake* ⇨ *231*.

If the vehicle cannot be pulled over and must be turned off while driving, press and hold the ENGINE START/STOP button for longer than two seconds, or press twice in five seconds.

Accessory Mode (Amber Indicator Light)

This mode allows you to use some electrical accessories when the engine is off.

With the ignition off, pressing the button one time without the brake pedal applied will place the ignition system in Accessory mode.

The ignition will switch from Accessory mode to off after five minutes to prevent battery run-down.

Start / Run (Green Indicator Light)

This mode is for starting the engine.

Automatic transmission; place the shift lever to P (Park) or N (Neutral).

Manual transmission; move the shift lever to N (Neutral) and press the clutch pedal.

Customer care the brake pedal and press the ENGINE START/STOP button once.

Release the button after the starting procedure begins. Engine cranking will continue until the engine starts.

See *Starting the Engine* ⇨ *217*. The ignition will then remain on.

Ignition On

With the vehicle off and the brake pedal NOT applied, pressing and holding the ENGINE START/STOP button for more than five seconds will place the vehicle in Ignition on mode. The instruments and audio systems will operate as they do in Start / Run, but the vehicle will not be able to be driven. The engine will not start in Ignition on mode. Press the button again to turn the ignition off.

Steering Column Lock

The vehicle has an electric steering column lock. The lock is activated when the vehicle is turned off and either front door is opened. A sound may be heard as the lock actuates or releases.

When starting the engine, the steering column lock may not release if the wheels are turned off centre. If this happens, the vehicle may not start. Move the steering wheel from left to right while attempting to start the vehicle. If this does not work, the vehicle may need service.

Starting the Engine

1. Apply the electric parking brake. Release it only after starting the engine and you are ready to drive off.
2. Manual transmission: Place the shift lever in N (Neutral) and hold the clutch pedal to the floor.

   Automatic transmission: Place the shift lever in P (Park) or N (Neutral). The engine will not start if the shift lever is in any other position.

Caution

Do not try to shift to P (Park) if the vehicle is moving. If you do, you could damage the transmission. Shift to P (Park) only when the vehicle is stopped.

3. With the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter in the vehicle, press the brake pedal:
   - Press the ENGINE START/STOP button. When the engine begins cranking, release the button.

     Once the engine starts, the idle speed will go down as the engine gets warm. Do not race the engine immediately after starting it.

Note

Diesel engines. In cold conditions the preheating light may illuminate and the engine may not start immediately. See “If the Diesel Engine Will Not Start” further in this section.

If the RKE transmitter is not in the vehicle, if there is interference, or if the RKE battery is low, the Driver Information Centre (DIC) will display a message. See *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation* ⇨ *24*.

If the engine does not start after 15 seconds of cranking, wait one minute for the starter motor to cool, then try the same steps again.

Caution

Cranking the engine for long periods of time by pressing the ENGINE START/STOP button immediately after cranking has ended, can overheat and damage the starter motor and drain the battery.

Wait at least 1 minute between each try to let the starter motor cool down.

If you are trying to start the engine after you have run out of fuel, follow the steps in *Running Out of Fuel (Diesel)* ⇨ *261*.

When the engine is cold, let it run for a few minutes before driving. This lets oil pressure build up. The engine may sound louder when it is cold.

If the Diesel Engine Will Not Start

If you have run out of fuel, see *Running Out of Fuel (Diesel)* ⇨ *261*.

If the vehicle is not out of fuel and the engine will not start:

- Press the ENGINE START/STOP button. The preheating light may illuminate in cold conditions. Immediately after the preheating light goes off, press ENGINE START/STOP to start the vehicle.

  See *Wait-to-Start Light* ⇨ *103*.

Caution

If the preheating light stays on after starting the vehicle, the vehicle may not run properly. Have the vehicle serviced right away.

- If the preheating light does not go off, wait a few seconds, then try starting the engine again.
- If the preheating light comes on and then goes off and it is known the battery is charged, but the engine still will not start, the vehicle may need service.
- If the preheating light does not come on when the engine is cold, the vehicle may need service.
- If the battery does not have enough charge to start the engine, see *Battery* ⇨ *290*.
- If the engine starts, runs a short time, then stops, the vehicle needs service.

Retained Accessory Power (RAP)

Some vehicle accessories may be used after the ignition is turned off.

The power windows and sunroof, if equipped, will continue to operate for up to 10 minutes or until any door is opened.

The infotainment system will continue to operate for 10 minutes, until the driver's door is opened, or until the ignition is turned on or placed in Accessory mode.

Automatic Engine Start/ Stop Feature

The automatic engine stop/start system helps to save fuel and reduce exhaust emissions.

When conditions allow, the system switches off the engine (performs an Auto Stop) once the vehicle is at a standstill, e.g. at traffic lights, etc.

⚠ Warning

The automatic engine Stop/Start feature causes the engine to shut off while the ignition is still on. The vehicle may restart and move unexpectedly.

Always shift to P (Park) or to N (Neutral), set the parking brake and then turn the ignition off before exiting the vehicle.

Auto Stop

An Auto Stop may be activated once the vehicle is at a standstill as follows.

Manual transmission:

1. Press the clutch pedal.
2. Set the shift lever in neutral.
3. Release the clutch pedal.

Automatic transmission:

- Press the brake pedal.

The engine will restart as follows.

Manual transmission:

- Press the clutch pedal.

Automatic transmission:

- Release the brake pedal.

Note

The engine will also restart when the shift lever is moved from D (Drive) into P (Park) or N (Neutral).



An Auto Stop is indicated by the tachometer needle moving to the AUTO STOP position. Once the engine restarts, the engine speed indication is resumed.

Auto Stop may be deactivated and not operate, or an engine in Auto Stop may restart if a condition such as the following is detected:

- A minimum vehicle speed has not been reached.
- The engine or transmission is not at the required operating temperature.

- The outside temperature is not in the required operating range, typically between -10 °C and 50 °C.
- The shift lever is in any gear other than D (Drive).
- The battery has been recently disconnected.
- The battery charge is low.
- The interior comfort level has not reached the requested settings for the climate control system or demist.
- The Auto Stop time is greater than two minutes.
- The brake system vacuum is insufficient.

Parking

1. Apply the electric park brake.
2. Automatic transmission: Select position P (Park).

   Manual transmission: If facing uphill or on flat ground, select 1st gear. If facing downhill, select reverse gear.
3. Close all windows.
4. Turn the ignition off, remove the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter and exit the vehicle.
5. Press the button on the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter, or press the lock/unlock button on a door handle (with the RKE transmitter within 1 m of the door handle) to lock all doors and arm the alarm system. See *Vehicle Alarm System* ⇨ *38*.

Note

The engine fan may keep going for several minutes after the ignition has been turned off. This is normal.

⚠ Warning

Be careful where you park or drive. As with any vehicle, do not park or operate the vehicle in areas where combustible

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

materials such as dry grass or leaves can come in contact with a hot exhaust system.

Exhaust gases are hazardous, especially if they concentrate in closed rooms.

Never leave the engine running in an enclosed space such as a closed garage or underground car park.

Engine Exhaust

⚠ Warning

Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide (CO), which cannot be seen or smelled. Exposure to CO can cause unconsciousness and even death.

Exhaust may enter the vehicle if:

- The vehicle idles in areas with poor ventilation (parking garages, tunnels, deep snow that may block underbody airflow or tail pipes).
- The exhaust smells or sounds strange or different.
- The exhaust system leaks due to corrosion or damage.
- The vehicle exhaust system has been modified, damaged, or improperly repaired.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

- There are holes or openings in the vehicle body from damage or aftermarket modifications that are not completely sealed.

If unusual fumes are detected or if it is suspected that exhaust is coming into the vehicle:

- Drive it only with the windows completely down.
- Have the vehicle repaired immediately.

Never park the vehicle with the engine running in an enclosed area such as a garage or a building that has no fresh air ventilation.

Diesel Particulate Filter

The Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF) system filters soot particles out of the exhaust gases.

The DPF is under the vehicle within the exhaust system.

Depending on a number of factors monitored by the engine computer, the DPF will need to be cleaned of accumulated solids. When a cleaning is needed, the engine computer will initiate a self-cleaning function that runs automatically during driving.

The filter is cleaned by periodically burning off the soot particles at high temperature. This process takes place automatically under set driving conditions and may take up to 25 minutes. Fuel consumption may be higher during this period.

A **Cleaning Exhaust Filter Continue Driving** message will be displayed in the Driver Information Centre (DIC) to inform you.

While the DPF cleaning is automatically controlled by the engine computer, the vehicle will need to operate continuously for approximately 25 minutes and at speeds greater than 50 km/h to clean the DPF effectively.

If the vehicle is used for numerous short trips or extended slow-speed operation, the engine computer may not be able to adequately heat up the exhaust system to clean the DPF effectively. The engine computer has been designed to continuously monitor the condition of the DPF.

When the engine computer detects the DPF is nearly full of particulates and the vehicle is not being operated in a manner that would allow effective automatic DPF cleaning, the message **Cleaning Exhaust Filter Must Continue Driving** will display on the DIC.

Continue driving the vehicle until the message goes off.

Cleaning Process

To activate the cleaning process, continue driving safely, and keep vehicle speed above 50 km/h until the warning message in the DIC turns off.

If the vehicle continues to be driven with the DPF warning message on, and the exhaust filter is not cleaned as required, the malfunction indicator lamp and the **Engine Power Is Reduced** message will come on. Dealer service is necessary.

See *Malfunction Indicator Lamp* ⇨ *98*.

⚠ Warning

During DPF self cleaning or during extended idling while parked, the exhaust system and exhaust gases are very hot.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Flammable objects could touch hot exhaust parts under the vehicle and ignite. You or others could be burnt.

Do not park or idle for an extended period of time near or over papers, leaves, dry grass, or other things that can burn. Keep the exhaust area clear of material that could ignite or burn.

AdBlue

General Information

The selective catalytic reduction system is a method for substantially reducing nitrogen oxides in exhaust emissions. This is achieved by injecting a diesel exhaust fluid into the exhaust system. The fluid reacts with nitrous gases (NOx) from the exhaust and converts it to harmless nitrogen and water.

Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) is commonly known as AdBlue®. It is a non-hazardous, non-flammable and colourless fluid.

⚠ Warning

Avoid contact of AdBlue with your eyes or skin. In a case of eye or skin contact, rinse off with water.

Caution

Avoid AdBlue contacting the paintwork. In case of contact, immediately rinse off with water.

The typical AdBlue consumption is approx. two litres per 1000 km, but can also be higher depending on driving behaviour (e.g. high load or towing). You can purchase AdBlue and receive assistance with refilling from your dealer.

AdBlue Tank

The AdBlue tank contains level switches which monitor the amount of remaining AdBlue fluid.

The AdBlue tank capacity is 18.5 litres.

Level Warnings

Depending on the calculated range of the AdBlue, different messages are displayed in the DIC. The messages and the restrictions are a legal requirement.

The first possible warning is **AdBlue Range: 2400 km**.

This warning will be displayed once briefly with the calculated range. Driving is possible without any restrictions, however refilling should be done when possible.

The next warning level is entered with a range below 1750 km. The message with the current range will always be displayed when ignition is switched on and needs to be confirmed by pressing ✓ on the steering wheel. The AdBlue tank should be refilled as soon as possible.

At an AdBlue range of 900 km, the following warning messages are alternately displayed in the DIC and cannot be dismissed:

- **AdBlue Low Refill Now**
- **Engine Restart Prevented in 900 km**

Furthermore, the estimated AdBlue range will continue to decrease from 900 km. The AdBlue tank should be refilled immediately to avoid engine restart prevention.

Additionally, the instrument cluster indicator illuminates.

The last warning level is entered when the AdBlue tank is empty. Restarting the engine is not possible. The following warning messages are alternately displayed and cannot be dismissed:

- **AdBlue Empty Refill Now**
- **Engine Will Not Restart**

Additionally, instrument cluster indicator illuminates continuously.

With active prevention of an engine start, the following message will be displayed: **Refill AdBlue To Start Vehicle**

The AdBlue tank must be refilled completely, otherwise restarting of the engine is not possible.

Note
After refilling, it may take up to 10 minutes of driving for the DIC messages to reset.

High Emission Warnings

If exhaust emissions rise above a certain value, warnings will be displayed in the DIC.

Have your vehicle checked by your dealer to avoid engine restart prevention.

These restrictions are a legal requirement.

Refilling AdBlue

⚠ Warning

Never add AdBlue directly to the fuel tank.

If AdBlue is added to the fuel tank, do not drive the vehicle or start the engine. Contact your dealer immediately.

Caution

Only use AdBlue that complies with ISO standard 22241-1.

Do not use additives or dilute AdBlue, otherwise the selective catalytic reduction system could be damaged.

Use only AdBlue containers with an adapter for refilling to prevent splash-back and overspill. AdBlue is available from reputable fuel and

automotive outlets, or from your dealer, who can also assist with refilling.

For the AdBlue tank capacity see *Capacities and Specifications* ⇨ *330*.

Note

- It is not recommended to refill at the AdBlue pumps that exist at many fuel stations as they are for commercial vehicles (trucks and buses). The flow-rate will be too high and the nozzle may not fit your vehicle.
- Since AdBlue has a limited shelf-life; check the date of expiry before refilling.
- AdBlue freezes at a temperature of approx. -11 °C. Do not attempt to fill at temperatures below 0 °C.

The refilling of the AdBlue tank is only detected by the system when the liquid level switches in the tank are activated.

If the AdBlue refill is not successfully detected:

1. Continuously drive the vehicle for 10 minutes making sure the vehicle speed is always higher than 20 km/h.
2. If the AdBlue refill is detected successfully, the AdBlue level-driven messages and limitations will disappear.

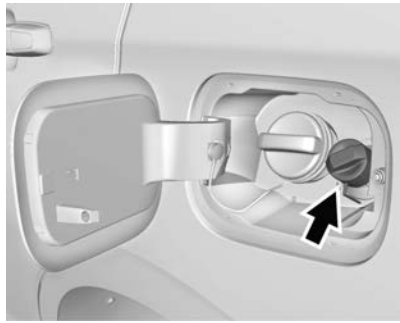
If the AdBlue refill is still not detected once full, contact your dealer.

Note

When removing the AdBlue filler cap, avoid inhalation of any odours.

The AdBlue tank filler neck is located behind the fuel filler door, which can only be opened when the vehicle is unlocked.

1. The vehicle must be parked on a level surface.
2. Turn the ignition off.
3. Close all doors to avoid odours entering the vehicle.
4. Release the fuel filler door by pushing the rear edge of the door.



5. Unscrew the AdBlue filler cap.
6. Open the AdBlue container.
7. Install the filler hose that came with the AdBlue container.
8. Lift the Adblue container and insert the filler hose into the AdBlue filler port.
9. Raise the container until Adblue flows into your vehicle. Continue until the container is empty, or until the flow from the

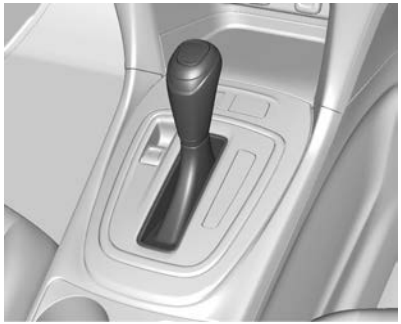
container has stopped. This can take several minutes.

10. Place the container on the ground to empty the hose, wait 15 seconds.
11. Remove the hose from the filler neck.
12. Refit the AdBlue filler cap securely.

Note

- Dispose of the AdBlue container and hose according to environmental requirements. The hose can be reused after flushing with clear water before the AdBlue dries out.
- It is recommended to store your AdBlue containers in a dry environment that is less than 30 °C and away from direct sunlight. It is not advisable, therefore, to store containers in your vehicle.

Automatic Transmission



Press the select button on the front of the shift lever to move into any position. The lever position is displayed in the Driver Information Centre (DIC).

Note

The engine will not start unless the shift lever is in position **P** or **N**.

P : This position locks the front wheels. Use P (Park) when starting the engine because the vehicle cannot move easily. Always move the shift lever to P and apply the electric parking brake before leaving the vehicle.

Caution
Selecting position **P** while the vehicle is still moving can cause damage to the transmission. Do not press the accelerator pedal with the brakes applied in any gear except position **P** or **N**. This will overheat the transmission.

The vehicle has an automatic transmission shift lock control system. Fully press the brake pedal and then press the shift lever select button before shifting from P when the ignition is on.

If you cannot shift out of P, ease pressure on the shift lever, then push the shift lever all the way into P as you maintain brake application. Then press the shift lever button and move the shift lever into another gear.

R : Use this gear to reverse.

Caution

Shifting to R (Reverse) while the vehicle is moving forward could damage the transmission. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Shift to R (Reverse) only after the vehicle is stopped.

N : In this position, the engine does not connect with the wheels. To restart the engine when the vehicle is already moving, use N (Neutral) only.

⚠ Warning

To prevent the vehicle from moving when position **N** is selected, always apply the parking brake, press the brake pedal or use suitable chocks to block the wheels.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Do not coast the vehicle in position **N** – this decreases your control and ability to accelerate quickly in an emergency.

D : This position is for normal driving. The transmission will select the appropriate gear according to the current load and driving conditions, and will provide optimum fuel economy. If more power is needed for passing, press the accelerator pedal down.

L : Allows the driver to select the range of gear positions manually. See *Manual Mode* ⇨ *227*.

Operating Modes

The transmission may operate in a lower gear than normal to improve vehicle performance under certain conditions. The engine speed may be higher and there may be an increase in noise during the following conditions:

- When climbing a gradient.
- When driving downhill.
- When driving in hot temperatures or at high altitude.

Caution

Do not use the accelerator pedal to hold the vehicle stationary on an uphill gradient. Use the brakes.

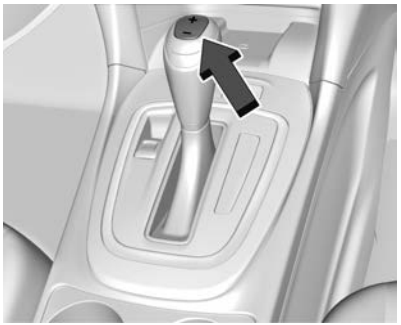
Manual Mode

Electronic Range Select (ERS) Mode

ERS or manual mode allows for the selection of the range of gear positions. Use this mode when driving downhill or towing a trailer to limit the top gear and vehicle speed. The shift position indicator within the Driver Information Centre (DIC) will display a number next to the L indicating the highest available gear under manual mode and the driving conditions when manual mode was selected.

To use this feature:

1. Move the shift lever to L (Manual Mode).



2. Press the plus/minus button on the shift lever, to increase or decrease the gear range available.

When shifting to L (Manual Mode), the transmission will shift to a preset lower gear range. For this preset range, the highest gear available is displayed next to the L in the DIC. See *Driver Information Centre (DIC)* ⇨ *106* for more information. All gears below that number are available to use. For example, when 4 (Fourth) is shown next to the L, 1 (First) through 4 (Fourth) gears are shifted automatically. To shift to 5 (Fifth) gear, press the + (Plus) button or shift into D (Drive).

L (Manual Mode) will prevent shifting to a lower gear range if the engine speed is too high. If vehicle speed is not reduced within the time allowed, the lower gear range shift will not be completed. Slow the vehicle, then press the − (Minus) button to the desired lower gear range.

While using the ERS, cruise control can be used.

Manual Transmission



Shift Pattern



The manual transmission has six forward gears and a reverse gear.

Operating Notes

Caution
It is not advisable to drive with the hand resting on the shift lever.

Caution
Do not hold the shift lever with exception of shifting & selecting. Unnecessary shift lever movement can cause damage inside the transmission.

- When shifting gears always push the clutch pedal to the floor.



- An upshift light in the Driver Information Centre (DIC) indicates when to shift to the next higher gear for the best fuel economy.
- To select R (Reverse), pull up on the reverse ring surrounding the shift lever and then shift into R.

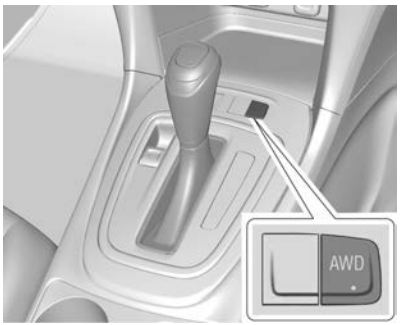
  If the gear does not engage, shift the transmission to Neutral, release the clutch pedal for 3 seconds and then press the clutch pedal. Repeat the gear selection.
- Do not engage R (Reverse) while the vehicle is still moving.
- Whenever R (Reverse) is selected, the reverse lamps illuminate.
- When stopped on an incline, do not hold the vehicle stationary with the clutch. Use the brake pedal or parking brake.
- Shift to a lower gear when climbing steep gradients, before the engine starts to labour.
- Shift to a lower gear before descending steep gradients.
- Do not over-rev the engine when shifting to a lower gear.

Drive Systems

All-Wheel Drive

Vehicles with this feature can operate in All-Wheel Drive (AWD) Mode.

The AWD system delivers power to all four wheels and the system adjusts as needed to improve traction.



Press the AWD switch on the centre console to activate the system. The AWD light will flash briefly while the system is engaging and stay lit to indicate AWD is active.

Press the switch again to disable the system. The light will flash briefly while the system disables and then stay off.

The AWD Mode will stay selected until the mode is changed.

When operated in two-wheel drive, the vehicle will deliver power to the front wheels only and may provide better fuel economy.

A system off message displays if there is a temporary condition making the AWD system unavailable. The vehicle will run in two-wheel drive.

This could be caused by:

- A compact spare tyre on the vehicle.
- AWD system overheat.
- Loss of wheel or vehicle speed.
- Certain other vehicle electrical conditions.

The message turns off when the compact spare tyre is replaced by a full-size tyre, the differential fluid cools, or the above conditions are no longer present and the warning message is reset.

To reset the warning message manually, turn the ignition off and then back on again after 30 seconds. If the message stays on, see your dealer.

Brakes

Antilock Brake System (ABS)

The ABS:

- Continuously monitors the vehicle's braking system preventing the wheels from locking up.
- Allows maximum braking effort while full steering control is retained, even in the event of panic braking.

⚠ Warning

Do not let this special safety feature tempt you into taking risks when driving. Traffic safety can only be achieved by adopting a responsible driving style. You should always adjust the vehicle's speed to suit road and traffic conditions. Always maintain an adequate distance to the vehicle in front of you.

Operation

ABS operation is noticeable by pulsing of the brake pedal and the noise of the regulation process.

The initial self-check may also be audible. A momentary motor or clicking noise may be heard while this test is being performed. The brake pedal may also move slightly. This is normal.

Keep the brake pedal fully pressed throughout the braking process, without pumping it.

⚠ Warning

When the ignition is turned on, the (ABS) warning light briefly illuminates. The self-check of the ABS may be audible.

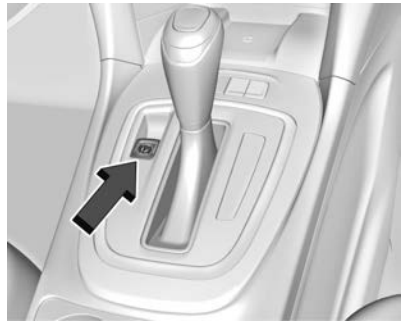
If the (ABS) warning light (ABS off) on the instrument panel display does not extinguish, or illuminates when driving, a malfunction has occurred.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Note: The vehicle's brake system remains operational, but without ABS assistance. Have a Holden Dealer check the system as soon as possible.

Electric Parking Brake



The Electric Parking Brake (EPB) switch is located on the centre console and can always be activated, even if the ignition is off.

The system has a Ⓟ Electric Parking Brake light and a Service Parking Brake light or message. See *Electric Parking Brake Light* ⇨ *100* and *Service Electric Parking Brake Light (Up-level Cluster)* ⇨ *100* . There are also parking brake-related Driver Information Centre (DIC) messages. In case of insufficient electrical power, the EPB cannot be applied or released.

Before leaving the vehicle, check for the Ⓟ light to ensure that the parking brake is applied.

EPB Apply

To apply the EPB:

1. Ensure the vehicle is at a complete stop.
2. Pull the EPB switch momentarily.

The Ⓟ light will flash and then stay on once the EPB is fully applied. If the Ⓟ light flashes continuously, then the EPB is only partially applied, or there is a problem with the EPB. A DIC message will display.

Release the EPB switch and try to apply it again. If the light does not come on, or keeps flashing, have the vehicle serviced.

Do not drive the vehicle if the Ⓟ light is flashing. See your dealer. See *Electric Parking Brake Light* ⇨ *100*.

If the Service Parking Brake light or message is on or the Ⓟ light flashes when the ignition is turned on, pull the EPB switch. Continue to hold the switch until the Ⓟ light remains on. If the Service Parking Brake light or message remains on, see your dealer.

If the EPB switch is pulled while the vehicle is moving, the vehicle will decelerate as long as the switch is pulled. If the switch is pulled until the vehicle comes to a stop, the EPB will remain applied.

If the EPB fails to apply, the rear wheels should be blocked to prevent vehicle movement.

Automatic Transmission

The EPB applies automatically when shifting to P (Park) on a steep incline. The EPB releases as soon as the vehicle is shifted out of P (Park) and the vehicle accelerates.

Manual Transmission

The EPB releases as soon as the vehicle is shifted into gear and the vehicle accelerates.

EPB Release

To release the EPB:

1. Turn the ignition on or to Accessory mode.
2. Apply and hold the brake pedal.
3. Press the EPB switch momentarily.

The EPB is released when the Ⓟ light is off.

If the Service Parking Brake light or message is on, release the EPB by pressing and holding the EPB switch. Continue to hold the switch until the Ⓟ light is off. If either light stays on after release is attempted, see your dealer.

Caution

Driving with the parking brake on can overheat the brake system and cause premature wear or damage to brake system parts. Make sure that the parking brake is fully released and the brake warning light is off before driving.

Automatic EPB Release

Avoid rapid acceleration when the EPB is applied, to preserve parking brake lining life.

The EPB will automatically release when the engine is running, the transmission is placed into gear, and an attempt is made to drive away by pressing the accelerator pedal.

Brake Assist

The Brake Assist feature is designed to assist the driver in stopping or decreasing vehicle speed in emergency driving conditions.

This feature uses the ABS hydraulic brake control module to supplement the brake system under conditions where the driver has quickly and forcefully applied the brake pedal in an attempt to quickly stop or slow down the vehicle.

The ABS hydraulic brake control module increases brake pressure at each corner of the vehicle until the ABS activates. Minor brake pedal pulsation or pedal movement during this time is normal and the driver should continue to apply the brake pedal as the driving situation dictates.

The Brake Assist feature will automatically disengage when the brake pedal is released or brake pedal pressure is quickly decreased.

Hill Start Assist (HSA)

This vehicle has a Hill Start Assist (HSA) feature, which may be useful when the vehicle is stopped on a gradient sufficient enough to activate HSA. It operates for both manual and automatic transmissions.

This feature is designed to prevent the vehicle from rolling, either forward or rearward, during vehicle drive off. After the driver completely stops and holds the vehicle in a complete standstill on a gradient, HSA will be automatically activated.

During the transition period between when the driver releases the brake pedal and starts to accelerate to drive off on a gradient, HSA holds the braking pressure for a maximum of two seconds to ensure that there is no rolling.

The brakes will automatically release when the accelerator pedal is applied within the two-second window. It will not activate if the

vehicle is in a drive gear and facing downhill, or if the vehicle is facing uphill and in R (Reverse).

To change the duration, see “Extended Hill Start Assist” in *Vehicle Personalisation ⇨ 112*.

Ride Control Systems

Traction Control/ Electronic Stability Control

System Operation

The vehicle has a Traction Control System (TCS) and Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system. These systems help limit wheel slip and assist the driver in maintaining control, especially on slippery road conditions.

TCS activates if it senses that any of the drive wheels are spinning or beginning to lose traction. When this happens, TCS applies the brakes to the spinning wheels and reduces engine power to limit wheel spin.

ESC activates when the vehicle senses a difference between the intended path and the direction the vehicle is actually travelling. ESC selectively applies braking pressure to any one of the brakes to assist the driver in keeping the vehicle on the intended path.

In some cases, if cruise control is being used and TCS or ESC begins to limit wheel spin, cruise control may disengage. Cruise control may be turned back on when road conditions allow.

⚠ Warning

Do not let this special safety feature tempt you into taking risks when driving. Traffic safety can only be achieved by adopting a responsible driving style. The vehicle's speed should always be adjusted to suit road and traffic conditions.

When enabled, both systems operate automatically when the vehicle is started and begins to move. The systems may be heard or felt while they are operating or while performing diagnostic checks. This is normal and does not mean there is a problem with the vehicle.

It is recommended to leave both systems on for normal driving conditions, but it may be necessary

to turn TCS off if the vehicle gets stuck in sand, mud, ice, or snow. See “Turning the Systems Off and On” later in this section.



The indicator light for both systems is in the instrument cluster. This light will:

- Flash when TCS is limiting wheel spin.
- Flash when ESC is activated.
- Turn on and stay on when either system is not working.

If either system fails to turn on or to activate, a message displays in the Driver Information Centre (DIC), and comes on and stays on to indicate that the system is inactive and is not assisting the driver in maintaining control. The vehicle is safe to drive, but driving should be adjusted accordingly.

If comes on and stays on:

1. Stop the vehicle.
2. Turn the ignition off and wait 15 seconds.
3. Start the engine.

Drive the vehicle. If comes on and stays on, the vehicle may need more time to diagnose the problem. If the condition persists, see your dealer.

Turning the Systems Off and On (Mid-level DIC)

Caution
Do not repeatedly brake or accelerate heavily when TCS is off. The vehicle driveline could be damaged.

At speeds of 56 km/h or above, the ability to turn off or on is disabled.

TCS and ESC can be turned off or on using the Driver Information Centre (DIC) controls as follows:



Press ◁ or ▷ to select VEHICLE menu, then use △ or ▽ to scroll through the menu items to select TCS/ESC.

Press ✓ to enter TCS/ESC, and then use △ or ▽ to select TCS or ESC.

To turn TCS off, select TCS, then press ✓. will illuminate in the instrument cluster.

To turn TCS back on, select TCS, then press ✓. goes out in the instrument cluster. TCS cannot be on when ESC is off.

To turn ESC off, select ESC, then press ✓. If TCS was on when ESC was turned off, both will turn off and (TC) and OFF illuminate in the instrument cluster.

To turn ESC back on, select ESC then press ✓. OFF goes out in the instrument cluster.

To turn both ESC and TCS back on, select Traction, then press ✓. OFF and (TC) go out in the instrument cluster.

Turning the Systems Off and On (Up-level DIC)

Caution
Do not repeatedly brake or accelerate heavily when TCS is off. The vehicle driveline could be damaged.

At speeds of 56 km/h or above, this ability to turn off or on is disabled.

TCS and ESC can be turned off or on using the Driver Information Centre (DIC) controls as follows:



Press ◁ to access the DIC applications. Use △ or ▽ to scroll through the list of available applications.

Press ✓ to select the Options application. Use △ or ▽ to scroll through items in the Options menu.

Press ▷ to select Traction menu. Use △ or ▽ to select Traction (TCS) or Stability (ESC).

To turn TCS off, select Traction, then press ✓. The TCS icon on the DIC will change from On to Off and (TC) illuminates in the instrument cluster.

To turn TCS back on, select Traction, then press ✓. The TCS icon on the DIC will change from Off to On and (TC) goes out in the instrument cluster. TCS cannot be on when ESC is off.

To turn ESC off, select Stability, then press ✓. The ESC icon on the DIC will change from On to Off. If TCS was on when ESC was turned off, both will turn off and (TC) and OFF illuminate.

To turn ESC back on, select Stability then press ✓. The ESC icon on the DIC will change from Off to On and OFF goes out in the instrument cluster.

To turn both ESC and TCS back on, select Traction, then press ✓. The ESC and TCS icons on the DIC will change from Off to On and OFF and go out in the instrument cluster.

Hill Descent Control (HDC)

HDC can be used when driving downhill. It sets and maintains vehicle speed while descending a very steep incline in a forward or reverse gear.

The HDC switch is on the centre console.

Press to enable or disable HDC. Vehicle speed must be below 50 km/h.



The HDC light displays on the instrument cluster when enabled.

HDC can maintain vehicle speeds between 3 and 22 km/h on an incline greater than or equal to a 10% gradient. A blinking HDC light indicates the system is actively applying the brakes to maintain vehicle speed.

When HDC is activated, the initial HDC speed is set to the current driving speed. It can be increased or decreased by pressing +RES or –SET on the steering wheel or by applying the accelerator or brake pedal. This adjusted speed becomes the new set speed.

HDC will remain enabled between 22 and 60 km/h; however vehicle speed cannot be set or maintained in this range. It will automatically disable if the vehicle speed is above 80 km/h or above 60 km/h for at least 30 seconds. Press again to re-enable HDC.

Cruise Control

The cruise control:

- Maintains the vehicle's speed without pressing the accelerator
- Will only operate at speeds above 40 km/h
- Switches are located on the steering wheel.

⚠ Warning

Do not use the cruise control when road or driving conditions require varying speeds.
A constant speed is not practical in heavy or varying traffic or on winding, slippery or rough roads.

Remember that when illuminates green, the cruise control is maintaining the vehicle's speed. Taking your foot off the accelerator pedal does not reduce the speed. To deactivate the cruise control, press the brake pedal, press the clutch pedal

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

(manual transmission) or push .

The cruise control does not apply the vehicle's brakes. The vehicle may gain speed when going down steep hills.

When climbing steep hills (particularly when towing), the vehicle may lose speed. In this case, use the accelerator pedal. Release the accelerator pedal when the speed returns to the set speed.

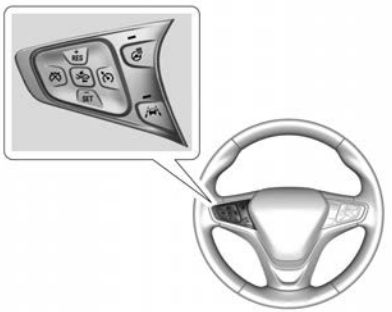
The cruise control is cancelled if the Traction Control System (TCS) or Electronic Stability Control (ESC) becomes active, indicated by flashing on the instrument panel display.

If a collision alert occurs when cruise control is activated, cruise control is disengaged. See *Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System* ⇨ *248*.

When road conditions allow you to safely use it again, cruise control can be turned back on.

Cruise control will disengage if either TCS or ESC is turned off.

If the brakes are applied, cruise control disengages.



: Press to turn the cruise control system on and off. A white indicator comes on in the instrument cluster when cruise is turned on.

: Press to disengage cruise control without erasing the set speed from memory.

+RES : If there is a set speed in memory, press briefly to resume that speed or press and hold to accelerate. If cruise control is already active, use to increase vehicle speed.

−SET : Press briefly to set the speed and activate cruise control. If cruise control is already active, use to decrease vehicle speed.

Setting Cruise Control

To set a speed:

1. Press to turn the cruise system on.
2. Accelerate to the desired speed.
3. Press and release -SET. The desired set speed briefly appears in the instrument cluster.
4. Remove your foot from the accelerator pedal.

The cruise control indicator on the instrument cluster turns green after cruise control has been set to the desired speed. See *Instrument Cluster* ⇨ *92*.

Resuming a Set Speed

If the cruise control is set at a desired speed and the brakes are applied or is pressed, the cruise control is disengaged without erasing the set speed from memory.

Once the vehicle speed reaches about 40 km/h or more, briefly press +RES. The vehicle returns to the previous set speed.

Increasing Speed While Using Cruise Control

If the cruise control system is already activated:

- Press and hold +RES on the steering wheel until the vehicle accelerates to the desired speed, then release it.
- To increase the speed in small increments, briefly press +RES. For each press, the vehicle goes about 1 km/h faster.

Reducing Speed While Using Cruise Control

If the cruise control system is already activated:

- Press and hold -SET until the desired lower speed is reached, then release it.
- To slow down in small increments, briefly press -SET. For each press, the vehicle goes about 1 km/h slower.

Ending Cruise Control

There are five ways to end cruise control:

- Press the brake pedal lightly.
- Press .
- Shift the transmission to N (Neutral).
- Turn off cruise control, press .
- If equipped with a manual transmission, press the clutch pedal for several seconds.

Erasing Speed Memory

The cruise control set speed is erased from memory if is pressed or if the ignition is turned off.

Driver Assistance Systems

This vehicle may have features that work together to help avoid crashes or reduce crash damage while driving, backing, and parking. Please read this entire section to gain a full understanding of their capabilities and limitations before using these systems.

⚠ Warning

Do not rely on the Driver Assistance Systems. These systems do not replace the need for paying attention and driving safely. You may not hear alerts or warnings provided by these systems. Failure to use proper care when driving may result in injury, death, or vehicle damage.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Under many conditions, these systems will not:

- Detect children, pedestrians, bicyclists, or animals.
- Detect vehicles or objects outside the area monitored by the system.
- Work at all driving speeds.
- Warn you or provide you with enough time to avoid a crash.
- Work under poor visibility or bad weather conditions.
- Work if the detection sensor is not cleaned or is covered by ice, snow, mud, or dirt.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

- Work if the detection sensor is covered, such as with a sticker, magnet, etc.
- Work if the area surrounding the detection sensor is damaged or not properly repaired.

Complete attention is always required while driving, and you should be ready to take action and apply the brakes and/or steer the vehicle to avoid crashes.

Audible or Safety Alert Seat

Some driver assistance features such as Forward Collision Alert, Lane Keeping Assist, Rear Cross Traffic Alert and Parking Assist, alert the driver of obstacles by beeping. To change the volume of the warning chime, see Chime Warning under “Comfort and Convenience” in *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *112*.

If equipped with the Safety Alert Seat, the driver seat cushion may provide a vibrating pulse alert instead of beeping. To change this, see Alert Type under “Collision/ Detection Systems” in *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *112*.

Rear Vision Camera (RVC)

⚠ Warning

Never rely solely on the rear vision camera when reversing the vehicle.

There is a blind spot that cannot be sensed by the camera.

The rear vision camera is not intended to replace the driver's judgement or attention to the rear of the vehicle when reversing.

Before entering the vehicle always check that the area around the vehicle is clear of obstacles and people.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Always perform head checks and use the vehicle's mirrors when reversing.

If the vehicle sustains any damage in the area of the camera (rear number plate surround), it may become misaligned. Contact a Holden Dealer.

Always keep the camera lens free from dirt, snow or ice. Only use mild soap and water with a soft cloth to clean the lens.

A view of the area behind the vehicle is displayed on the infotainment screen, when reverse gear is selected.

The RVC cannot display objects:

- Close to the corners of the vehicle.
- Forward of the camera.
- Higher than the camera.

Activation

When the ignition is on and reverse gear is engaged the rear vision camera image is automatically displayed on the infotainment screen. Once the vehicle is shifted out of reverse gear, the infotainment screen returns to the previous display.

Note

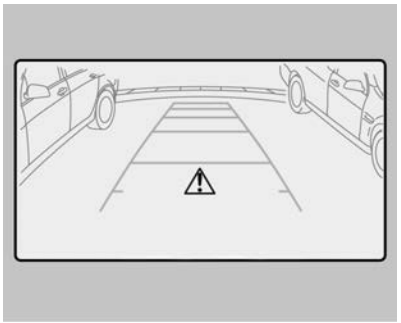
- The distance of the objects seen on the screen differs from the actual distance.
- The area displayed depends on the road condition and vehicle orientation.
- Objects of different heights will appear to be different distances from the vehicle.
- The RVC display will override all other operating displays.
- The RVC display may be temporarily interrupted when some audio system or climate control settings are changed.

- The PA warning tones will still be heard when the reverse camera is enabled. See *Parking Assist* ⇨ *243*.

The reverse camera system may be affected by the following:

- If the sun or headlamp beams are shining directly into the camera lens.
- If the vehicle sustains any damage in the area of the camera lens. Contact a Holden Dealer.
- If dirt, snow or ice has built up, clean the lens. See “Cleaning” further in this section.

Guidelines



When the camera image is displayed, dynamic guidelines are also displayed to assist with reversing the vehicle.

The trajectory lane of the vehicle is shown in accordance with the steering angle.

A warning triangle may also be displayed to show the rear parking assist has detected an object. This triangle changes from amber to red and increases in size the closer the object becomes.

⚠ Warning

The driver is always responsible for taking care and attention while manoeuvring the vehicle. The camera display and guidelines are only an aid and are neither intended to, nor able to take over any responsibility.

Guidelines and symbols can be turned off / on by touching the infotainment screen buttons or see “Rear Camera” in *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *112*.

Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA)

If equipped, RCTA detects objects up to 20 m coming from the left or right at the rear of the vehicle. When an object is detected, a warning triangle is displayed on the infotainment screen, two beeps sound from the left or right, depending on the direction of the detected vehicle, and the driver's seat will pulse.

Cleaning



- The camera is located next to the liftgate handle.
- The lens requires regular cleaning to ensure optimum performance.
- Use only a soft cloth, mild soap and water.

⚠ Warning

Do not use abrasive cleaners or scouring pads as they could scratch the lens, impairing the systems performance.

Parking Assist

Rear Parking Assist

Rear parking assist makes parking easier by measuring the distance between the vehicle and rear obstacles. It informs and warns the driver by giving acoustic signals, display indication or, if equipped, may pulse the driver's seat.



The system has ultrasonic parking sensors in the rear bumper.

⚠ Warning

The driver is always responsible for taking care and attention while manoeuvring the vehicle. The PA is only an aid and is neither intended to, nor able to take over any responsibility.

The park sensors may not be able to detect all objects under every condition, e.g. objects too close to the vehicle, objects above or below the sensors, or objects with a surface that absorbs ultrasonic waves. Additionally, some ambient conditions like ultrasonic waves or heavy rain can cause disruptive reflections from an object's surface. Such objects may not be detected.

Always manoeuvre the vehicle slowly to allow yourself sufficient time to react. The warning tones will sound only while the vehicle's speed is below 8 km/h.

Activation

After ignition is switched on, the rear parking assist is activated. An illuminated LED in the parking assist button P indicates the system is ready to operate.

Indication

The system warns the driver with acoustic signals or, if equipped, may pulse the driver's seat against potentially hazardous obstacles behind the vehicle in a distance range up to 2.5 metres while reverse gear is engaged.

If enabled, the acoustic warning signals sound in the vehicle on the side closer to the obstacle.

When an object is first detected, one beep will be heard from the rear, or the driver's seat will pulse two times.

When an object is very close (less than 60 cm) five beeps will sound, or the driver's seat will pulse five times.

Additionally, the distance to rear obstacles is displayed by changing distance lines in the Driver Information Centre (DIC). The distance indication can be inhibited by vehicle messages with a higher priority. After dismissing the message distance indication appears again.

Deactivation

Press parking assist button P to deactivate, the LED in the button extinguishes.

Fault

In the event of a fault or if the system does not work temporarily, e.g. because of high external noise level or other interference factors, the LED in the button flashes for three seconds and then extinguishes. A message is indicated in the DIC.

Front-Rear Parking Assist

On vehicles equipped with front-rear parking assist, the system measures the distance between the vehicle and obstacles in front and behind the vehicle. It informs and warns the driver by giving acoustic signals, display indication or, if equipped, may pulse the driver's seat.

It uses two different acoustic warning signals for the front and rear monitoring areas, each with a different tone frequency.



The system has ultrasonic parking sensors in the rear and front bumpers.

⚠ Warning

The driver is always responsible for taking care and attention while manoeuvring the vehicle. The PA is only an aid and is neither intended to, nor able to take over any responsibility.

The park sensors may not be able to detect all objects under every condition, e.g. objects too close to the vehicle, objects above or below the sensors, or objects with a surface that absorbs ultrasonic waves. Additionally, some ambient conditions like ultrasonic waves or heavy rain can cause disruptive reflections from an object's surface. Such objects may not be detected.

Always manoeuvre the vehicle slowly to allow yourself sufficient time to react. The warning tones will sound only while the vehicle's speed is below 8 km/h.

Activation

When reverse gear is engaged, the front and rear parking assist is ready to operate.

The front parking assist is also activated automatically at a speed up to 11 km/h.

An illuminated LED in the parking assist button P indicates that the system is ready to operate.

If P is switched off within an ignition cycle, the front parking assist is deactivated. If vehicle speed has exceeded 25 km/h beforehand, parking assist will be reactivated when speed drops below 11 km/h.

When the system is deactivated, the LED in the button extinguishes and Park Assist Off pops-up in the Driver Information Centre (DIC).

Indication

The system warns the driver with acoustic signals or, if equipped, may pulse the driver's seat when potentially hazardous obstacles are detected in front of the vehicle at a distance range of up to 1.2 m and behind the vehicle at a distance range up to 50 cm while a forward gear is engaged, respectively up to 2.5 m while reverse gear is engaged.

If enabled, the acoustic warning signals sound in the vehicle on the side closer to the obstacle. Acoustic signals are of a higher pitch for the front than for the rear.

When an object is first detected, one beep will be heard, or the driver's seat will pulse two times.

When an object is very close (less than 60 cm at the rear, or less than 30 cm at the front), five beeps will sound from the rear or front, or the driver's seat will pulse five times.

Additionally, the distance to rear and front obstacles is displayed by changing distance lines in the DIC.

The distance indication can be inhibited by vehicle messages with a higher priority. After dismissing the message distance indication appears again.

Deactivation

The rear parking assist automatically switches off when reverse gear is disengaged. The front parking assist is deactivated automatically at a speed above 11 km/h.

Manual deactivation is also possible by pressing the parking assist button P. When the system is deactivated manually, the LED in the button extinguishes and Park Assist Off pops-up in the DIC.

After a manual deactivation, the front-rear parking assist is activated again if P is pressed or if reverse gear is engaged.

The complete system can be manually deactivated in the vehicle personalisation menu in the Info-Display. It remains deactivated during the ignition cycle or until activation in personalisation menu again. See *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *112*.

Fault

In the event of a fault or if the system does not work temporarily, e.g. because of high external noise level or other interference factors, a message pops-up in the DIC.

Advanced Parking Assist

If equipped, APA searches for and steers the vehicle into parallel and perpendicular parking spots. When using APA, you must still shift gears, and control the brakes and accelerator. A display and audible beeps help to guide parking manoeuvres.

⚠ Warning

APA does not apply the brakes. APA may not detect objects in the parking space, objects that are soft or narrow, objects high off the ground such as flatbed trucks, or objects below ground level such as large potholes. Always verify that the parking space is

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

appropriate for parking a vehicle. APA does not respond to changes in the parking space, such as movement of an adjacent vehicle, or a person or object entering the parking space. APA does not detect or avoid traffic that is behind or alongside of the vehicle. Always be prepared to stop the vehicle during the parking manoeuvre.

Press P on the centre console to enable the system to search for a parking space that is large enough and within 1.5 m of the vehicle. The vehicle speed must be below 30 km/h. The system cannot:

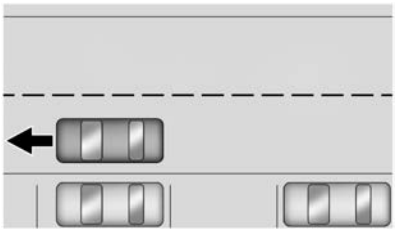
- Detect whether it is a legal parking space.
- Park exactly lined up with the vehicle next to it if the spot is approached at an angle or if the parking space is angled.

- Park exactly centred in a spot that is marked too large.
- Always detect low curbs.

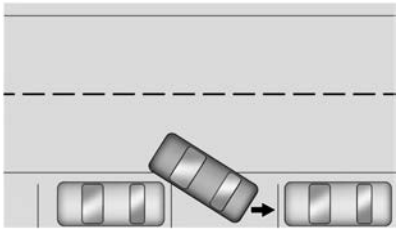
When enabled, APA searches for parallel parking spaces to the left of the vehicle.

To search for a parking space to the right, operate the right turn signal or, if available, change the side selection in the infotainment display.

To switch the parking mode between parallel and perpendicular, press and hold P during the search process or, if available, change the parking mode in the infotainment display.



After completely passing a large enough space, an audible beep occurs and a red stop symbol is displayed.



APA will instruct you to stop the vehicle once a large enough space is found. Follow the displayed instructions. When instructed to drive in reverse, shift to R (Reverse) to engage automatic steering. The steering wheel will briefly vibrate as a reminder to remove hands from the steering wheel. Check surroundings and continue braking or accelerating as needed, and be prepared to stop to avoid vehicles, pedestrians, or objects.

If the vehicle is in R (Reverse), but does not steer into the expected space, this may be because the system is manoeuvring the vehicle into a previously detected space. The APA system does not need service.

If the vehicle speed exceeds 10 km/h, APA is automatically disengaged and automatic steering will turn off.

A progress arrow displays the status of the parking manoeuvre. Depending on the space size, additional manoeuvres may be required, and there will be additional instructions.

When changing gears, allow the automatic steering to complete before continuing the parking manoeuvre.

Upon successful completion of a manoeuvre, APA will beep and display a **Parking Complete** message. Complete parking the vehicle, see *Parking* ⇨ *220*.

APA may automatically disengage if:

- The steering wheel is used by the driver.
- The maximum allowed speed is exceeded.
- There is a failure with the APA system.
- Electronic stability control or antilock brakes are activated.
- A high priority vehicle message is displayed in the DIC.

To cancel APA, press P again.

If the System Does Not Seem to Work Properly

The APA system may require a short period of driving along curves to calibrate.

Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System

If equipped, the FCA system may help to avoid or reduce the harm caused by front-end crashes. When approaching a vehicle ahead too quickly, FCA provides a red flashing alert on the windscreen and rapidly beeps or pulses the driver seat. FCA also lights an amber visual alert in the Driver Information Centre (DIC) if following another vehicle much too closely.

FCA detects vehicles within a distance of approximately 60 m and operates at speeds above 8 km/h.

⚠ Warning

FCA is a warning system only and does not apply the brakes.

When approaching a slower-moving or stopped vehicle ahead too rapidly, or when following a vehicle too closely, FCA may not provide a warning with enough time to help avoid a crash. It also may not provide any warning at all.

The FCA does not warn of pedestrians, animals, signs, guardrails, bridges, construction

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

barrels, or other objects. Be ready to take action and apply the brakes.



FCA can be disabled using the steering wheel control, or through vehicle personalisation. See “Collision/Detection Systems” under *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *112*.

Detecting the Vehicle Ahead



FCA warnings will not occur unless the FCA system detects a vehicle ahead. When a vehicle is detected in the driving path, the vehicle ahead indicator in the DIC will display green.

Vehicles may not be detected on curves, freeway exit ramps, or hills, due to poor visibility; or if a vehicle ahead is partially blocked by pedestrians or other objects. FCA will not detect another vehicle ahead until it is completely in the driving lane.

⚠ Warning

FCA does not provide a warning to help avoid a crash, unless it detects a vehicle. FCA may not detect a vehicle ahead if the FCA sensor is blocked by dirt, snow, or ice, or if the windscreen is damaged. It may also not detect a vehicle on winding or hilly roads, or in conditions that can limit visibility such as fog, rain, or snow, or if the headlamps or windscreen are not cleaned or in proper condition. Keep the windscreen, headlamps, and FCA sensors clean and in good repair.

Driver Alert



The vehicle ahead indicator will change to amber when the distance to the preceding vehicle becomes to small, or when approaching the vehicle too rapidly.

Collision Alert



When your vehicle approaches another detected vehicle too rapidly, the red FCA display will flash on the windscreen. Also, eight rapid high-pitched beeps will sound from the front, or both sides of the Safety Alert Seat will pulse five times. When this Collision Alert occurs, the brake system may prepare for driver braking to occur more rapidly which can cause a brief, mild deceleration. Continue to apply the brake pedal as needed. Cruise control may be disengaged when the Collision Alert occurs.

Selecting the Alert Timing

The Collision Alert control is on the steering wheel. Press to set the FCA timing to Far, Medium, or Near, or on some vehicles, Off.

The first button press shows the current setting on the DIC. Additional button presses will change this setting. The chosen setting will remain until it is changed and will affect the timing of both the Collision Alert and the Tailgating Alert features. The timing of both alerts will vary based on vehicle speed. The faster the vehicle speed, the farther away the alert will occur.

Consider traffic and weather conditions when selecting the alert timing. The range of selectable alert timings may not be appropriate for all drivers and driving conditions.

Following Distance Indicator

The following distance to a moving vehicle ahead in your path is indicated in following time in seconds on the Driver Information Centre (DIC). See *Driver Information Centre (DIC)* ⇨ *106*. The minimum following time is 0.5 seconds away. If there is no vehicle detected ahead, or the vehicle ahead is out of sensor range, dashes will be displayed.

Unnecessary Alerts

FCA may provide unnecessary alerts for turning vehicles, vehicles in other lanes, objects that are not vehicles, or shadows. These alerts are normal operation and the vehicle does not need service.

Cleaning the System

If the FCA system does not seem to operate properly, this may correct the issue:

- Clean the outside of the windscreen in front of the rear view mirror.
- Clean the entire front of the vehicle.
- Clean the headlamps.

Autonomous Emergency Braking (AEB)

If the vehicle has Forward Collision Alert (FCA), it also has Autonomous Emergency Braking (AEB), which includes Intelligent Brake Assist (IBA).

When the system detects a vehicle ahead in your path that is travelling in the same direction that you may be about to crash into, it can provide a boost to braking or automatically brake the vehicle. This can help avoid or lessen the severity of crashes when driving in a forward gear.

Depending on the situation, the vehicle may automatically brake moderately or hard. This forward automatic braking can only occur if a vehicle is detected. This is shown by the FCA vehicle ahead indicator being lit. See *Forward Collision Alert (FCA) System* ⇨ *248*.

The system works when driving in a forward gear between 8 km/h and 60 km/h. It can detect vehicles up to approximately 60 m.

⚠ Warning

AEB is an emergency crash preparation feature and is not designed to avoid crashes. Do not rely on AEB to brake the vehicle. AEB will not brake outside of its operating speed range and only responds to detected vehicles.

AEB may not:

- Detect a vehicle ahead on winding or hilly roads.
- Detect all vehicles, especially vehicles with a trailer, tractors, muddy vehicles, etc.
- Detect a vehicle when weather limits visibility, such as in fog, rain, or snow.
- Detect a vehicle ahead if it is partially blocked by pedestrians or other objects.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Complete attention is always required while driving, and you should be ready to take action and apply the brakes and/or steer the vehicle to avoid crashes.

AEB may slow the vehicle to a complete stop to try to avoid a potential crash. If this happens, AEB may engage the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) to hold the vehicle at a stop. Release the EPB or firmly press the accelerator pedal.

⚠ Warning

AEB may automatically brake the vehicle suddenly in situations where it is unexpected and undesired. It could respond to a turning vehicle ahead, guardrails, signs, and other non-moving objects. To override AEB, firmly press the accelerator pedal, if it is safe to do so.

Intelligent Brake Assist

Intelligent Brake Assist (IBA) may activate when the brake pedal is applied quickly by providing a boost to braking based on the speed of approach and distance to a vehicle ahead.

Minor brake pedal pulsations or pedal movement during this time is normal and the brake pedal should continue to be applied as needed. IBA will automatically disengage only when the brake pedal is released.

⚠ Warning

IBA may increase vehicle braking in situations when it may not be necessary. You could block the flow of traffic. If this occurs, take your foot off the brake pedal and then apply the brakes as needed.

AEB and IBA can be disabled through vehicle personalisation. See “Collision/Detection Systems” under *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *112*.

⚠ Warning

Using AEB or IBA while towing a trailer could cause you to lose control of the vehicle. Turn the system to Alert or Off when towing a trailer.

A system unavailable message may display if:

- The front of the vehicle or windscreen is not clean.
- Heavy rain or snow is interfering with object detection.
- There is a problem with the electronic stability control system.

The AEB system does not need service.

Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA)

If equipped, the SBZA system is a lane-changing aid that assists drivers with avoiding crashes that occur with moving vehicles in the side blind spot areas.

When the vehicle is in a forward gear, a symbol will display in the left or right side mirror when a moving vehicle is detected in the blind spot on the corresponding side of the vehicle.

If the turn signal is activated and a vehicle is also detected on the same side, the display will flash as an extra warning not to change lanes. Since this system is part of the Lane Change Alert (LCA) system, read the entire LCA section before using this feature.

Lane Change Alert (LCA)

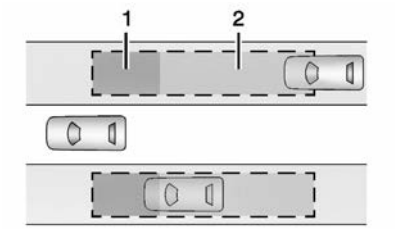
If equipped, the LCA system is a lane-changing aid that assists drivers avoid lane change crashes that occur with moving vehicles in the side blind spot areas, or with vehicles rapidly approaching these areas from behind.

The LCA warning will light up in the corresponding outside side mirror and will flash if the turn signal is on.

⚠ Warning

The LCA does not alert the driver to vehicles outside of the system detection zones, pedestrians, bicyclists, or animals. It may not provide alerts when changing lanes under all driving conditions. Failure to use proper care when changing lanes may result in injury, death, or vehicle damage. Before making a lane change, always check mirrors, glance over your shoulder, and use the turn signals.

LCA Detection Zones



1. SBZA Detection Zone
2. LCA Detection Zone

The detection zones cover an area approximately one lane over from both sides of the vehicle, or 3.5 m. The height of the zone is approximately 0.5 m and 2 m from the ground.

The detection zones start at approximately the middle of the vehicle, and for SZBA goes back 5 m. The LCA detection zone warns the driver of vehicles rapidly approaching from up to 25 m behind the vehicle.

How the System Works

An illuminated LCA symbol indicates it may be unsafe to change lanes. Before making a lane change, check the LCA display, check mirrors, glance over your shoulder, and use the turn signals.



Left Side Mirror Symbol **Right Side Mirror Symbol**

When the engine is started, both outside mirror LCA symbols will briefly come on to indicate the system is operating.

When the vehicle is in a forward gear, the left or right side mirror symbol will light up if a moving vehicle is detected in the next lane over in that blind spot or rapidly approaching that zone. If the turn signal is activated in the same direction as a detected vehicle, this display will flash as an extra warning not to change lanes.

LCA can be disabled through vehicle personalisation. See “Collision/Detection Systems” under *Vehicle Personalisation* ⇨ *112*. If LCA is disabled by the driver, the LCA mirror displays will not light up.

If the System Does Not Seem to Work Properly

The LCA system requires some driving for the system to calibrate to maximum performance. This calibration may occur more quickly if the vehicle is driving on a straight highway road with traffic and roadside objects (e.g., guardrails, barriers).

LCA symbols may not come on when passing a vehicle quickly, for a stopped vehicle, or when towing a trailer. The LCA detection zones that extend back from the side of the vehicle do not move further back when a trailer is towed.

Use caution while changing lanes when towing a trailer. The LCA may alert to objects attached to the vehicle, such as a trailer, bicycle, or object extending out to either side of the vehicle. Attached objects may also interfere with the detection of vehicles. This is normal system operation; the vehicle does not need service.

The LCA may not always alert the driver to vehicles in the next lane over, especially in wet conditions or when driving on sharp curves. The system does not need to be serviced. The system may light up due to guardrails, signs, trees, shrubs, and other non-moving objects. This is normal system operation; the vehicle does not need service.

The LCA may not operate when the LCA sensors in the left or right corners of the rear bumper are covered with mud, dirt, snow, ice, or slush, or in heavy rainstorms. For cleaning instructions, see "Washing the Vehicle" under *Exterior Care* ⇨ *316*.

If the DIC still displays the system unavailable message after cleaning both sides of the vehicle toward the rear corners of the vehicle, see your dealer.

If the LCA displays do not light up when moving vehicles are in the side blind spot or are rapidly approaching this zone and the system is clean, the system may need service. Take the vehicle to your dealer.

Lane Departure Warning (LDW)

If equipped, LDW may help avoid crashes due to unintentional lane departures. It may provide a warning if the vehicle is crossing a detected lane marking without using a turn signal in the lane departure direction. Since this system is part of the Lane Keep Assist (LKA) system, read the entire LKA section before using this feature.

Lane Keep Assist (LKA)

If equipped, the LKA may help avoid crashes due to unintentional lane departures by gently turning the steering wheel if the vehicle approaches a detected lane marking without using a turn signal in that direction. If equipped, the LKA may also pulse the driver's seat.

It may also provide a Lane Departure Warning (LDW) system alert as the lane marking is crossed.

The LKA system will not assist or provide an LDW alert if it detects that you are actively steering. Override the LKA by turning the steering wheel.

The LKA uses a camera to detect lane markings when travelling above 60 km/h.

⚠ Warning

The LKA system does not continuously steer the vehicle. It may not keep the vehicle in the

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

lane or give a Lane Departure Warning (LDW) alert, even if a lane marking is detected.

The LKA and LDW systems might not:

- Provide an alert or enough steering assist to avoid a lane departure or crash.
- Detect lane markings under poor weather or visibility conditions. This can occur if the windscreen or headlamps are blocked by dirt, snow, or ice, if they are not in proper condition, or if the sun shines directly into the camera.
- Detect road edges.
- Detect lanes on winding or hilly roads.

If the LKA only detects lane markings on one side of the road, it will only assist or provide an

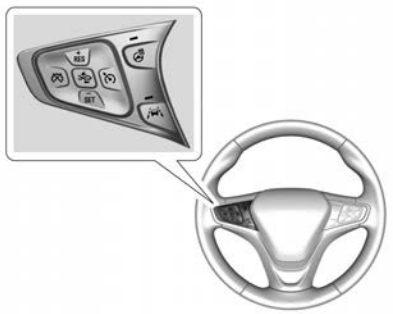
(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

LDW alert when approaching the lane on the side where it has detected a lane marking. Even with LKA and LDW, you must steer the vehicle. Always keep your attention on the road and maintain proper vehicle position within the lane, or vehicle damage, injury, or death could occur. Always keep the windscreen, headlamps, and camera sensors clean and in good repair. Do not use LKA in bad weather conditions.

How the System Works

The LKA camera sensor is on the windscreen ahead of the rear view mirror.



To turn LKA on and off, press and hold on the steering wheel.

When on, is green if the LKA is available to assist and provide LDW alerts.

It may assist by gently turning the steering wheel and display as amber if the vehicle approaches a detected lane marking without using a turn signal in that direction. It may also provide an LDW alert by flashing amber as the lane marking is crossed.

Additionally, there may be three beeps, or the driver seat may pulse three times, on the right or left, depending on the lane departure direction.

Take Steering

The LKA system does not continuously steer the vehicle. If the LKA does not detect active driver steering, an alert, chime, or DIC message may be provided. Steer the vehicle to dismiss.

If the System Does Not Seem to Work Properly

The system performance may be affected by:

- Close vehicles ahead.
- Sudden lighting changes, such as when driving through tunnels.
- Banked roads.
- Roads with poor lane markings, such as two-lane roads.

If the LKA system is not functioning properly when lane markings are clearly visible, cleaning the windscreen may help.

A system unavailable message may display if the camera is blocked. The LKA system does not need service.

LKA assistance and/or LDW alerts may occur due to tar marks, shadows, cracks in the road, temporary or construction lane markings, or other road imperfections. This is normal system operation; the vehicle does not need service. Turn the LKA off if these conditions continue.

Fuel

⚠ Danger

EXHAUST WARNING – CARBON MONOXIDE POISONING

Exhaust gases can contain carbon monoxide, a dangerous gas, which can cause unconsciousness and even death to both humans and animals.

Gases could be inhaled if the exhaust system on your vehicle is faulty.

To protect against exhaust gases entering the vehicle, the exhaust system and body should be inspected:

- Each time the vehicle is serviced.
- Whenever a change is noticed in the sound of the exhaust system.

(Continued)

Danger (Continued)

- Whenever the exhaust system, underbody or rear of the vehicle is damaged.

Take the vehicle to a Holden Dealer if you think the vehicle needs inspecting for any of the above reasons.

Do not sit (or leave children or pets) in a parked vehicle for any extended period of time with the engine running. Turn the fan on using any setting that brings outside air into the vehicle. Do not run the engine in an enclosed area (such as the garage) any longer than is needed to move the vehicle.

⚠ Danger

Always switch off the engine and any mobile phones when refuelling.

Do not smoke or allow open flames or sparks near the vehicle when refuelling.

If fuel fumes are detected while driving, the cause should be identified and corrected without delay by a Holden Dealer.

Static electricity can ignite fuel vapour. Only use pumps, hoses and containers that are properly grounded when filling up with fuel.

To avoid injury to you and to others, read and follow all instructions at the petrol station pump.

Petrol Engines

⚠ Warning

USE OF FUEL CONTAINING ETHANOL

When filling the fuel tank with an ethanol-petrol fuel blend, under no circumstances should fuel containing more than 10% ethanol be used.

Use of such fuels may result in engine malfunction, starting and operating difficulties and materials degradation. These adverse effects could result in permanent damage to the vehicle and personal injury.

The use of fuel containing more than 10% ethanol may also affect your New Vehicle Voluntary Warranty to the extent that Holden considers that the fuel affects the specifications and quality of your vehicle.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

It is also important to note that when fuel containing ethanol is used, fuel consumption can be expected to increase due to the lower energy content of ethanol.

The vehicle may be refuelled with E10 and unleaded fuel containing no ethanol. It is acceptable to mix these fuels.

The use of any fuel, other than the fuel specified, may seriously damage the vehicle and may void the warranty. See *Recommended Fuel* ⇨ *258*. Only clean fuel of good quality should be used.

Diesel Engine

⚠ Warning

USE OF FUEL CONTAINING ETHANOL

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Under no circumstances should you use diesel fuel containing ethanol.

Use of such fuels may result in engine malfunction, starting and operating difficulties and materials degradation.

These adverse effects could result in permanent damage to your vehicle and personal injury.

Recommended Fuel

Petrol Engines

Purchasing your fuel from a reputable fuel retailer may reduce the risk of purchasing fuel which contains abnormal fuel properties.

1.5L Engine

Use of clean unleaded petrol of regular 91 Research Octane Number (RON) rating or higher is recommended.

The use of premium unleaded petrol (95 RON or higher) may provide a small improvement in performance and fuel economy.

2.0L Engine

Use of clean premium unleaded petrol of 95 Research Octane Number (RON) rating or higher is recommended.

The use of premium unleaded petrol of 98 RON may provide a small improvement in performance and fuel economy.

The use of unleaded petrol of regular 91 RON rating may be used where 95 RON is not available, however a reduction in performance may be noticed.

Caution

Use of fuel with too low an octane rating could lead to uncontrolled combustion and engine damage.

Diesel Engine

Purchasing your fuel from a reputable fuel retailer may reduce the risk of purchasing fuel which contains abnormal fuel properties.

Diesel engines must only be run using commercially available diesel fuel that meets the requirements of Euro standard EN590.

Do not use fuel with more than 10 ppm sulphur content.

The use of bio-diesel containing up to 5 % fatty acid methyl ester (“FAME”) also known as “B5” is also permitted provided the FAME meets the Euro Standard EN14214, and the resultant B5 blend meets Euro Standard EN590.

Do not use marine diesel oils or heating oils.

The flow and filterability of diesel fuel are temperature-dependent. When temperatures are low, use diesel fuel with guaranteed winter properties.

Caution

Use only biodiesel blends containing up to a maximum of 5 % FAME that meets Euro standard EN590.

Purchasing fuel from a reputable fuel retailer may reduce the risk of purchasing fuel with more than 5 % FAME or fuel that has abnormal fuel properties.

The use of any other biodiesel that does not have the certification referred to above, or has a FAME content exceeding 5 %, may cause serious damage to your vehicle (including engine failure).

Damage attributable to the use of non-certified biodiesel is not covered by your New Vehicle Voluntary Warranty. In no event will GM Holden be responsible or bear any liability for any damage or loss that may arise in

(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

connection with the use of any fuel that does not meet this specification.

Water in Fuel (Diesel)

Contaminated fuel can cause water to be pumped into the fuel tank along with the diesel fuel. If a WATER IN FUEL message displays in the DIC, the water must be drained immediately.

⚠ Warning

Diesel fuel containing water is still combustible. You or others could be burnt. If the fuel needs to be drained, keep sparks, flames, and smoking materials away from the mixture.

Caution

Water in the diesel fuel can corrode internal components of the fuel system and lead to severe damage. It can also support fungus or bacteria growth, which can damage the fuel system. Even with a diesel fuel biocide, the fuel system may still need to be cleaned. Your dealer can advise of the appropriate solution.

If the fuel tank needs to be purged to remove water, see your dealer or a qualified technician. Improper purging can damage the fuel system.

Water in Fuel Troubleshooting

If a **Water In Fuel** message comes on:

Problem	Recommended Action
Message displays and goes off during the ignition cycle.	The fuel filter is approximately half full of water. Drain the water immediately. See "Removing Water from the Fuel Filter" later in this section.
Message displays and stays on.	Drain the fuel filter immediately. If no water can be drained, and the temperature is below freezing, then water may be frozen in the filter. Move the vehicle to a warm location to thaw the water, then drain the fuel. If water still does not drain, see your dealer.
Immediately after refuelling, message displays and stays on.	A large amount of water is in the fuel tank. Drain the fuel filter immediately. If the message stays on, or comes back on again without refuelling, then fuel tank purging is required. See your dealer. If the message displays and the vehicle stalls or the ride is rough, do not drive until the water contaminated fuel is drained.

Caution

Driving with this message on can damage the fuel injection system and the engine. If the message comes on right after a refuel,

(Continued)

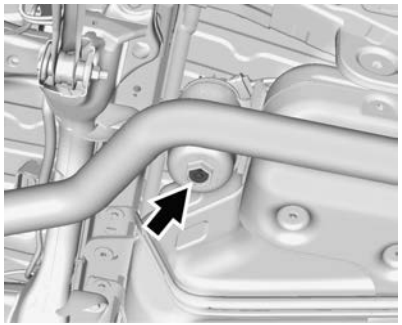
Caution (Continued)

water was pumped into the fuel tank. Turn off the engine and drain the water immediately.

Removing Water from the Fuel Filter

To drain water:

1. Turn the engine off and apply the parking brake.
2. Place a container under the filter drain valve, which is on the bottom of the fuel filter.



FWD Shown, AWD Similar

3. Turn the drain plug anticlockwise using a suitable tool.
4. With the engine off, press and hold ENGINE START/STOP without applying the brake for five seconds to place the vehicle in Service Mode. See *Ignition Positions* ⇨ *215*.

   Wait approximately five seconds, and then press ENGINE START/STOP again to turn it off. This operation will enhance water flow out of the filter. The filter is drained as soon as diesel fuel emerges from the port.
5. Re-tighten the drain plug by turning it clockwise.
6. Properly dispose of the water contaminated fuel.
7. Start the engine and let it run for a few minutes. During the draining process, air may have entered the fuel system. If the engine stalls, the fuel system may need to be primed. See “Fuel Priming” under *Running Out of Fuel (Diesel)* ⇨ *261*.

Running Out of Fuel (Diesel)

⚠ Warning

Diesel fuel is flammable. It could start a fire if something ignites it, and people could be burned. Do not let it get on hot engine parts, and keep matches or other ignition sources away.

If the engine has stalled due to running out of fuel, add at least 7.6 L of fuel if parked on a level surface, or up to 18.9 L of fuel if parked on a slope, and perform the procedure under “Fuel Priming” further in this section.

Fuel Priming

For the fuel system to operate correctly, air cannot be in the fuel lines. If air gets in, the engine may not start and the fuel lines will need to be primed before operating the vehicle.

If air is present, the following may have happened:

- The vehicle ran out of fuel.
- The fuel filter was removed.
- The fuel lines were removed or disconnected.
- The fuel filter water drain valve was opened while the engine was running.

To prime the fuel lines:

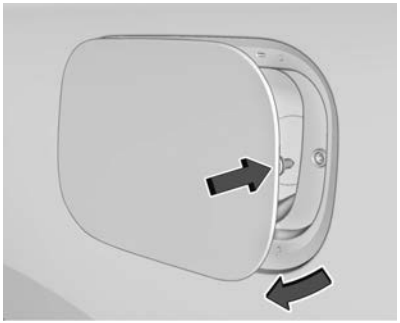
1. With the engine off, press and hold ENGINE START/STOP without applying the brake for five seconds to turn the ignition on. See *Ignition Positions* ⇨ *215*.

   Wait approximately five seconds and press ENGINE START/STOP again to turn it off.

   Repeat this step three times or more while the engine is off.
2. Press and hold ENGINE START/STOP while applying the brake for a maximum of 40 seconds at a time, with five seconds between attempts, until the engine starts.

   If the engine tries to run, but does not run smoothly, increase the engine RPM slightly by using the accelerator pedal. This will help force air through the system.
3. Repeat Step 2 if the engine stalls and will not restart.
4. After a few attempts, if the engine still does not start, see your dealer.

Filling the Tank (Petrol Engines)



The fuel cap is behind the fuel door on the passenger side of the vehicle.

The fuel door is locked when the vehicle doors are locked. Press on the RKE transmitter to unlock. To open the fuel door, push and release the rearward centre edge of the door.

⚠ Danger

Before refuelling, switch off the engine and mobile phones.

Follow the operating and safety instructions of the filling station when refuelling.

⚠ Danger

Fuel is flammable and explosive. No smoking. No naked flames or sparks.

If you can smell fuel in your vehicle, have the cause of this remedied immediately by a Holden dealer.

Turn the fuel cap anticlockwise to remove. While refuelling, hang the fuel cap from the hook on the fuel door. Reinstall the cap by turning it clockwise until it clicks.

⚠ Warning

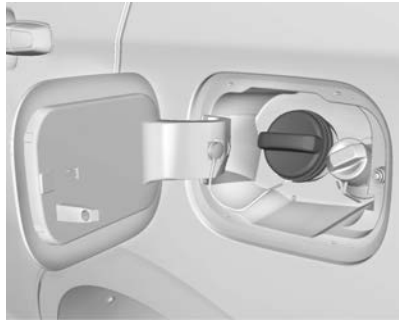
Overfilling the fuel tank by more than three clicks of a standard fill nozzle may cause:

- Vehicle performance issues, including engine stalling and damage to the fuel system.
- Fuel spills.
- Potential fuel fires.

Be careful not to spill fuel. Wait a few seconds after you have finished pumping before removing the nozzle.

Clean any spilled fuel from painted surfaces as soon as possible. See *Exterior Care* ⇨ *316*.

Filling the Tank (Diesel Engine)



The fuel cap is behind a hinged fuel door on the passenger side of the vehicle.

The fuel door is locked when the vehicle doors are locked. Press on the RKE transmitter to unlock. To open the fuel door, push and release the rearward centre edge of the door.

⚠ Danger

Before refuelling, switch off the engine and mobile phones.

Follow the operating and safety instructions of the filling station when refuelling.

⚠ Danger

Fuel is flammable and explosive. No smoking. No naked flames or sparks.

If you can smell fuel in your vehicle, have the cause of this remedied immediately by a Holden dealer.

Turn the fuel cap anticlockwise to remove. While refuelling, hang the fuel cap from the hook on the fuel door. Reinstall the cap by turning it clockwise until it clicks.

Diesel fuel can foam when filling the tank. This can cause the automatic pump nozzle to shut off, even if the tank is not full. If this happens, wait for the foaming to stop, and then fill the tank more slowly.

⚠ Warning

Overfilling the fuel tank by more than three clicks of a standard fill nozzle may cause:

- Fuel spills
- Potential fuel fires

Be careful not to spill fuel. Wait a few seconds after you have finished pumping before removing the nozzle.

Clean any spilled fuel from painted surfaces as soon as possible. See *Exterior Care* ⇨ *316*.

Accidental Refuelling with Petrol

If the vehicle is accidentally refuelled with petrol, do not continue driving the vehicle except to get to a location where it can be stopped safely. Driving the vehicle will damage the fuel system. Have the vehicle towed to a qualified technician to have the petrol removed from the tank and fuel system. Flush the fuel system with Ultra Low Sulphur Diesel fuel to ensure all petrol is removed.

AdBlue

AdBlue® is a non-hazardous fluid that is injected into the exhaust system of diesel vehicles to reduce exhaust emissions.

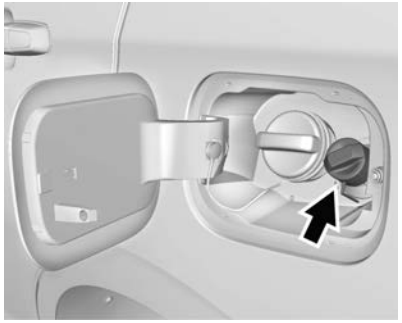
AdBlue, also known as diesel exhaust fluid, is available from reputable fuel and automotive outlets, or from your dealer who can also assist with refilling.

⚠ Warning

Never add AdBlue directly to the fuel tank.

If AdBlue is added to the fuel tank, do not drive the vehicle or start the engine. Contact your dealer immediately.

AdBlue is not a fuel additive and never comes into contact with diesel fuel. It is stored in a separate tank.



The filler is behind the fuel door next to the regular fuel cap. It has a blue cap.

For more information and filling procedures, see *AdBlue* ⇨ *223*.

Trailer Towing

The word trailer is used throughout this section and includes all types of towed vehicles, such as caravans, boat trailers or any other special purpose trailer.

Towing

Handling, durability and economy may be affected by towing a trailer.

A Holden Dealer will assist with supply and installation of towing equipment.

Maximum towing capacities (kg)

Engine	1.5L Petrol	2.0L Petrol	1.6L Diesel
Braked Trailer	1500	2000	1500
Unbraked Trailer	750	750	750

Note

Exceeding these values could affect your New Vehicle Voluntary Warranty.
Mandatory Equipment: Holden 2000 kg rated towbar and Holden trailer wiring equipment.

Overloading

Never exceed the loads given for the towing equipment fitted to the vehicle.

All mandatory equipment must be fitted, otherwise you may void the New Vehicle Voluntary Warranty to the extent that Holden considers the overloading or missing equipment to have affected the specifications or quality of the vehicle.

⚠ Warning

Holden towing equipment is recommended where it is available. Where it is not available, no recommendation is made as to the make of equipment which should be used.

Holden will not accept liability for defects occurring in towing equipment not marketed by Holden or for defects in the vehicle arising from the use of such equipment or for loss or

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

injury caused by use of such equipment. The use of such equipment may void your New Vehicle Voluntary Warranty to the extent that Holden considers the non-recommended equipment affects the specifications or quality of your Holden vehicle.

It is inadvisable to mix and match different brands of towing equipment, as equipment is usually designed as an integrated package.

⚠ Warning

When towing a trailer, exhaust gases may collect at the rear of the vehicle and enter if the liftgate is open.

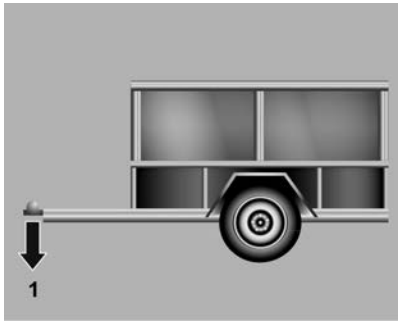
When towing a trailer:

- Do not drive with the liftgate open.
- Fully open the instrument panel vents and set the climate control to face or bi-level mode and outside air off.

For further information about carbon monoxide, see *Fuel* ⇨ *256*.

Trailer Recommendations

Tow Ball Load



A trailer hitched to a vehicle places a weight on the tow bar. This weight is called the tow bar ball weight or tow ball load (1).

- For single axle trailers, the tow ball load should be 10% of the loaded trailer mass.

  E.g. if the weight of the trailer and its contents is 750 kg, the tow ball load should be 75 kg.

- For heavy trailers with more than one axle, the tow ball load should be 5 – 10% of the loaded trailer mass.

Adjust by moving items forwards or backwards within the trailer, to change the balance.

Check the tow ball load before coupling the trailer to the towing vehicle.

If the tow ball load is too light or too heavy, the steering and handling of the vehicle may be affected.

Axle loads must not be exceeded when the tow ball load is included. See “Axle loads” under *Vehicle Weight* ⇨ *329*.

If maximum axle loads are exceeded, weight should be removed from the rear of the vehicle and transferred onto the trailer.

Ensure the weight of the packed trailer is not greater than the towing capacity of the Holden approved tow bar package fitted to the vehicle, or the vehicle's maximum towing capacity, which ever is lower.

Towing Precautions

- When towing, check and inflate the tyres to the recommended pressure. See *Tyre Pressure* ⇨ *303*.
- Tighten the tow ball retaining nut to 140 N•m (Newton metres) and check the torque frequently.
- Vehicles handle differently when towing. Take a couple of short distance trips with the trailer before taking a long trip.
- Have the vehicle and trailer correctly maintained and serviced, with particular attention given to the brakes, tyres, suspension, wheel bearings, towing coupling and lighting.
- Use an extended-arm mirror on both sides of the vehicle if necessary.
- Headlamps may need re-aiming after the loaded trailer has been hitched, particularly if a load distribution hitch is not used.
- Use a lower gear and the brakes, when descending steep hills.
- Do not use axle-mounted hitches.
- Ensure the tow bar does not obscure the rear number plate. Remove the tow bar tongue when not required for towing.
- If a tow bar is removed, have any mounting holes in the underbody sealed to prevent entry of exhaust fumes, dust and water.
- The anti-rattle bolt and nut should be removed when towing to prevent damage to the bolt or tow bar tongue.

Trailer Brakes

- Trailer brakes are mandatory on trailers with an Aggregate Trailer Mass (ATM) of more than 750 kg.
- Consult the appropriate regulatory body in your State or Territory for the legal requirements of trailer brakes.

Running-in When Towing

It is recommended that a new vehicle be driven for at least 1,500 km before towing.

If towing is necessary before this, do not exceed 80 km/h. This also applies if the vehicle is fitted with a new or reconditioned engine, transmission or rear axle.

Vehicle Maintenance

More frequent vehicle maintenance is required when using the vehicle to tow. Refer to the Service & Warranty Booklet in the vehicle's glovebox.

Trailer Sway Control (TSC)

The vehicle has a Trailer Sway Control (TSC) feature as part of the Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system. If TSC detects the trailer is swaying, the vehicle's brakes are automatically applied.



When TSC is applying the brakes, the TCS/ESC indicator light flashes to notify the driver to reduce speed. If the trailer continues to sway, ESC will reduce engine torque to help slow the vehicle.

TSC will not function if ESC is turned off. See *Traction Control/ Electronic Stability Control* ⇨ *234*.

Conversions and Add-Ons

Add-On Electrical Equipment

Accessories and Vehicle Modifications

We recommend the use of genuine parts and accessories and factory approved parts specific for your vehicle type. We cannot assess or guarantee reliability of other products - even if they have a regulatory or otherwise granted approval.

Any modification, conversion or other changes made to standard vehicle specifications (including, without limitation, software modifications, modifications of the electronic control units) may invalidate the warranty offered by Holden. Furthermore, such changes may impact fuel consumption, CO2 emissions and other emissions of the vehicle and cause the vehicle to no longer conform to the type approval, impacting the validity of your vehicle registration.

Driving lamps or Insect Screens

Do not fit any accessory over the upper or lower air intakes at the front of the vehicle, as this may affect engine cooling.

Holden Genuine Accessories are an exception, however they should be removed in high load and high temperature conditions.

Caution
In high load and high temperature applications (e.g. towing) no objects should be fitted over the upper or lower air intake at the front of the vehicle, as this could affect cooling. This includes removing Holden Genuine Accessories in this area, in these conditions.

Roo Bars

⚠ Warning

Fitting a roo bar may affect crash performance, airbag performance and engine cooling.

Roo bars should not be fitted to vehicles operating in suburban areas, as they may increase the risk of injury to a pedestrian in the event of a collision.

Vehicle Care

General Information
General Information 272
Accessories and Modifications 272
Emission Information 272
Emission Control System 272

Vehicle Checks
Bonnet 274
Engine Compartment Overview 276
Engine Oil 281
Engine Oil Life System 283
Automatic Transmission Fluid 284
Manual Transmission Fluid ... 284
Hydraulic Clutch 284
Engine Air Cleaner/Filter 285
Engine Coolant 286
Engine Overheating 287
Washer Fluid 289
Brakes 289
Brake Fluid 289
Battery 290
All-Wheel Drive 291
Wiper Blade Replacement 291

Bulb Replacement
Bulb Replacement 293
Halogen Bulbs 293
High Intensity Discharge (HID) Lighting 293
LED Lighting 293
Headlamps 293
Front Turn Signal and Fog Lamps 294
Taillamps 294
Licence Plate Lamp 295

Electrical System
Fuses and Circuit Breakers ... 296
Engine Compartment Fuse Block 296
Instrument Panel Fuse Block 299
Rear Fuse Panel 301

Vehicle Tools
Tools 302

Wheels and Tyres
Tyres 303
Tyre Pressure 303
Tread Depth 304
Tyre Rotation 305
Buying New Tyres 305
Wheel Alignment and Tyre Balance 306
Tyre Chains 306
Tyre Changing 307
Compact Spare Tyre 311

Jump Starting
Jump Starting 312

Towing the Vehicle
Towing the Vehicle 314

Appearance Care
Exterior Care 316
Interior Care 318
Floor Mats 321

General Information

For service and parts needs, visit your dealer. You will receive genuine parts and trained and supported service people.

Accessories and Modifications

Adding non-genuine accessories or making modifications to the vehicle can affect vehicle performance, safety and durability.

These accessories or modifications could even cause malfunction or damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

Genuine Holden accessories are designed to complement and function with other systems on the vehicle. See your dealer for assistance with the Genuine Holden accessories that are available for your vehicle.

Emission Information

The emission control systems are designed to reduce the amount of hydrocarbons (HC), carbon monoxide (CO), and oxides of nitrogen (NOx) that are emitted from the engine and fuel system into the atmosphere. HC and NOx, when exposed to sunlight under certain conditions, contribute to photochemical smog. In addition, CO is toxic to inhale.

Emission Control System

Major emission control systems that the vehicle may have are:

- Evaporative emission control system. This system is designed to prevent the escape of fuel vapour from the fuel system and recycle the vapours through the normal combustion process.
- Crankcase emission control system. This system is designed to prevent blow-by gases from escaping into the atmosphere and recycle them through the combustion process.
- Exhaust emission control system. The various components of this system operate collectively to limit HC, CO and NOx emissions in the exhaust gas. The exhaust emission control system consists of components including electronic control of spark, fuel and idle speed. In addition vehicles have a catalytic converter and closed loop mixture control system.

It is recommended that service and repair to fuel or emission systems be carried out by an authorised Holden Dealer.

Owner Responsibility

The engine, engine control system and exhaust system of the vehicle must NOT be modified in any way.

⚠ Warning

Any person who removes, modifies or hinders any part of the emission control system may

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

be contravening Australian Design Rules. It is also illegal to drive a vehicle modified in this way.

Maintenance Requirements

Have the vehicle serviced at the frequency shown in the Maintenance Schedule in your Service & Warranty Booklet.

It is recommended that servicing be carried out by an authorised Holden Dealer who will maintain the vehicle's emission control system as per the Service & Warranty Booklet.

It is recommended that all fluid levels are checked weekly.

Reducing Fuel Consumption

Engine

Have the vehicle serviced regularly in accordance with the Maintenance Schedule in the Service & Warranty Booklet.

Transmission

For vehicles fitted with a manual transmission; when on level roads, in an unladen condition, it is permissible to drive off in 2nd gear, in the interest of fuel economy.

Tyre Pressure

Keep the tyres at the recommended pressures. See *Tyre Pressure* ⇨ *331*.

Wheel Alignment

Maintain correct front and rear wheel alignment.

Warm-ups and Idling

Avoid long engine warm-ups. They are unnecessary and waste fuel.

Avoid long engine idling.

Accelerating, Driving and Braking

Accelerate gently and avoid rapid starts.

Drive the vehicle at steady speeds where possible (after running-in).

Manual transmission: It is desirable to reach top gear as soon as possible, but do not force the engine to labour in top gear.

Riding the Brake

Do not rest your foot on the brake pedal when you do not intend to brake.

Air Conditioning

Switch off the air conditioning when not required, however, once every 2 weeks, with the engine running, switch the air conditioning on for 5 to 10 minutes to lubricate the seals (even in winter).

Vehicle Checks

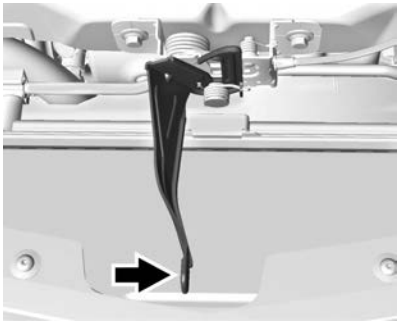
Bonnet

Opening



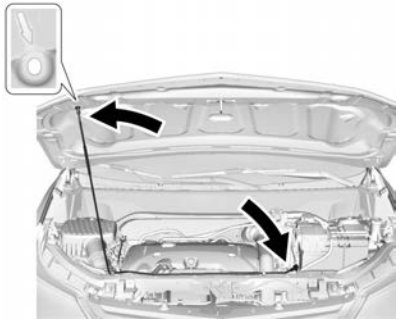
1. Pull the bonnet release lever with this symbol on it.

   It is on the lower right-hand side of the instrument panel, between the door and the steering wheel.



2. Go to the front of the vehicle and find the secondary bonnet release handle under the front edge of the bonnet near the centre.

   Push the handle to the right and raise the bonnet.



3. Release the bonnet prop from its retainer, located above the radiator.

   Securely place the bonnet prop into the slot on the underside of the bonnet.

Closing

⚠ Warning

To avoid injury and/or damage to the vehicle, check each time, before the bonnet is closed, that the contact area is unobstructed.

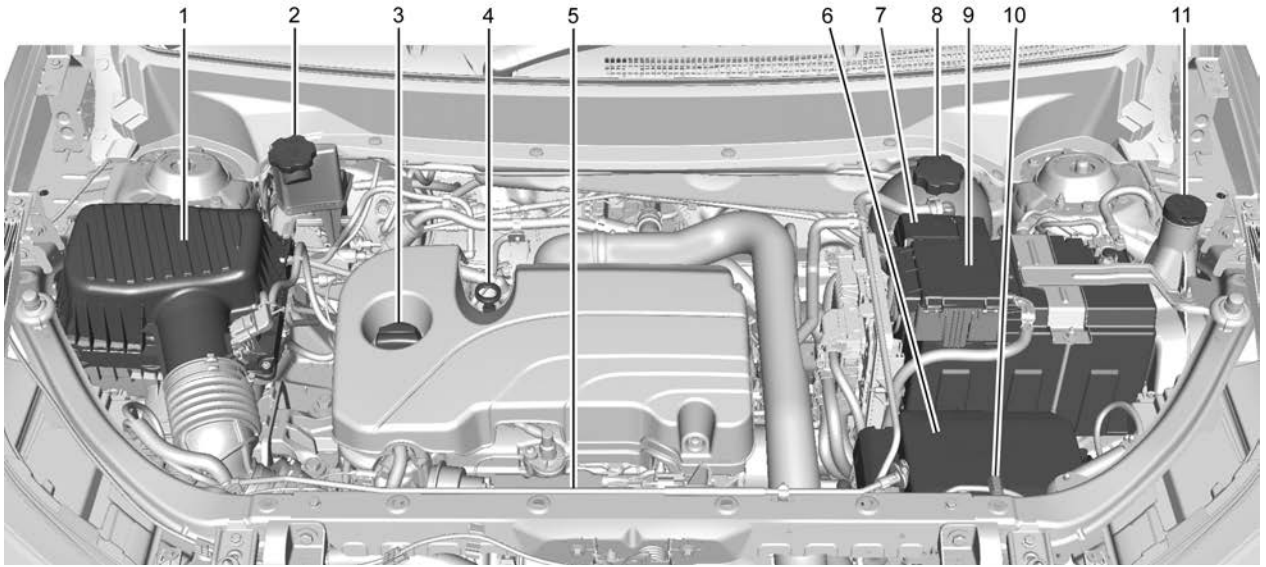
1. Before closing the bonnet, ensure all the filler caps are properly fitted and nothing is left behind.
2. Lift the bonnet slightly to relieve pressure on the bonnet prop.

   Remove the bonnet prop from the slot on the underside of the bonnet and return the prop to its retainer. The prop rod must click into place when returning it to the retainer to prevent bonnet damage.
3. Lower the bonnet and let it fall into the latch from a low height (approx. 30 cm).
4. Check to make sure the bonnet is closed and securely latched.

⚠ Warning

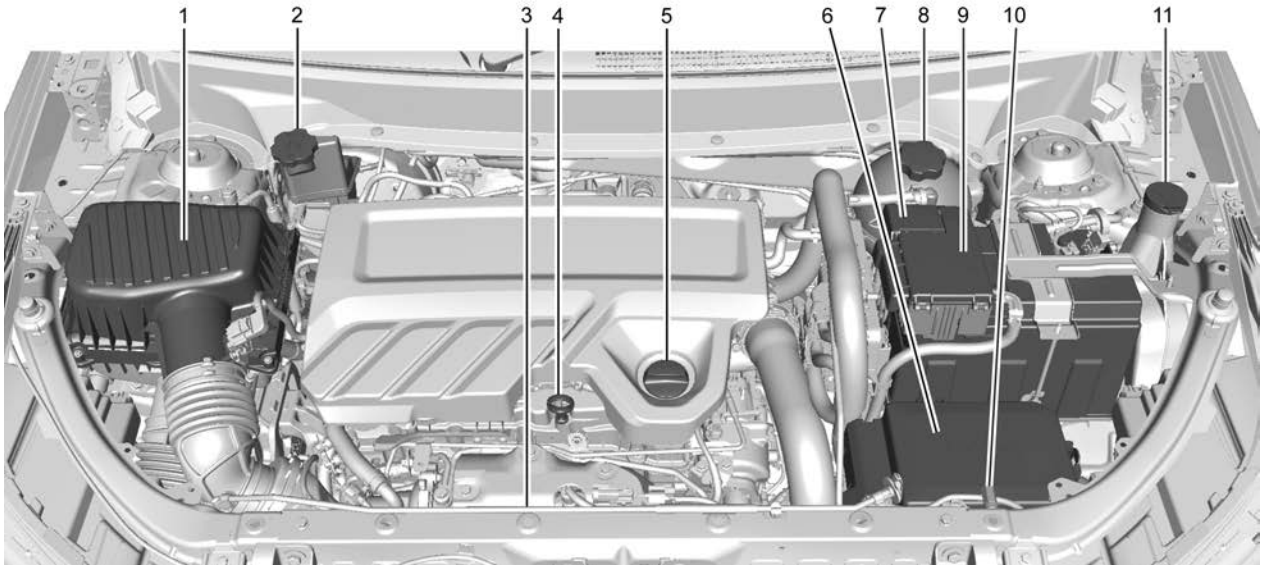
If while driving you notice that the bonnet has not been properly closed, pull the vehicle over to the side of the road at the earliest possible moment and close the bonnet correctly.

Engine Compartment Overview



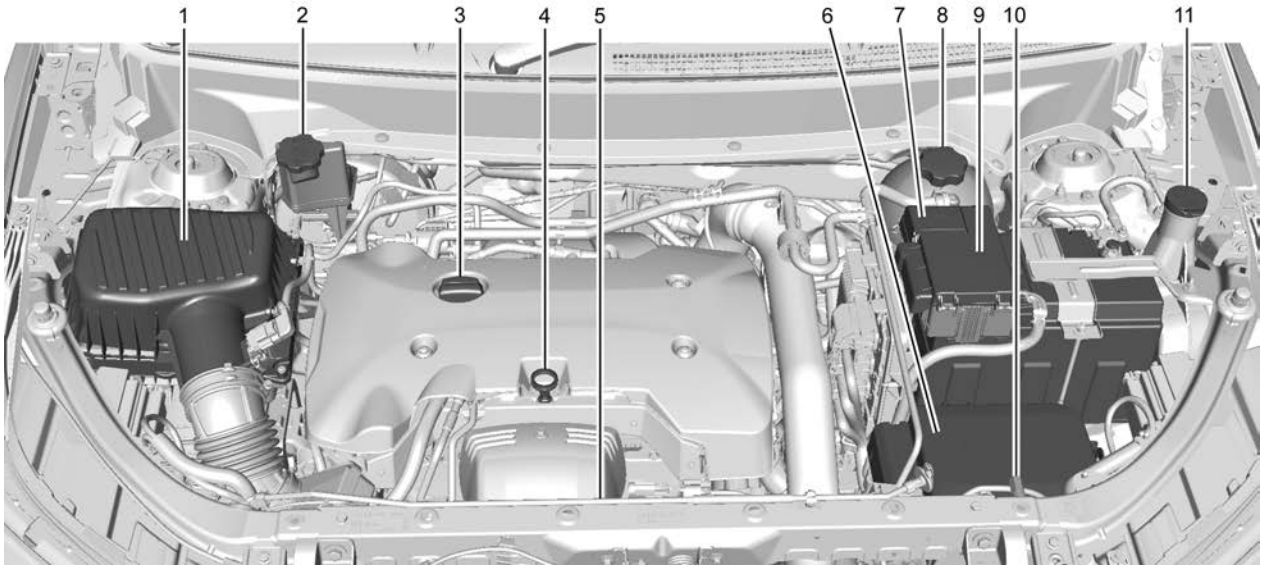
1.5L Petrol Engine

1. *Engine Air Cleaner/Filter* ⇨ *285*.
2. Brake or Brake and Clutch Fluid Reservoir. See *Brake Fluid* ⇨ *289*.
3. Engine Oil Fill Cap. See *Engine Oil* ⇨ *281*.
4. Engine Oil Dipstick. See *Engine Oil* ⇨ *281*.
5. Engine Cooling Fan.
6. *Engine Compartment Fuse Block* ⇨ *296*.
7. Remote Positive (+) Terminal (Under Cover). See *Jump Starting* ⇨ *312*.
8. Engine Coolant Surge Tank and Pressure Cap. See *Engine Coolant* ⇨ *286*.
9. *Battery* ⇨ *290*.
10. Remote Negative (−) Terminal. See *Jump Starting* ⇨ *312*.
11. Windscreen Washer Fluid Reservoir. See *Washer Fluid* ⇨ *289*.



1.6L Diesel Engine

1. *Engine Air Cleaner/Filter* ⇨ *285*.
2. Brake Fluid Reservoir. See *Brake Fluid* ⇨ *289*.
3. Engine Cooling Fan.
4. Engine Oil Dipstick. See *Engine Oil* ⇨ *281*.
5. Engine Oil Fill Cap. See *Engine Oil* ⇨ *281*.
6. *Engine Compartment Fuse Block* ⇨ *296*.
7. Remote Positive (+) Terminal (Under Cover). See *Jump Starting* ⇨ *312*.
8. Engine Coolant Surge Tank. See *Engine Coolant* ⇨ *286*.
9. *Battery* ⇨ *290*.
10. Remote Negative (−) Terminal. See *Jump Starting* ⇨ *312*.
11. Windscreen Washer Fluid Reservoir. See *Washer Fluid* ⇨ *289*.



2.0L Petrol Engine

1. *Engine Air Cleaner/Filter* ⇨ *285*.
2. Brake Fluid Reservoir. See *Brake Fluid* ⇨ *289*.
3. Engine Oil Fill Cap. See *Engine Oil* ⇨ *281*.
4. Engine Oil Dipstick. See *Engine Oil* ⇨ *281*.
5. Engine Cooling Fan.
6. *Engine Compartment Fuse Block* ⇨ *296*.
7. Remote Positive (+) Terminal (Under Cover). See *Jump Starting* ⇨ *312*.
8. Engine Coolant Surge Tank. See *Engine Coolant* ⇨ *286*.
9. *Battery* ⇨ *290*.
10. Remote Negative (−) Terminal. See *Jump Starting* ⇨ *312*.
11. Windscreen Washer Fluid Reservoir. See *Washer Fluid* ⇨ *289*.

Engine Oil

⚠ Danger

Engine oil is an irritant and if ingested can cause illness or death.

Avoid repeated or prolonged contact with skin.

Wash exposed areas with soap and water or hand cleaner.

To ensure optimum engine performance and long life, careful attention must be paid to engine oil. Following these simple, but important steps will help protect your investment:

- Use engine oil approved to the correct specification and viscosity grade.
- Check the engine oil level regularly and maintain the correct oil level.
- Change the engine oil at the appropriate time.
- Always dispose of engine oil properly.

Checking Engine Oil Level

Check the engine oil level regularly, or approximately every 650 km, especially prior to a long trip.

Note

The engine must be at operating temperature and the ignition turned off for at least five minutes.

If a Low Oil Driver Information Centre (DIC) message displays, check the oil level. If the oil is not low and the low oil message remains on, take the vehicle to your dealer for service.

1. Park the vehicle on a level surface.
2. Remove the engine oil dipstick and wipe it clean.

   See *Engine Compartment Overview* ⇨ *276* for the location.

⚠ Warning

The engine oil dipstick handle may be hot; it could burn you. Use a towel or glove to touch the dipstick handle.

3. Reinsert the dipstick fully.
4. Remove the dipstick and read the oil level as described below.

Dilution

When a vehicle is frequently driven on short trips, the engine often fails to reach normal operating temperatures:

- The oil becomes diluted by fuel and moisture that settles in the oil pan.
- This may raise the oil level creating a false reading on the engine oil dipstick.

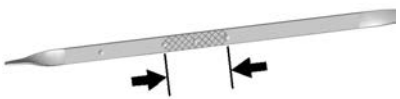
For example, in a vehicle that has accumulated 1,500 km of short distance or intermittent city operation and has consumed a normal amount of oil, the level may not have dropped from the upper area/mark, due to dilution.

If this vehicle is driven for some distance at highway speeds the dilution elements evaporate, resulting in a sudden drop in oil level.

Adding Engine Oil



1.5L Petrol Engine



2.0L Petrol Engine



1.6L Diesel Engine

If the oil is below the cross-hatched area at the tip of the dipstick and the engine has been off for at least 15 minutes, add 1 litre of the recommended oil and then recheck the level.
See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants* ⇨ *324* and *Capacities and Specifications* ⇨ *330*.

Caution

Do not add too much oil. Oil levels above or below the acceptable operating range shown on the dipstick are harmful to the engine. If you find that you have an oil level above the operating range, i.e., the engine has so much oil that the oil level

(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

gets above the cross-hatched area that shows the proper operating range, the engine could be damaged. You should drain out the excess oil or limit driving of the vehicle and seek a service professional to remove the excess amount of oil.

See *Engine Compartment Overview* ⇨ *276* for the location of the engine oil fill cap.

Add enough oil to put the level somewhere in the proper operating range.

When finished, ensure the dipstick is inserted all the way back in and ensure the oil fill cap is replaced securely.

Note

Non-detergent and other low quality oils, the use of break-in oil, tune up compounds, friction reducing compounds and other supplemental additives are not recommended. Their use increases costs, may be detrimental to the operation of the vehicle and may void the New Vehicle Voluntary Warranty, to the extent that Holden considers the non-recommended fluid to have affected the specifications or quality of the vehicle.

Engine Oil Change Intervals

Refer to the Service & Warranty Booklet.

Engine Oil Life System

Changing Engine Oil

This vehicle has a computer system that indicates when to change the engine oil and filter. This is based on a combination of factors which include engine revolutions, engine temperature, and distance driven.

Based on driving conditions, the distance at which an oil change is indicated can vary considerably.

For the oil life system to work properly, the system must be reset every time the oil is changed.

When the system has calculated that oil life has been diminished, it indicates that an oil change is necessary. A 'Change Engine Oil Soon' message is displayed on the Driver Information Centre (DIC).

Change the oil as soon as possible within the next 1 000 km.

It is possible that, if you are driving under the best conditions, the oil life system may indicate that an oil change is not necessary for a longer period than shown in the service schedule. However, the engine oil and filter must be changed in accordance with the service schedules outlined in the Service & Warranty booklet. At this time the engine oil life system must be reset.

Your dealer has trained service people who will perform this work and reset the system.

How to Reset the Engine Oil Life System

Reset the system whenever the engine oil is changed so the system can calculate the next engine oil change.

1. Display 'Oil Life' on the DIC menu. See *Driver Information Centre (DIC)* ⇨ *106*.
2. Mid-level DIC: Press and hold ✓ for several seconds while the Oil Life display is active.

   Up-level DIC: Press > to open the sub-folder. Select Reset and confirm by pressing ✓ for several seconds.
3. 'Oil Life 100%' will be displayed when the oil life system is successfully reset.

The oil life system can also be reset as follows:

1. Place the ignition on. See *Ignition Positions* ⇨ *215*.
2. Display 'Oil Life' on the DIC menu. See *Driver Information Centre (DIC)* ⇨ *106*.
3. Fully press and release the accelerator pedal three times within five seconds.
4. If the display changes to 100%, the system is reset.

If the 'Change Engine Oil Soon' message comes back on when the vehicle is started, the engine oil life system has not reset. Repeat the procedure.

Automatic Transmission Fluid

It is not necessary to check the transmission fluid level.
A transmission fluid leak is the only reason for fluid loss. If a leak occurs, take the vehicle to your dealer and have it repaired as soon as possible.

The vehicle is not equipped with a transmission fluid level dipstick. There is a special procedure for checking and changing the transmission fluid. Because this procedure is difficult, this should be done at the dealer.

Change the fluid and filter at the intervals listed in the Service & Warranty booklet. Only use the fluid listed in *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants* ⇨ *324*.

Manual Transmission Fluid

It is not necessary to check the manual transmission fluid level.

A transmission fluid leak is the only reason for fluid loss. If a leak occurs, take the vehicle to your dealer and have it repaired as soon as possible.

Hydraulic Clutch

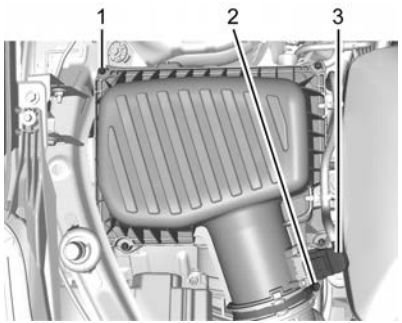
For vehicles with a manual transmission, the hydraulic clutch and brake system share a common fluid reservoir. See *Brake Fluid* ⇨ *289* for further information.

Engine Air Cleaner/Filter

The engine air cleaner/filter is in the engine compartment on the driver side. See *Engine Compartment Overview* ⇨ *276*.

Caution
If the air cleaner/filter is off, dirt can easily get into the engine, which could damage it. Always have the air cleaner/filter in place when driving.

Removal



Note

2.0L petrol engine shown; other engines are similar.

1. Open the bonnet. See *Bonnet* ⇨ *274*.
2. Remove the four screws (1).
3. Loosen the screw on the air duct clamp (2) and remove the air duct hose from the cover.
4. Remove the air cleaner/filter cover, keeping the wiring harness electrical connector (3) connected to the sensor.
5. Pull straight up on the cover, and while holding the cover, remove the air cleaner/filter.
6. Inspect or replace the air cleaner/filter.

Installation



1. Align the air cleaner/filter with the indicated point on the base of the air cleaner/filter housing and install the air cleaner/filter. The outer air cleaner/filter seal must be fitted properly in the air cleaner/filter housing.
2. Align the air cleaner/filter housing cover tabs to the air cleaner/filter housing.
3. Install the air cleaner/filter housing cover using the four screws.

4. Slide the air duct onto the cover assembly and tighten the screw on the air duct clamp.
5. Verify the wiring harness connector is fully connected to the sensor on the air cleaner/ filter housing.

Engine Coolant

The cooling system allows the engine to maintain the correct operating temperature.

⚠ Warning

An under bonnet electric fan can start up even when the engine is not running and can cause injury. Keep hands, clothing, and tools away from any under bonnet electric fan.

⚠ Warning

Do not touch heater or radiator hoses, or other engine parts. They may be very hot and can burn you. Do not run the engine if there is a leak; all coolant could leak out. That could cause an engine fire and can burn you. Fix any leak before driving the vehicle.

The engine cooling system in the vehicle is filled with DexCool® engine coolant mixture. This coolant needs to be checked and changed at appropriate levels. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants* ⇨ *324* and refer to the Service & Warranty booklet.

The following explains the cooling system and how to check and add coolant when it is low. If there is a problem with engine overheating, see *Engine Overheating* ⇨ *287*.

Checking Coolant

The vehicle must be on a level surface when checking the coolant level.



Check the coolant level in the coolant surge tank when the engine is cold.

When cold, the coolant level should be within the cross-hatched area on the front of the coolant surge tank, or just below the rib. If not, see “Adding Coolant” further in this section.

Adding Coolant

⚠ Warning

Steam and scalding liquids from a hot cooling system are under pressure. Turning the pressure cap, even a little, can cause them to come out at high speed and you could be burned. Never turn the cap when the cooling system, including the pressure cap, is hot. Wait for the cooling system and pressure cap to cool.

Caution

Failure to follow the specific coolant fill procedure could cause the engine to overheat and could cause system damage. If coolant is not visible in the surge tank, contact your dealer.



The coolant surge tank pressure cap can be removed when the cooling system, including the surge tank pressure cap and upper radiator hose, is no longer hot.

1. Turn the pressure cap slowly anticlockwise. If a hiss is heard, wait for that to stop. A hiss means there is still some pressure left.
2. Keep turning the pressure cap slowly and remove it.
3. Fill the coolant surge tank with a 50/50 mixture of clean, drinkable water and DexCool to the area pointed to on the front of the coolant surge tank.
4. With the coolant surge tank pressure cap off, start the engine and let it run until you can feel the upper radiator hose getting hot. Watch out for the engine cooling fans.

   By this time, the coolant level inside the coolant surge tank may be lower. If the level is lower, add more coolant mixture to the coolant surge tank until the level reaches the mark pointed to on the front of the coolant surge tank.
5. Replace the pressure cap tightly.

Caution

If the pressure cap is not tightly installed, coolant loss and engine damage may occur. Be sure the cap is properly and tightly secured.

Engine Overheating

The vehicle has an engine coolant temperature gauge on the instrument cluster and overheat messages in the Driver Information Centre (DIC) to warn of engine

overheating. See *Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge* ⇨ *96*. The DIC also displays overheat messages.

The decision may be made not to lift the bonnet when the engine coolant temperature gauge is in the overheat zone or an engine overheat DIC message displays, but instead to get service help right away.

If the decision to lift the bonnet is made, make sure the vehicle is parked on a level surface. Then check to see if the engine cooling fan is running. If the engine is overheating, the fan should be running. If it is not, do not continue to run the engine. Have the vehicle serviced.

Caution

Do not run the engine if there is a leak in the engine cooling system. This can cause a loss of all coolant and can damage the system and vehicle. Have any leaks fixed right away.

If Steam is Coming from the Engine Compartment

⚠ Warning

Steam and scalding liquids from a hot cooling system are under pressure. Turning the pressure cap, even a little, can cause them to come out at high speed and you could be burned. Never turn the cap when the cooling system, including the pressure cap, is hot. Wait for the cooling system and pressure cap to cool.

If No Steam is Coming from the Engine Compartment

If an engine overheat warning is displayed but no steam can be seen or heard, the problem may not be too serious. Sometimes the engine can get a little too hot when the vehicle:

- Climbs a long hill on a hot day.
- Stops after high-speed driving.
- Idles for long periods in traffic.
- Tows a trailer.

If the engine coolant temperature gauge is in the overheat zone and an overheat DIC message is displayed with no sign of steam:

1. Turn the air conditioning off.
2. Turn the heater on to the highest temperature and to the highest fan speed. Open the windows as necessary.
3. When it is safe to do so, pull off the road, shift to P (Park) or N (Neutral), and let the engine idle.

If the engine coolant temperature gauge is no longer in the overheat zone or an overheat DIC message no longer displays, the vehicle can be driven. Continue to drive the vehicle slowly for about 10 minutes. Keep a safe distance from the vehicle in front. If the engine coolant temperature gauge does not go back to the overheat zone or an overheat DIC message does not display, continue to drive normally and have the cooling system checked for proper fill and function.

If the engine coolant temperature gauge is still in the overheat zone or an overheat DIC message still displays, pull over, stop, and park the vehicle right away. If overheat messages appear repeatedly, see your dealer.

If there is no sign of steam, idle the engine for three minutes while parked. If the engine coolant temperature gauge is still in the overheat zone or an overheat DIC message displays, turn off the engine until it cools down.

Washer Fluid

The washer fluid reservoir supplies fluid to the front windscreen and rear window washers.

Check the level regularly.

Adding Washer Fluid



1. Open the cap with the washer symbol on it. See *Engine Compartment Overview* ⇨ *276* for reservoir location.
2. Add clean water mixed with the correct amount of washer fluid additive. Refer to a Holden dealer

   Do not use ordinary soap or detergent as they froth up and damage the wiper blades.
3. Secure the cap.

Brakes

The disc brake pads have built-in wear indicators that make a high-pitched warning sound when the brake pads are worn and new pads are needed. The sound can come and go, or can be heard all the time when the vehicle is moving, except when applying the brake pedal firmly.

Have the brakes serviced as soon as possible.

Some driving conditions or climates can cause a brake squeal when the brakes are first applied or lightly applied. This does not mean something is wrong with the brakes.

Brake Fluid

Note

For manual transmission vehicles, the brake fluid reservoir is also used for the hydraulic clutch system.

⚠ Warning

Clutch/brake fluid is poisonous and corrosive and will damage the paint finish of the vehicle if spilt.

Checking the Brake Fluid Level

The brake fluid reservoir is located in the engine compartment. See *Engine Compartment Overview* ⇨ *276*.

Check the brake fluid reservoir weekly.

The level should be between the **MIN** and **MAX** area.

If the fluid level is correct, do not remove the reservoir cap, as brake fluid exposed to the atmosphere will quickly absorb moisture.

Adding Brake Fluid

Only use the specified brake fluid. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants* ⇨ *324*.

1. Turn the ignition off.
2. Wipe the sides of the cap clean.
3. Rotate anticlockwise to remove.
4. Top up with specified brake fluid.

⚠ Warning

Using brake fluid other than GM recommended brake fluid may cause corrosion to components of the braking system and reduced braking performance.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Use only new brake fluid. Use of old, used or inferior brake fluid may endanger the functioning of the brake system.

5. Secure the cap and clean up any spilt fluid.

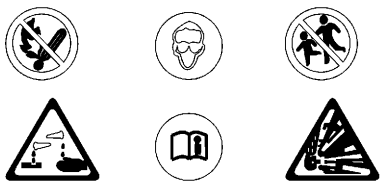
If the brake fluid requires regular topping up, contact a Holden Dealer immediately.

Battery

The original equipment battery is maintenance-free. Do not remove the cap and do not add fluid.

This vehicle has an Absorbed Glass Mat (AGM) 12-volt battery. Installation of a standard 12-volt battery will result in reduced 12-volt battery life. Refer to the replacement number shown on the original battery label when a new battery is needed.

When using a 12-volt battery charger on the 12-volt AGM battery, some chargers have an AGM battery setting on the charger. If available, use the AGM setting on the charger, to limit charge voltage to 14.8 volts.



⚠ Warning

Do not use a match or flame near a vehicle's battery. If you need more light, use a flashlight.

Do not smoke near a vehicle's battery.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

When working around a vehicle's battery, shield your eyes with protective glasses.

Keep children away from vehicle batteries.

⚠ Warning

Batteries have acid that can burn you and gas that can explode. You can be hurt badly if you are not careful.

Follow instructions carefully when working around a battery.

Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds which can cause cancer and reproductive harm. Wash hands after handling.

Vehicle Storage

Infrequent Usage: Remove the black, negative (-) cable from the battery to keep the battery from running down.

Extended Storage: Remove the black, negative (-) cable from the battery or use a battery trickle charger.

All-Wheel Drive

Transfer Case

Under normal driving conditions, transfer case fluid does not require maintenance unless there is a fluid leak or unusual noise. If required, have the transfer case serviced by your dealer.

Wiper Blade Replacement

Windscreen wiper blades should be inspected for wear and cracks.

Replacement blades come in different types and are removed in different ways.

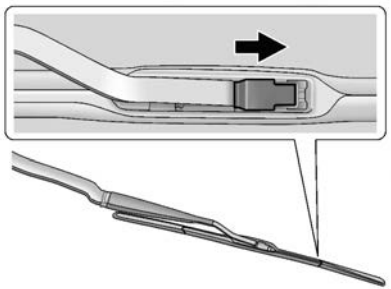
Caution

Allowing the wiper arm to touch the windscreen when no wiper blade is installed could damage the windscreen. Any damage that occurs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Do not allow the wiper arm to touch the windscreen.

Front Wiper Blade Replacement

To replace the wiper blade:

1. Pull the wiper assembly away from the windscreen.



2. Lift up on the latch in the middle of the wiper blade where the wiper arm attaches.
3. With the latch open, pull the wiper blade down toward the windscreen far enough to release it from the J-hooked end of the wiper arm.
4. Remove the wiper blade.
5. Reverse Steps 1–3 for wiper blade replacement.

Rear Wiper Blade Replacement

The rear wiper blade and wiper arm have a cover for protection.

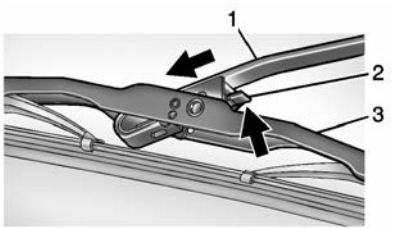
To remove the cover:



1. Slide a plastic tool under the cover and push upward to unsnap.
2. Slide the cover toward the wiper blade tip to unhook it from the blade assembly.
3. Remove the cover.
4. After wiper blade replacement, ensure that the cover hook slides into the slot in the blade assembly.
5. Snap the cover down to secure.

To replace the wiper blade:

1. Lift the wiper arm away from the windscreen.



2. Push the release lever (2) to disengage the hook and push the wiper arm (1) out of the blade assembly (3).
3. Push the new blade assembly securely on the wiper arm until the release lever clicks into place.

Bulb Replacement

For the correct type of replacement bulb, or to change a bulb not listed in this section, contact your dealer.

Halogen Bulbs

⚠ Warning

Halogen bulbs have pressurised gas inside and can burst if you drop or scratch the bulb. You or others could be injured. Be sure to read and follow the instructions on the bulb package.

High Intensity Discharge (HID) Lighting

⚠ Warning

The High Intensity Discharge (HID) lighting system operates at a very high voltage. If you try to service any of the system

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

components, you could be seriously injured. Have your dealer or a qualified technician service them.

For replacement of an HID headlight bulb contact your dealer.

Note

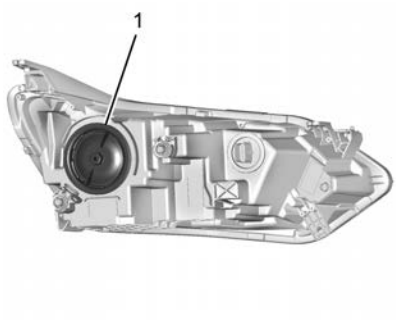
After an HID headlamp bulb has been replaced, the beam might be a slightly different shade than it was originally. This is normal.

LED Lighting

This vehicle has several LED lamps. For replacement of any LED lighting assembly, contact your dealer.

Headlamps

Halogen headlamp shown.



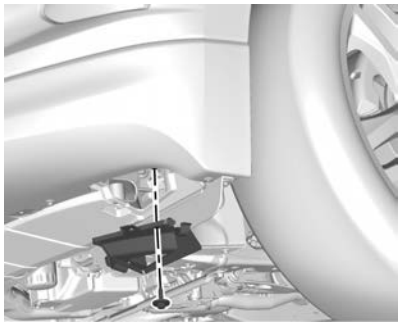
1. Headlamp

To replace a headlamp bulb:

1. Open the bonnet. See *Bonnet* ⇨ *274*.
2. If desired, to provide greater access:
   - For the driver side, remove the battery cover.
   - For the passenger side, remove the air cleaner cover.
3. Remove the cover from the back of the headlamp assembly by turning it anticlockwise.

4. Disconnect the electrical connector.
5. Remove the bulb from the lamp assembly by turning it anticlockwise.
6. Install a new bulb in the lamp assembly.
7. Connect the electrical connector.
8. Replace the cover from the back of the headlamp assembly by turning it clockwise.
9. If removed, reinstall the battery cover or the air cleaner cover.

Front Turn Signal and Fog Lamps

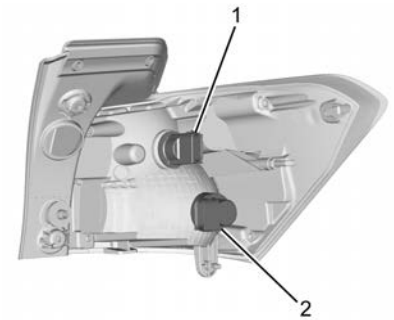


Driver Side Shown, Passenger Side Similar

To replace one of these lamps:

1. Remove the fastener to remove the access panel.
2. Access the lamp through the hole in the under-body air deflector.
3. Disconnect the electrical connector from the bulb assembly.
4. Turn the bulb socket anticlockwise and pull the bulb straight out of the socket.
5. Replace the bulb and reverse Steps 1–4 to reinstall.

Taillamps



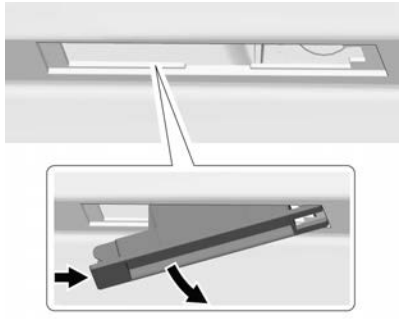
1. Turn Signal
2. Stop lamp/Tail lamp

To replace one of these lamps:

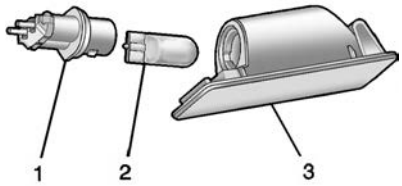
1. Open the liftgate. See *Liftgate* ⇨ *33*.
2. Remove the two screw covers from the tail lamp assembly.

3. Remove the two screws securing the tail lamp assembly.
4. Pull the tail lamp assembly out of the vehicle body.
5. Disconnect the lamp wiring harness.
6. Turn the bulb socket anticlockwise and pull it out.
7. Pull the bulb straight out of the socket.
8. Install the new bulb.
9. Push the bulb socket in and turn it clockwise.
10. Reverse steps 2–5 to reinstall the lamp assembly.

Licence Plate Lamp



Lamp Assembly



Bulb Assembly

1. Bulb Socket
2. Bulb
3. Lamp Assembly

To replace one of these bulbs:

1. Open the liftgate partway. See *Liftgate* ⇨ *33*.
2. Push the lamp assembly outboard to remove.
3. Pull the lamp assembly down to remove it from the liftgate.
4. Turn the bulb socket (1) anticlockwise to remove it from the lamp assembly (3).
5. Pull the bulb (2) straight out of the bulb socket (1).
6. Push the replacement bulb straight into the bulb socket and turn the bulb socket clockwise to install it into the lamp assembly.
7. Push the lamp assembly into the liftgate engaging the clip side first.
8. Push on the lamp side opposite the clip until the lamp assembly snaps into place.

Electrical System

Fuses and Circuit Breakers

The vehicle's electrical wiring circuits are protected from short circuits by a combination of fuses and circuit breakers. This greatly reduces the chance of damage caused by electrical problems.

⚠ Danger

Fuses and circuit breakers are marked with their ampere rating. Do not exceed the specified amperage rating when replacing fuses and circuit breakers. Use of an oversized fuse or circuit breaker can result in a vehicle fire. You and others could be seriously injured or killed.

To check a fuse, inspect the silver-coloured metal band inside the fuse. If the band is broken or melted, replace the fuse. Replace a blown fuse with a new one of the identical size and rating.

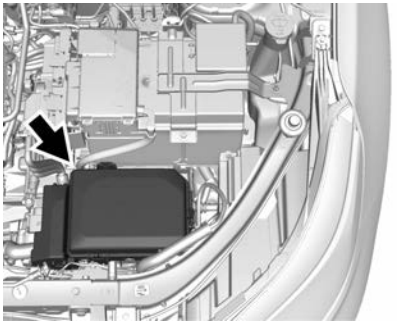
Note

Spare fuses are provided in the engine compartment fuse panel. Replace any used fuse as soon as possible.

In an emergency if a fuse is blown, fuses of the same amperage can be temporarily borrowed from another fuse location. Replace the fuse as soon as possible.

There is a fuse puller in the engine compartment fuse panel which can be used to remove fuses from the fuse panel.

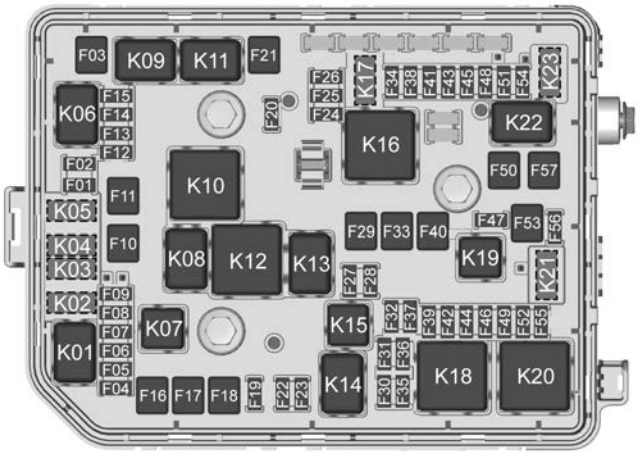
Engine Compartment Fuse Block



To remove the fuse panel cover, squeeze the clips on the cover and lift it straight up. See *Engine Compartment Overview* ⇨ *276*.

Caution

Spilling liquid on any electrical component on the vehicle may damage it. Always keep the covers on any electrical component.



Note
The vehicle may not be equipped with all of the fuses, relays, and features shown.

Fuses	Usage
F01	Wash Pump
F02	Air Conditioning Clutch
F03	Starter Solenoid
F04	Automatic Headlamp Levelling
F05	Left High-beam Headlamp
F06	Right High-beam Headlamp
F07	Vacuum Pump
F08	Horn
F09	-
F10	-
F11	– / Diesel fuel heater
F12	Fuel injectors–even
F13	Fuel injectors–odd
F14	Lambda sensor 2
F15	Lambda sensor 1
F16	-
F17	-
F18	Front wiper
F19	Front wiper speed control
F20	Engine control module
F21	Starter solenoid 2
F22	Right Low-beam Headlamp
F23	Left Low-beam Headlamp
F24	Engine control module

Fuses	Usage
F25	-
F26	Transmission control module
F27	Front Fog Lamps
F28	-
F29	Shift Control
F30	Heated Steering Wheel
F31	Engine Control Module / Transmission Control Module
F32	Transmission Range Control Module
F33	Antilock Brakes
F34	FlexFuel Sensor
F35	Australia Trailer Tow
F36	Variable Functions
F37	Motorised headlamp
F38	– / NOx soot sensor (diesel only)
F39	Fuel Pump

Fuses	Usage
F40	LD Trailer
F41	– / Selective catalytic reduction module (diesel only)
F42	Interior Rear View Mirror
F43	-
F44	Passenger side Ventilated Seat
F45	Canister vent solenoid
F46	Driver side Ventilated Seat
F47	-
F48	Fuel System
F49	Column Lock Assembly
F50	DC DC converter 2
F51	Front Heated Seats
F52	-
F53	Rear Window Demister

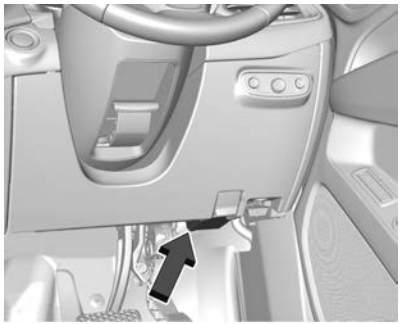
Fuses	Usage
F54	Afterboil pump
F55	Mirror Defroster
F56	Rear Wiper
F57	Antilock Brake Pump

Relays	Usage
K01	High-beam headlamps
*K02	Horn
*K03	Horn
*K04	Front Washer Pump
*K05	Rear Washer Pump
K06	Air Conditioning Control
K07	Headlamp Wash Pump
K08	Front Wiper speed
K09	Starter Solenoid
K10	– / Fuel heater (diesel only)
K11	Starter Solenoid

Relays	Usage
K12	Transmission Oil Pump
K13	-
K14	Headlamps / Daytime running lamps
K15	Fog lamps
K16	Engine Control Module
*K17	Selective catalytic reduction (diesel only)
K18	Run/Crank
K19	Fuel pump
K20	Rear Window Demister
*K21	Rear Wiper Control
*K22	Front Wiper Control
*K23	Coolant pump

* PCB relays. These are built-in and are not serviceable.

Instrument Panel Fuse Block



The instrument panel fuse panel is located under the instrument panel on the driver side.

To access the fuses, press the tab on each end of the fuse box and remove the cover.

To reinstall the cover, align the tabs and press the cover in place. Ensure it clips-in securely.

Note

The vehicle may not be equipped with all of the fuses, relays and features shown.



Fuses	Usage
F01	DC AC inverter
F02	Front windows
F03	Trailer brake
F04	Heating, ventilation, and air conditioning blower
F05	Body control module 2
F06	Cyber security
F07	-
F08	Body control module 3
F09	Amplifier
F10	-
F11	-
F12	-
F13	-
F14	Electronic shifter
F15	Transmission control module
F16	Front heated seats 1
F17	Left data link connector
F18	Body control module 7
F19	Exterior mirror fold
F20	Body control module 1
F21	Body control module 4
F22	Body control module 6
F23	Electric steering column lock
F24	Sensing and diagnostic module
F25	Occupancy sensor
F26	-
F27	Power seats
F28	Rear windows
F29	-
F30	Front heated seats switch
F31	Steering wheel controls
F32	Body control module 8
F33	Heating, ventilation, and air conditioning
F34	Passive entry, passive start
F35	Liftgate latch
F36	Shift charger
F37	Cigarette lighter
F38	OnStar
F39	Instrument panel USB
F40	Camera module/ Liftgate module
F41	Parking assist module
F42	Radio

Relays	Usage
K01	Deadbolt

Relays	Usage
K02	Retained accessory power
K03	Liftgate
K04	-
K05	Logistics

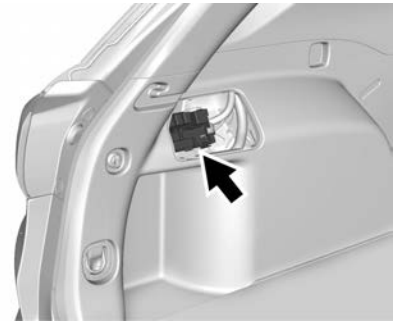
Circuit Breakers	Usage
CB1	Front auxiliary power outlet
CB2	Auxiliary power outlet console

Rear Fuse Panel

The rear fuse panel is behind the side trim in the rear compartment.

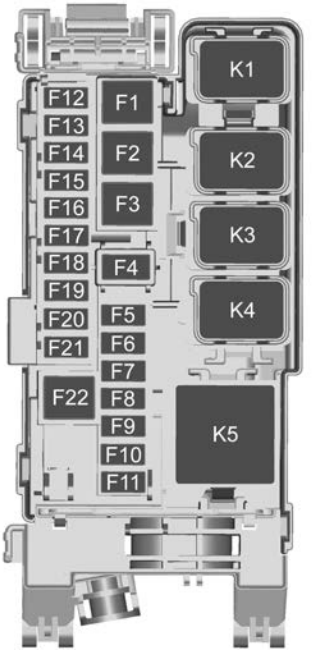


To access the fuse panel, carefully release the upper edge and remove the trim plate.



Note

The vehicle may not be equipped with all of the fuses, relays and features shown.



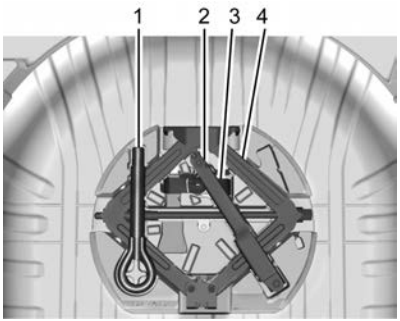
Fuses	Usage
F1	Exhaust fuel heater
F2	Liftgate
F3	Trailer auxiliary power
F4	Power seats
F5	Memory seat module
F6	Sunroof
F7	Side blind spot alert
F8	Trailer reverse lamps
F9	Rear heated seat 1
F10	Parking assist
F11	Rear heated seat 2
F12	-
F13	Trailer park lamp
F14	Right trailer turn signal lamp
F15	Left park lamp
F16	Right park lamp
F17	-
F18	Left trailer turn signal lamp
F19	All-wheel drive
F20	Lumbar
F21	Rear auxiliary power outlet
F22	Rear drive unit

Relays	Usage
K1	Right trailer brake lamp / Turn signal lamp
K2	Trailer reverse lamps
K3	Left trailer brake lamp / Turn signal lamp
K4	Park lamps
K5	Selective catalytic reduction (SCR) (diesel only)

Vehicle Tools

Tools

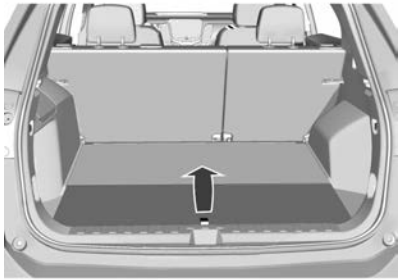
The jack and tools are stored below the spare tyre.



1. Tow Eye
2. Wheel Wrench
3. Strap
4. Jack

To access the spare tyre and tools:

1. Open the liftgate. See *Liftgate* ⇨ *33*.



2. Fold the rear part of the load floor to the front.
3. Pull the load floor rearward to disengage the retaining clips and lift upward to remove.
4. Pull the rear edge of the spare tyre cover forward and then upward to remove it.
5. Turn the spare tyre retainer nut anticlockwise and remove the spare tyre. Place the spare tyre next to the tyre being changed.
6. Remove the jack and tools from their container and place them near the tyre being changed.

Wheels and Tyres

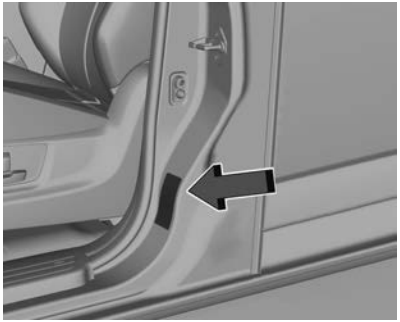
Tyres

Tyre and Rim Condition

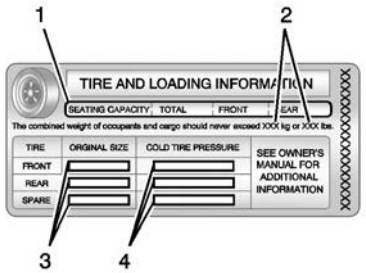
- To avoid tyre and rim damage and possible tyre blow-out, do not drive over sharp edges.
- Drive over edges slowly and at right angles, if possible.
- When parking, ensure the tyres are not pressed against the edge of the kerb.
- Check the tyres regularly for damage, stones, punctures, cuts, cracks, bulges, etc. Also check the rims for damage. Contact a dealer if in doubt.

Tyre Pressure

Keep the tyres at the recommended pressures to avoid increased fuel consumption, uneven and premature tyre wear.



The correct pressures for tyres are shown on the tyre placard on the front passenger door frame and also in the tyre pressure table. See *Tyre Pressure* ⇨ *331*.



1. Seating capacity
2. Maximum vehicle capacity weight
3. Original tyre size
4. Cold inflation pressures

Note

- Tyre pressure should be checked when the tyres are cold, as tyre pressure will increase as the tyres warm up.
- Check the air pressure of the tyres (including the spare) weekly, to ensure occupant safety, as well as reducing fuel consumption and increasing the life of the tyres.
- Check pressures when the vehicle has not been driven for over 3 hours. If tyre pressures must be checked immediately after driving more than 2 km, increase tyre placard pressure by 10%.
- Use a tyre pressure gauge to check the tyres. Simply looking at the tyres is not sufficient.
- Replace any valve dust caps or extensions.
- Check the condition of the tyre tread and inspect for stones or abnormal wear.
- For constant long distance or rough road driving, daily checking is recommended.

Tread Depth



Replace the tyres when:

- They are worn to the point where the tread indicators appear.

  The tyres originally fitted to the vehicle have built-in tread indicators. When only 1.5 mm of tread remains, these indicators show as plain bars across the tread pattern at regular intervals around the tyre.
- The tread or sidewall is cut, split, or cracked deep enough to expose the cord or fabric.

- The tyre has a bump or bulge in it, indicating some kind of internal damage.
- The tyre has a puncture, cut or other damage which cannot be repaired because of the size or location of the damage.
- The cord or fabric is showing.

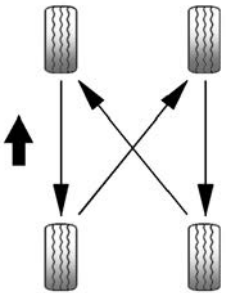
⚠ Warning

Do not attempt to drive on a flat tyre more than is necessary to stop safely. Driving even a short distance can damage the tyre and wheel beyond repair. Tyres which have been repaired or retreaded are not capable of being driven safely at high speeds. Therefore, their use is not recommended.

Tyre Rotation

It is recommended that you rotate tyres at every scheduled maintenance service.

Driving conditions, driving techniques, vehicle loading and weather may warrant more frequent tyre checks and rotation.



Front and rear tyres can wear differently depending on:

- Types of roads driven on
- Driving habits
- Tyre pressures
- Wheel alignment and balance

New tyres should be fitted in pairs to the front. If replacing only one tyre, pair it on the same axle with the least worn of the other three.

Buying New Tyres

Refer to the tyre placard on the vehicle for tyre size and load rating.

Using a different size or type of tyre may affect:

- Ride
- Handling
- Speedometer accuracy
- Vehicle ground clearance
- Vehicle payload capacity
- Maximum vehicle speed
- Tyre clearance
- Tyre chain clearance

Tyres with heavy treads and those made for better grip in the wet, should only be operated within the limits recommended by the manufacturer.

Tyres with a higher speed or load rating are acceptable, provided they are fitted to a suitable rim size.

⚠ Warning

Tyres with a lower speed or load rating are NOT acceptable for fitment to the vehicle.

Replacing the factory fitted wheels and tyres with non-genuine wheels and tyres may affect the New Vehicle Voluntary Warranty as well as the vehicle's insurance policy.

Contact a Holden Dealer for advice on suitable tyres.

Wheel Alignment and Tyre Balance

Improper wheel alignment or balance can cause:

- Tyres to wear fast and unevenly
- The vehicle to pull to one side
- Vibration

If any of these problems exists, have the vehicle checked by a Holden Dealer.

Tyre condition is checked when the vehicle is serviced by a Holden Dealer. They are able to diagnose any unusual signs of wear. If tyres are rotated, it is recommended that balance be checked at the same time.

Tyre Chains

⚠ Warning

Tyre Chains are only permitted on front tyres of size; 225/65R17.

- Use low profile chains that add no more than 12mm thickness to the tyre tread and inner sidewall.
- Use chains that are the correct size for the tyres.
- Install the chains on the tyres of the front axle only.
- Drive slowly and follow the chain manufacturer's instructions.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

- If the chains contact the vehicle, stop and re-tighten them. If the contact continues, slow down until it stops. Driving too fast or spinning the wheels with chains on will damage the vehicle.
- Chains must not be fitted to a compact / temporary spare tyre.
- Check the tyres are inflated to the correct pressure. See *Tyre Pressure* ⇨ *331*

When using tyre chains the Traction Control System (TCS) and Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system may engage. Only disable the TCS and ESC if it is safe to do so. See *Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control* ⇨ *234*.

Tyre Changing

⚠ Warning

All passengers must be out of the vehicle when it is being jacked.

Do not jack a vehicle with a trailer attached. Remove the trailer first.

Only jack the vehicle on hard, level surfaces.

Ensure moving parts of the jack are adequately lubricated before use.

Use the jack only at the designated lifting points. Use in other locations may result in the vehicle falling off the jack, or damage to the vehicle.

If using a jack (or hoist) other than the jack supplied with the vehicle, see “Trolley jack or vehicle hoist” later in this section.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Do not start or run the engine while the vehicle is supported by the jack.

Use the jack only for lifting the vehicle when changing wheels.

Do not get under a vehicle that is supported by a jack. No person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.

The vehicle has a steel spare wheel. Drive carefully and do not exceed 80 km/h as the tyre size is different to the other types on the vehicle.

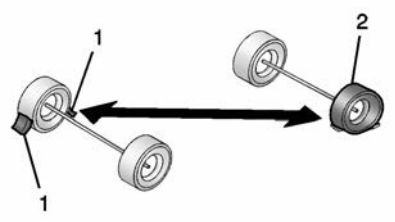
Although the spare tyre was fully inflated when the vehicle was new, it can lose air over time. Check the inflation pressure regularly.

(Continued)

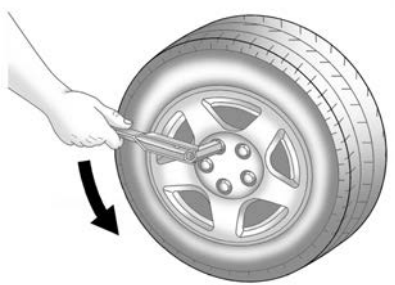
Warning (Continued)

After installing the spare tyre on the vehicle, stop as soon as possible to check the inflation pressure is correct. Have the flat tyre repaired or replaced and installed back on the vehicle as soon as possible.

1. Park the vehicle on a hard, level surface in a safe location.
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Switch the hazard warning flashers on.
4. Turn the ignition off and remove the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter from the vehicle.
5. Place a manual transmission vehicle in R (Reverse), or an automatic transmission vehicle in P (Park).



6. Chock the wheel diagonally opposite (1) the flat tyre (2) with a suitable solid object.
7. Remove the spare tyre, jack and tools from the vehicle. See *Tools* ⇨ *302*.

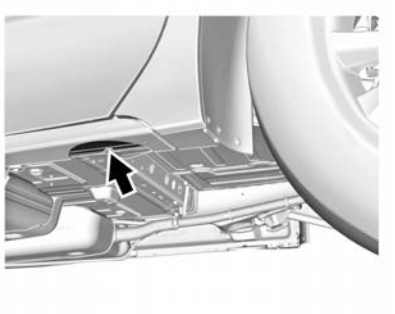


8. Turn the wheel wrench anticlockwise to loosen all the wheel nuts. Do not remove them yet.

⚠ Warning

Failure to position the jack as described could cause the vehicle to slip off the jack.

Do not get under a vehicle that is supported by a jack. No person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.



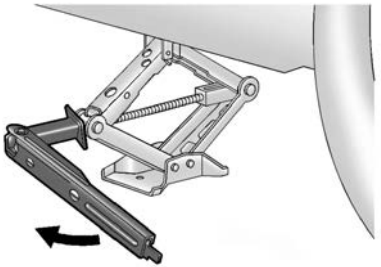
9. Position the jack lift head at the jack location nearest the flat tyre:



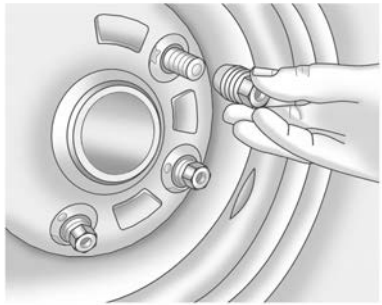
Locate the notch on the sheet metal weld flange. Place the centre of the jack lift head on the centre of the sheet metal notch.

The jack must not be used in any other position.

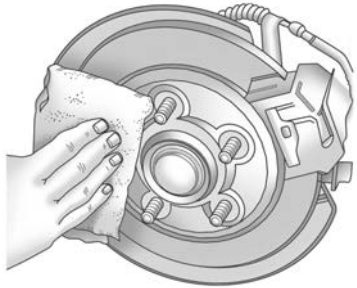
10. Attach the wheel wrench to the jack.



11. Raise the vehicle by turning the wheel wrench clockwise. Raise the vehicle far enough off the ground so there is enough room for the tyre to clear the ground.



12. Remove all of the wheel nuts.
13. Remove the flat tyre.



14. Remove any corrosion or dirt from the wheel bolts, mounting surfaces, and spare wheel.
15. Place the compact spare tyre on the wheel-mounting surface.
16. Reinstall the wheel nuts. Tighten each nut by hand until the wheel is held against the hub.
17. Partially lower the vehicle by turning the jack handle anticlockwise.



18. Tighten the wheel nuts firmly in a criss-cross sequence, as shown.

19. Lower the jack all the way and remove the jack from under the vehicle.
20. Tighten the wheel nuts as tight as possible with the wheel wrench.

⚠ Warning

As soon as possible after changing a wheel, have the wheel nuts tightened with a torque wrench to 140 N•m (Newton metres).

Wheel nuts must be tightened evenly to the correct torque in the sequence shown, as wheel nuts which have not been tightened properly could eventually allow the wheel to come off while the vehicle is moving.

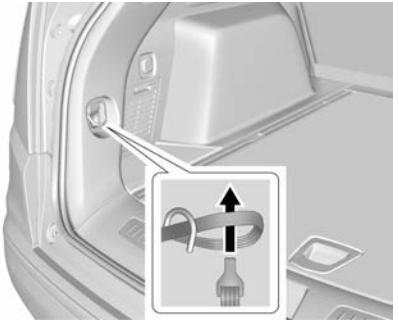
Storing a Flat Tyre

⚠ Warning

Storing a jack, a tyre, or other equipment in the passenger compartment of the vehicle could cause injury. In a sudden stop or collision, loose equipment could strike someone. Store all these in the proper place.

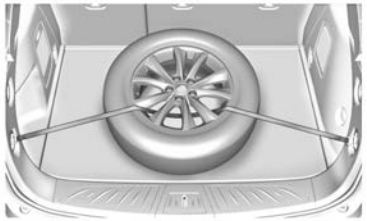
To store the flat tyre:

1. Return the jack and tools to their original storage location, except for the strap.
2. Replace the load floor.
3. Place the flat tyre, lying flat, in the rear storage compartment.



4. Route the loop end of the strap through one of the cargo tie-downs in the rear of the vehicle.

   Then route the hook through the loop and pull the strap to tighten it around the cargo tie-down.
5. Route the hook end of the strap through the wheel.
6. Attach one end of the strap to a cargo tie-down in the rear of the vehicle.



7. Route the strap through the wheel, as shown.
8. Attach the other end of the strap to the other cargo tie-down in the rear of the vehicle.
9. Tighten the strap

The compact spare is for temporary use only. Replace the compact spare tyre with a full-size tyre as soon as possible.

Compact Spare Tyre

The compact spare tyre is designed for temporary use only.

The vehicle will perform differently with the spare tyre installed and it is recommended the vehicle speed be limited to 80 km/h.

Have the standard tyre repaired or replaced as soon as convenient and return the spare tyre to the storage area.

When using a compact spare tyre, the AWD (if equipped), ABS, and Traction Control systems may engage until the spare tyre is recognised by the vehicle, especially on slippery roads. Adjust driving to reduce possible wheel slip.

Do not use the compact spare on other vehicles.

Do not mix the compact spare tyre or wheel with other wheels or tyres. They will not fit. Keep the spare tyre and its wheel together.

Caution
Tyre chains will not fit the compact spare. Using them can damage the vehicle and the chains. Do not use tyre chains on the compact spare.

Jump Starting

For more information about the vehicle battery, see *Battery* ⇨ *290*.

If the battery has discharged, use another vehicle and some jumper cables to start your vehicle. The following steps must be followed to do it safely.

⚠ Warning

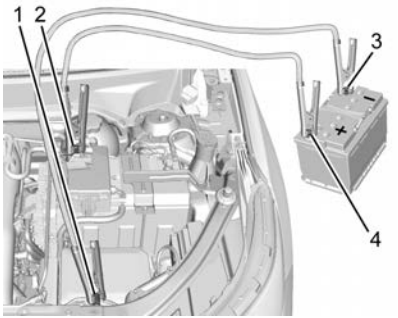
Batteries can hurt you. They can be dangerous because:

- They contain acid that can burn you.
- They contain gas that can explode or ignite.
- They contain enough electricity to burn you.

If you do not follow these steps exactly, some or all of these things can hurt you.

Caution

Ignoring these steps could result in costly damage to the vehicle that would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Trying to start the vehicle by pushing or pulling it will not work, and it could damage the vehicle.



1. Discharged Battery Negative Earthing Stud
2. Discharged Battery Positive Terminal
3. Good Battery Negative Terminal
4. Good Battery Positive Terminal

The jump start negative earthing stud (1) for the discharged battery is to the left of the windscreen washer fluid reservoir.

The jump start positive terminal on the discharged battery (2) is in the engine compartment on the passenger side of the vehicle.

The jump start positive terminal (3) and negative terminal (4) are on the battery of the vehicle providing the jump start.

The positive jump start connection for the discharged battery is under a trim cover. Open the cover to expose the terminal.

1. Check the other vehicle. It must have a 12-volt battery with a negative ground system.

Caution

If the other vehicle does not have a 12-volt system with a negative ground, both vehicles can be damaged. Only use a vehicle that has a 12-volt system with a negative ground for jump starting.

2. Position the two vehicles so that they are not touching.
3. Set the parking brake firmly and put the shift lever in P (Park) for an automatic transmission, or N (Neutral) for a manual transmission.

Caution

If any accessories are left on or plugged in during the jump starting procedure, they could be damaged. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Whenever possible, turn off or unplug all accessories on either vehicle when jump starting.

4. Turn the ignition to off. Turn off all lights and accessories in both vehicles, except the hazard warning flashers if needed.

⚠ Warning

An electric fan can start up even when the engine is not running and can injure you. Keep hands, clothing, and tools away from any under bonnet electric fan.

⚠ Warning

Using a match near a battery can cause battery gas to explode. People have been hurt doing this, and some have been blinded. Use a torch if you need more light.

Battery fluid contains acid that can burn you. Do not get it on you. If you accidentally get it in

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

your eyes or on your skin, flush the place with water and get medical help immediately.

⚠ Warning

Fans or other moving engine parts can injure you badly. Keep your hands away from moving parts once the engine is running.

5. Connect one end of the red positive (+) cable to the positive (+) terminal on the discharged battery.
6. Connect the other end of the red positive (+) cable to the positive (+) terminal of the good battery.
7. Connect one end of the black negative (–) cable to the negative (–) terminal of the good battery.

8. Connect the other end of the black negative (–) cable to the negative (–) earthing stud for the discharged battery.
9. Start the engine in the vehicle with the good battery and run the engine at idle speed for at least four minutes.
10. Start the vehicle with the discharged battery.
    - If it will not start after a few tries, the battery may need replacement.
    - If it does start, allow it to idle for several minutes and then remove the jumper cables as described below.

Jumper Cable Removal

Caution
If the jumper cables are connected or removed in the wrong order, electrical shorting may occur and damage the vehicle. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Always connect and remove the jumper cables in the correct order, making sure that the cables do not touch each other or other metal.

Reverse the sequence exactly when removing the jumper cables.

Towing the Vehicle

Caution
Incorrectly towing a disabled vehicle may cause damage. The damage would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Do not lash or hook to suspension components. Use the proper straps around the tyres to secure the vehicle.

Use only a flatbed tow truck for towing a disabled vehicle. Never use a sling type lift or damage will occur. Use ramps to help reduce approach angles if necessary. A towed vehicle should have its drive wheels off the ground.

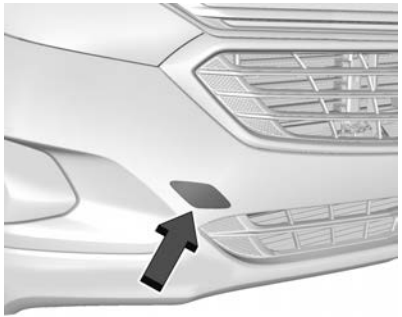
Consult a professional towing service if the disabled vehicle must be towed.

The vehicle is equipped with a tow eye. Only use the tow eye to pull the vehicle onto a flatbed car carrier

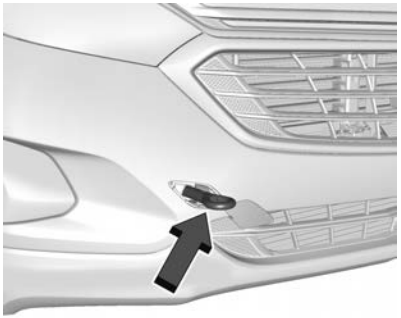
from a flat road surface. Do not use the tow eye to pull the vehicle from snow, mud, or sand.

The tow eye is stored with the spare tyre tools. See *Tools* ⇨ *302*.

Front Tow Eye



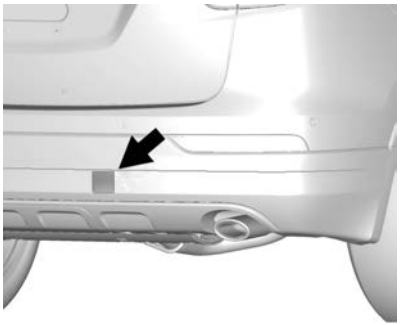
Carefully open the cover by using the small notch.



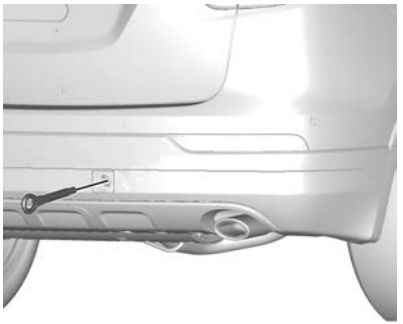
Install the tow eye into the socket and turn it until it is fully tightened.

When the tow eye is removed, reinstall the cover with the notch in the original position.

Rear Tow Eye



Carefully open the cover by using the small notch.



Install the tow eye into the socket and turn it until it is fully tightened.

When the tow eye is removed, reinstall the cover with the notch in the original position.

Appearance Care

Exterior Care

Washing

The paintwork of the vehicle is exposed to environmental influences. Wash and wax regularly. When using automatic vehicle washes, select a programme that includes waxing.

Bird droppings, dead insects, resin, pollen and the like should be cleaned off immediately, as they contain aggressive constituents which can cause paint damage. Failure to do so may result in permanent damage, particularly in hot weather conditions.

Road bloom is a gradual build up of road and environmental grime. This should be removed with a paint cleaner once a year, in addition to normal washing.

If using a vehicle wash, comply with the vehicle wash manufacturer's instructions. Never use an automatic wash that requires anything touching the paint (other than water). The wipers must be switched off. Remove antenna and external accessories such as roof racks etc.

If you wash your vehicle by hand, make sure that the insides of the wheel housings are also thoroughly rinsed out.

Clean edges and folds on opened doors and the bonnet as well as the areas they cover.

Have the door hinges of all doors lubricated by a Holden Dealer.

Caution
Do not clean the engine compartment with a steam-jet or high-pressure jet cleaner.

Thoroughly rinse and chamois off the vehicle. Rinse chamois frequently. Use separate chamois for painted and glass surfaces: remnants of wax on the windows will impair vision.

Do not use hard objects to remove spots of tar. Use tar removal spray on painted surfaces.

Note

For certain body colours, some variation in gloss and colour may exist in the engine bay and on the underside of the vehicle.

⚠ Warning

Take care when moving the vehicle after washing, in case water has affected the brakes. Applying the brakes lightly will indicate whether they have been affected. To dry them quickly, lightly apply the brakes while maintaining a slow forward speed with a clear area ahead, until brake performance returns to normal.

Exterior Lamps

Headlamp and other lamp covers are made of plastic. Do not use any abrasive, solvent based cleaners or caustic agents and do not dry-clean them.

Air Intakes

Clear debris from the air intakes, between the bonnet and windscreen and below the front bumper, when washing the vehicle.

Shutter System



The vehicle may have a shutter system designed to help increase fuel economy. Keep the shutter system clean for proper operation.

Polishing and Waxing

Wax the vehicle regularly (at the latest when water no longer beads).

Polishing is necessary only if the paint has become dull or if solid deposits have become attached to it.

Paintwork polish with silicone forms a protective film, making waxing unnecessary.

Plastic body parts must not be treated with wax or polishing agents.

Windows and Windscreen Wiper Blades

Use a soft lint-free cloth or chamois leather together with window cleaner and insect remover.

- Never use abrasive cleaners to clean glass.
- Refer to a Holden Dealer for windscreen washer additive.

- Old wiper blades can cause windscreen scratching. Regularly inspect and replace them.

Caution
Do not operate the wiper blades by hand as this damages the wiper drive mechanism.

When cleaning the rear window, make sure the heating element inside is not damaged.

Clean smearing wiper blades with a soft cloth and window cleaner.

Wheels and Tyres

Do not use high-pressure jet cleaners.

- Remove oil and grease with soap and water or detergent.
- Do not use petrol to clean tyres.
- Use a good quality tyre and bumper shine if required.
- A good quality wheel cleaner can be used for cleaning alloy wheels.
- Do not use abrasive cleaners.

Door Drain Holes

- Clear drain holes at the bottom of the door panels from dirt and other foreign materials which could trap water inside the panels.
- Clean clogged drain holes with a plastic pin or peg.
- Avoid scratching the paint work.

Paintwork Damage

Rectify minor paintwork damage with a touch-up pen before rust forms.

Have more extensive damage or rust areas repaired by your Holden Dealer.

Caution
Do not spill coolant on the vehicle's exterior surfaces as it can damage the paintwork. If you do, wash it off immediately.

Underbody

Substances can cause rust under the vehicle.

- Hose the underbody with clean water whenever the vehicle is washed.
- Where the vehicle is exposed to heavy concentrations of corrosive materials, inspect and wash the complete underbody at least once each year, preferably after winter exposure.

Interior Care

To prevent dirt particle abrasions, regularly clean the vehicle's interior. Immediately remove any soils. Newspapers or dark garments can transfer colour to the vehicle's interior.

Use a soft bristle brush to remove dust from knobs and crevices on the instrument cluster. Using a mild soap solution, immediately remove hand lotions, sunscreen, and insect repellent from all interior surfaces or permanent damage may result.

Use cleaners specifically designed for the surfaces being cleaned to prevent permanent damage. Apply all cleaners directly to the cleaning cloth. Do not spray cleaners on any switches or controls. Remove cleaners quickly.

Before using cleaners, read and follow all safety instructions on the label. While cleaning the interior, open the doors and windows to get proper ventilation.

To prevent damage, do not clean the interior using the following cleaners or techniques:

- Never use a razor or any other sharp object to remove soil from any interior surface.
- Never use a brush with stiff bristles.
- Never rub any surface aggressively or with too much pressure.
- Do not use laundry detergents or dishwashing soaps with degreasers. A concentrated soap solution will create streaks and attract dirt. Do not use solutions that contain strong or caustic soap.
- Do not heavily saturate the upholstery when cleaning.
- Do not use solvents or cleaners containing solvents.

Interior Glass

To clean, use a terry cloth fabric dampened with water. Wipe droplets left behind with a clean dry cloth. If necessary, use a commercial glass cleaner after cleaning with plain water.

Caution

To prevent scratching, never use abrasive cleaners on automotive glass. Abrasive cleaners or aggressive cleaning may damage the rear window demister.

Cleaning the windscreen with water during the first three to six months of ownership will reduce tendency to fog.

Speaker Covers

Vacuum around a speaker cover gently, so that the speaker will not be damaged. Clean spots with water and mild soap.

Coated Mouldings

Coated mouldings should be cleaned.

- When lightly soiled, wipe with a sponge or soft, lint-free cloth dampened with water.
- When heavily soiled, use warm soapy water.

Fabric/Carpet/Suede

Start by vacuuming the surface using a soft brush attachment. If a rotating vacuum brush attachment is being used, only use it on the floor carpet. Before cleaning, gently remove as much of the soil as possible:

- Gently blot liquids with a paper towel. Continue blotting until no more soil can be removed.
- For solid soils, remove as much as possible prior to vacuuming.

To clean:

1. Saturate a clean, lint-free colourfast cloth with water. Microfibre cloth is recommended to prevent lint transfer to the fabric or carpet.
2. Remove excess moisture by gently wringing until water does not drip from the cleaning cloth.
3. Start on the outside edge of the soil and gently rub toward the centre. Fold the cleaning cloth to a clean area frequently to prevent forcing the soil in to the fabric.
4. Continue gently rubbing the soiled area until there is no longer any colour transfer from the soil to the cleaning cloth.
5. If the soil is not completely removed, use a mild soap solution followed only by plain water.

If the soil is not completely removed, it may be necessary to use a commercial upholstery cleaner or spot lifter. Test a small hidden area for colourfastness before using a commercial upholstery cleaner or spot lifter. If ring formation occurs, clean the entire fabric or carpet.

After cleaning, use a paper towel to blot excess moisture.

High Gloss Surfaces and Information Displays

Use a microfibre cloth on high gloss surfaces or vehicle displays. First, use a soft bristle brush to remove dirt that can scratch the surface. Then gently clean by rubbing with a microfibre cloth. Never use window cleaners or solvents. Periodically hand wash the microfibre cloth separately, using mild soap. Do not use bleach or fabric softener. Rinse thoroughly and air dry before next use.

Caution
Do not attach a device with a suction cup to the display. This may cause damage and would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

Instrument Panel, Leather, Vinyl, Other Plastic Surfaces, Low Gloss Paint Surfaces

Use a soft microfibre cloth dampened with water to remove dust and loose dirt. For a more thorough cleaning, use a soft microfibre cloth dampened with a mild soap solution.

Caution

Soaking or saturating leather, especially perforated leather, as well as other interior surfaces, may cause permanent damage. Wipe excess moisture from these surfaces after cleaning and allow them to dry naturally. Never use heat, steam or spot removers. Do not use cleaners that contain silicone or wax-based products. Cleaners containing these solvents can permanently change the appearance and feel of leather or soft trim, and are not recommended.

Do not use cleaners that increase gloss, especially on the instrument panel. Reflected glare can decrease visibility through the windscreen under certain conditions.

Caution

Use of air fresheners may cause permanent damage to plastics and painted surfaces. If an air freshener comes in contact with any plastic or painted surface in the vehicle, blot immediately and clean with a soft cloth dampened with a mild soap solution. Damage caused by air fresheners would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

Cargo Cover and Convenience Net

Wash with warm water and mild detergent. Do not use chlorine bleach. Rinse with cold water, and then dry completely.

Care of Seat Belts

Keep belts clean and dry.

⚠ Warning

Do not bleach or dye seat belt webbing. It may severely weaken the webbing. In a crash, they might not be able to provide adequate protection. Clean and rinse seat belt webbing only with mild soap and lukewarm water. Allow the webbing to dry.

Floor Mats

⚠ Warning

If a floor mat is the wrong size or is not properly installed, it can interfere with the pedals. Interference with the pedals can cause unintended acceleration and/or increased stopping distance which can cause a crash and injury. Make sure the floor mat does not interfere with the pedals.

The original equipment and Genuine Holden Accessory floor mats are designed for your vehicle. If the floor mats need replacing, it is recommended that Holden approved floor mats be purchased.
Non-genuine floor mats may not fit properly and may interfere with the accelerator or brake pedal. Always check that the floor mats do not interfere with the pedals.

- Do not use a floor mat if the vehicle is not equipped with a floor mat retainer on the driver side floor.
- Use the floor mat with the correct side up. Do not turn it over.
- Do not place anything on top of the driver side floor mat.
- Use only a single floor mat on the driver side.
- Do not place one floor mat on top of another.

Removing and Replacing the Floor Mat



The driver side floor mat is held in place by two retainers.

1. Pull up on the rear of the floor mat to unlock each retainer and remove.
2. Reinstall by lining up the floor mat retainer openings over the carpet retainers and snap into position.
3. Make sure the floor mat is properly secured in place. Verify the floor mat does not interfere with the pedals.

Service and Maintenance

General Information
Service Information 323

Recommended Fluids, Lubricants, and Parts
Recommended Fluids and Lubricants 324

General Information

Service Information

In order to ensure economical and safe vehicle operation and to maintain the value of your vehicle, it is of vital importance that all maintenance work is carried out at the intervals as specified.

See your Service & Warranty Booklet for the service schedules and for more information.

Recommended Fluids, Lubricants, and Parts

Recommended Fluids and Lubricants

Engine Type	1.5L Petrol	2.0L Petrol	1.6L Diesel
Engine oil	5W-30 or 0W-20 dexos (dexos™ 1 Gen 2)		5W-30 dexos (dexos™ 2 Gen 1)
Diesel exhaust fluid	-	-	AdBlue® meeting ISO standard 22241-1 See *AdBlue* ⇨ *223*
Coolant	50% clean fresh water and 50% Dexcool® anti-freeze coolant		
Automatic transmission fluid	Dexron® VI		
Manual transmission fluid	Refer to your dealer		
Differential oil (AWD)	Refer to your dealer		
Transfer case oil (AWD)	Refer to your dealer		
Brake and clutch fluid	DOT 3 hydraulic brake fluid		

Technical Data

Vehicle Identification
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) 325
Engine Identification 325
Identification Plate 326
Service Parts Identification Label 327

Vehicle Data
Engine Data 328
Vehicle Weight 329
Vehicle Dimensions 330
Capacities and Specifications 330
Tyre Pressure 331

Vehicle Identification

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

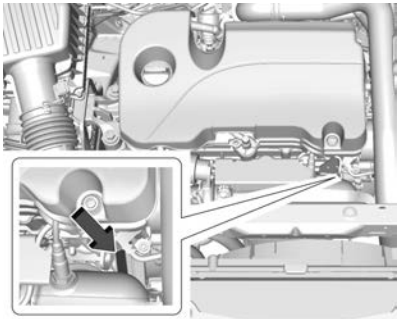


The Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) is stamped on the floor pan, under a cover in the floor covering, in front of the driver's seat.

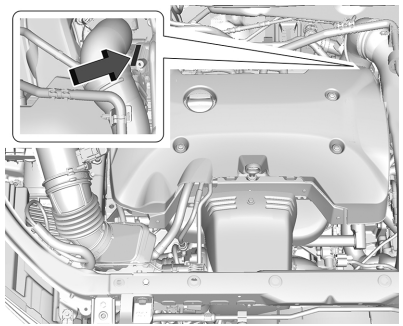
The VIN is also embossed on the instrument panel, visible through the windscreen.

Engine Identification

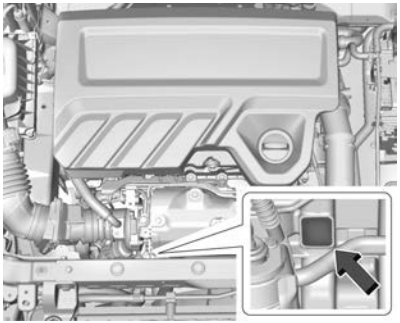
The engine serial number is located in the front part of the engine cylinder block.



1.5 L Petrol Engine



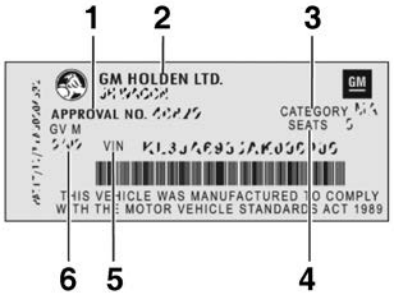
2.0 L Petrol Engine



1.6 L Diesel Engine

A label is also affixed to the engine near the oil filler cap as a secondary means of engine number identification.

Identification Plate



An identification and compliance label is located on the front of the front passenger's door frame.

The label shows:

1 : Approval number

2 : Manufacturer

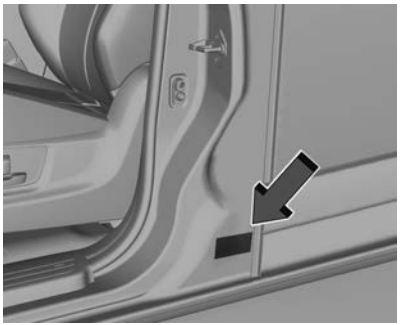
3 : Category

4 : Number of seats

5 : Vehicle identification number

6 : Compliance date

Built Date



An identification label is located on the lower portion of the front passenger's door frame. The label shows the Vehicle Built Date and VIN.

Service Parts Identification Label

There may be a label on the inside of the glove box that contains the following information:

- Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)
- Model designation
- Paint information
- Production options and special equipment

If there is no label, there is a barcode on the certification label on the centre (B) pillar to scan for this same information.

Vehicle Data

Engine Data

Engine type	1.5L Petrol	2.0L Petrol	1.6L Diesel
Engine	1490 cc	1998 cc	1598 cc
Engine power and torque	Refer to holden.com.au		
Fuel type	Petrol		Diesel
Octane rating (RON)*			
Recommended:	Regular unleaded 91	Premium unleaded 95**	Diesel meeting Euro Standard EN590
Possible:	Premium unleaded 95 or higher	Premium unleaded 98	
Ethanol compatibility	E10		—
Biodiesel compatibility	—		B20

*: For further information see *Recommended Fuel* ⇨ *258*.

**: The use of unleaded petrol of regular 91 RON rating may be used where 95 RON is not available, however a small reduction in performance may be noticed.

Vehicle Weight

Overloading is a safety hazard and could also shorten the life of the vehicle.

Maximum Vehicle Carrying Capacity

Seating capacity and maximum vehicle carrying capacity for your vehicle are shown on the tyre placard located on the front passenger door frame. See *Tyre Pressure* **u** *303*.

Note

- The carrying capacity assumes that no accessories are fitted. If accessories are fitted, the carrying capacity must be decreased accordingly.
- Axle limits must not be exceeded. See “Axle Loads” later in this section.

Axle loads

Maximum Front and Rear Axle Loads

Do not exceed the maximum axle loads, including the weight of any options or accessories fitted to the vehicle. Take the roof rack load into account when determining the rear axle load. Weigh at a weighbridge if unsure.

Front Axle Load (kg)	Rear Axle Load (kg)
1175	1200

Vehicle Dimensions

Dimensions (mm)

Variant	Length	Width Excl. Mirrors	Height	Wheelbase	Track: Front	Track: Rear
LS	4652	1843	1661	2725	1580	1581
LT	4652	1843	1661	2725	1576	1577
LTZ FWD	4652	1843	1688	2725	1570	1571
LTZ AWD, LTZ-V	4652	1843	1697	2725	1568	1570

The above figures are based on design dimensions.

Capacities and Specifications

Engine	1.5L Petrol	2.0L Petrol	1.6L Diesel
Engine Oil (Refill incl. filter)	4.0 L	FWD: 4.7 L AWD: 5.7 L	5.0 L
Coolant	6.6 L	7.8 L	7.5 L
AdBlue (Diesel exhaust fluid)	—	—	18.5 L
Fuel Tank	FWD: 55.0 L AWD: 59.0 L		

All capacities are approximate

Tyre Pressure

Tyre Size	Wheel Size and Profile	Recommended Pressure					
		Front		Rear		Spare	
		kPa	PSI	kPa	PSI	kPa	PSI
225/65 R17 SL 102V	17 x 7.0J	240	35	240	35	—	—
225/60 R18 SL 100V	18 x 7.0J	240	35	240	35	—	—
235/50 R19 SL 99V	19 x 7.5J	240	35	240	35	—	—
T125/70 R17 SL 98M	17 x 4.0	—	—	—	—	420	60

Customer Information

Customer Information
Trademarks and Licence Agreements 332
Owner Assistance 342

Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy
Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy 344
Event Data Recorders 344

Customer Information

Trademarks and Licence Agreements

Dexos, Dexron, DexCool

Dexos®, Dexron®, and Dexcool® and their associated logos are registered trademarks of General Motors LLC.

AdBlue

Adblue® is a registered trademark of Verband der Automobilindustrie (VDA).

The *Bluetooth*® word mark and logo are registered trademarks and are owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

Made for iPod iPhone

"Made for iPod," and "Made for iPhone," mean that an electronic accessory has been designed to connect specifically to iPod or iPhone, respectively, and has been certified by the developer to meet Apple performance standards. Apple is not responsible for the operation of this device or its compliance with safety and regulatory standards. Please note that the use of this accessory with iPod or iPhone may affect wireless performance.

iPhone, iPod, iPod classic, iPod nano, iPod shuffle, and iPod touch are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

Android

Android™ is a trademark of Google Inc.

Bose

Bose, AudioPilot, Centrepoint, and Bose Surround are registered trademarks of Bose Corporation in the U.S. and other countries.

DTS

Manufactured under license under U.S.Patent Nos: 5,956,674; 5,974,380; 6,487,535 & other U.S. and worldwide patents issued & pending.

For DTS patents, see http://patents.dts.com. Manufactured under license from DTS Licensing Limited. DTS, the Symbol, & DTS, and the Symbol together are registered trademarks, and DTS 2.0 Channel is a trademark of DTS, Inc. ©DTS, Inc. All Rights Reserved.

Dolby

Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. Dolby and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.

BDA

Blu-ray Disc, Blu-ray, Blu-ray 3D, BD-Live, BONUSVIEW, BDXL, AVCREC, and the logos are trademarks of the Blu-ray Disc Association.

AVCHD

AVCHD and the AVCHD logo are trademarks of Panasonic Corporation and Sony Corporation.

AVCREC

Blu-ray Disc, Blu-ray, Blu-ray 3D, BD-Live, BONUSVIEW, BDXL, AVCREC, and the logos are trademarks of the Blu-ray Disc Association.

Java

Java is a registered trademark of Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Cinavia

Cinavia Notice: This product uses Cinavia technology to limit the use of unauthorised copies of some commercially-produced film and videos and their soundtracks. When a prohibited use of an unauthorised copy is detected, a message will be displayed or copying will be interrupted.

More information about Cinavia technology is provided at the Cinavia Online Consumer Information Centre at http://www.cinavia.com. To request additional information about Cinavia by mail, send a postcard with your mailing address to: Cinavia Consumer Information Centre, P.O. Box 86851, San Diego, CA, 92138, USA.

This product incorporates proprietary technology under license from Verance Corporation and is protected by U.S. Patent 7,369,677 and other U.S. and worldwide patents issued and pending as well as copyright and trade secret protection for certain

aspects of such technology. Cinavia is a trademark of Verance Corporation. Copyright 2004-2015 Verance Corporation. All rights reserved by Verance. Reverse engineering or disassembly is prohibited.

RMVB



Portions of this software are included under license from RealNetworks, Inc. Copyright 1995-2015, RealNetworks, Inc. All rights reserved

Schedule I: Gracenote EULA



Music recognition technology and related data are provided by Gracenote. Gracenote is the industry standard in music recognition technology and related content delivery. For more information visit www.gracenote.com.

Music-related data from Gracenote, Inc., copyright © 2000 to present Gracenote. Gracenote Software, copyright © 2000 to present Gracenote. One or more patents owned by Gracenote may apply to this product and service. See the Gracenote website for a non-exhaustive list of applicable Gracenote patents. Gracenote, CDDB, MusicID, MediaVOCS, the Gracenote logo and logotype, and the "Powered by Gracenote" logo are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Gracenote in the United States and/or other countries.

Gracenote Terms of Use

This application or device contains software from Gracenote, Inc. of Emeryville, California ("Gracenote"). The software from Gracenote (the "Gracenote Software") enables this application to do disc or file identification and obtain music-related information, including name, artist, track, and title information ("Gracenote Data") from online servers or embedded databases (collectively, "Gracenote Servers") and to perform other functions. You may use Gracenote Data only by means of the intended End-User functions of this application or device.

This application or device may contain content belonging to Gracenote's providers. If so, all of the restrictions set forth herein with respect to Gracenote Data shall also apply to such content and such content providers shall be entitled to all of the benefits and protections set forth herein that are available to Gracenote.

You agree that you will use Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers for your own personal non-commercial use only. You agree

not to assign, copy, transfer or transmit the Gracenote Software or any Gracenote Data to any third party. YOU AGREE NOT TO USE OR EXPLOIT GRACENOTE DATA, THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, OR GRACENOTE SERVERS, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PERMITTED HEREIN.

You agree that your non-exclusive license to use the Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers will terminate if you violate these restrictions. If your license terminates, you agree to cease any and all use of the Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers. Gracenote reserves all rights in Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and the Gracenote Servers, including all ownership rights. Under no circumstances will Gracenote become liable for any payment to you for any information that you provide. You agree that Gracenote may enforce its rights under this Agreement against you directly in its own name.

The Gracenote service uses a unique identifier to track queries for statistical purposes. The purpose of a randomly assigned numeric identifier is to allow the Gracenote service to count queries without knowing anything about who you are. For more information, see the web page for the Gracenote Privacy Policy for the Gracenote service.

The Gracenote Software and each item of Gracenote Data are licensed to you "AS IS." Gracenote makes no representations or warranties, express or implied, regarding the accuracy of any Gracenote Data. Gracenote reserves the right to delete data from the Gracenote Servers or to change data categories for any cause that Gracenote deems sufficient. No warranty is made that the Gracenote Software or Gracenote Servers are error-free or that functioning of Gracenote Software or Gracenote Servers will be uninterrupted. Gracenote is not obligated to provide you with new enhanced or additional data types or categories that Gracenote may provide in the future and is free to discontinue its services at any time.

GRACENOTE DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. GRACENOTE DOES NOT WARRANT THE RESULTS THAT WILL BE OBTAINED BY YOUR USE OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR ANY GRACENOTE SERVER. IN NO CASE WILL GRACENOTE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES OR FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR LOST REVENUES.

© 2015. Gracenote, Inc. All Rights Reserved.

MPEG4–AVC (H.264)

THIS PRODUCT IS LICENSED UNDER THE AVC PATENT PORTFOLIO LICENSE FOR THE PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL USE OF A CONSUMER TO (i) ENCODE VIDEO IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE AVC STANDARD (“AVC VIDEO”) AND/OR (ii) DECODE AVC VIDEO THAT WAS ENCODED BY A CONSUMER ENGAGED IN A PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL ACTIVITY AND/OR WAS OBTAINED FROM A VIDEO PROVIDER LICENSED TO PROVIDE AVC VIDEO. NO LICENSE IS GRANTED OR SHALL BE IMPLIED FOR ANY OTHER USE. ADDITIONAL INFORMATION MAY BE OBTAINED FROM MPEG LA, LLC. SEE HTTP://WWW.MPEGLA.COM.

VC-1

THIS PRODUCT IS LICENSED UNDER THE VC-1 PATENT PORTFOLIO LICENSE FOR THE PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL USE OF A CONSUMER TO (i) ENCODE VIDEO IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE VC-1 STANDARD (“VC-1 VIDEO”) AND/OR (ii) DECODE VC-1 VIDEO THAT WAS ENCODED BY A CONSUMER ENGAGED IN A PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL ACTIVITY AND/OR WAS OBTAINED FROM A VIDEO PROVIDER LICENSED TO PROVIDE VC-1 VIDEO. NO LICENSE IS GRANTED OR SHALL BE IMPLIED FOR ANY OTHER USE. ADDITIONAL INFORMATION MAY BE OBTAINED FROM MPEG LA, LLC. SEE HTTP://WWW.MPEGLA.COM.

MPEG4–Visual

USE OF THIS PRODUCT IN ANY MANNER THAT COMPLIES WITH THE MPEG-4 VISUAL STANDARD IS PROHIBITED, EXCEPT FOR USE BY A CONSUMER ENGAGING IN PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL ACTIVITIES.

MP3

MPEG Layer-3 audio coding technology licensed from Fraunhofer IIS and Thomson.

WMA

This product is protected by certain intellectual property rights of Microsoft. Use or distribution of such technology outside of this product is prohibited without a license from Microsoft.

For more information on the Software, including any open source software license terms (and available source code) as well as copyright attributions applicable to the Runtime Configuration indicated above, please contact the Manufacturer or contact QSSC at 175 Terence Matthews Crescent, Kanata, Ontario, Canada K2M 1W8 (licensing@qnx.com).

Map End User License Agreement

END USER TERMS

The Map Data Disc (“Data”) is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms (this “End User License Agreement”) and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and HERE North America, LLC (“HERE”) and its licensers (including their licensers and suppliers) on the other hand.

TERMS AND CONDITIONS

Personal Use Only: You agree to use this Data for the solely personal, noncommercial purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, timesharing or other similar purposes. Except as otherwise set forth herein, you agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws. You may transfer the Data and all accompanying materials on a permanent basis if you retain no copies and the recipient agrees to the terms of this End User License Agreement. Multi-disc sets may only be transferred or sold as a complete set as provided to you and not as a subset thereof.

Restrictions

Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by HERE and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not (a) use this Data with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with, or in communication with, including without limitation, cellular phones, palmtop and hand-held computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs.

Warning

This Data may contain inaccurate or incomplete information due to the passage of time, changing circumstances, sources used, and the nature of collecting comprehensive geographic data, any of which may lead to incorrect results.

No Warranty

This Data is provided to you “as is,” and you agree to use it at your own risk. HERE and its licensers (and their licensers and suppliers) make no guarantees, representations, or warranties of any kind, express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, content, quality, accuracy, completeness, effectiveness, reliability, fitness for a particular purpose, usefulness, use or results to be obtained from this Data, or that the Data or server will be uninterrupted or error free.

Disclaimer of Warranty

THE DATABASE IS PROVIDED ON AN “AS IS” AND “WITH ALL FAULTS BASIS” AND BOSCH

(AND THEIR LICENSERS AND SUPPLIERS) EXPRESSLY DISCLAIM ALL OTHER WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF NON-INFRINGEMENT, MERCHANTABILITY, SATISFACTORY QUALITY, ACCURACY, TITLE AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. NO ORAL OR WRITTEN ADVICE OR INFORMATION PROVIDED BY BOSCH (OR ANY OF THEIR LICENSERS, AGENTS, EMPLOYEES, OR THIRD PARTY PROVIDERS) SHALL CREATE A WARRANTY, AND YOU ARE NOT ENTITLED TO RELY ON ANY SUCH ADVICE OR INFORMATION. THIS DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTIES IS AN ESSENTIAL CONDITION OF THIS AGREEMENT.

Disclaimer of Liability

HERE AND ITS LICENSERS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSERS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THIS DATA; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS DATA, ANY DEFECT IN THIS DATA, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF HERE OR ITS LICENSERS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. Some States, Territories, and Countries do not allow certain liability exclusions or damages limitations, so to that extent the above may not apply to you.

Export Control

You agree not to export from anywhere any part of the Data provided to you or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations. Entire Agreement: These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between HERE (and its licensers, including their licensers and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

Governing Law

The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the State of Illinois, without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention

for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. You agree to submit to the jurisdiction of the State of Illinois for any and all disputes, claims, and actions arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder.

Government End Users

If the Data is being acquired by or on behalf of the United States government or any other entity seeking or applying rights similar to those customarily claimed by the United States government, this Data is a "commercial item" as that term is defined at 48 C.F.R. ("FAR") 2.101, is licensed in accordance with this End User License Agreement, and each copy of Data delivered or otherwise furnished shall be marked and embedded as appropriate with the following "Notice of Use," and be treated in accordance with such Notice:



NOTICE OF USE

CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/ SUPPLIER)

NAME:

HERE North America, LLC

CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/ SUPPLIER)

ADDRESS:

425 West Randolph Street, Chicago, IL 60606.

This Data is a commercial item as defined in FAR 2.101 and is subject to the End User License Agreement under which this Data was provided.

© 2015 HERE North America, LLC. All rights reserved.

If the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official refuses to use the legend provided herein, the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official must notify HERE North America, LLC prior to seeking additional or alternative rights in the Data.

Unicode

Copyright © 1991-2015 Unicode, Inc. All rights reserved. Distributed under the Terms of Use in http://www.unicode.org/copyright.html.

Free Type Project

Portions of this software are copyright © 2015 The FreeType Project (http://www.freetype.org). All rights reserved.

Open Source SW

The open source code used in this device can be downloaded at the webpage shown in the information on the infotainment display. Further information concerning the OSS licenses is shown on the infotainment display.

QNX

Portions of this software are copyright © 2008-2015, QNX Software Systems. All rights reserved.

Part C – EULA

Copyright 2015, Software Systems GmbH & Co. KG. All Rights Reserved.

The product you have purchased ("Product") contains Software (Runtime Configuration No. 505962; "Software") which is distributed by or on behalf of the Product manufacturer "Manufacturer") under license from Software Systems Co. ("QSSC"). You may only use the Software in the Product and in compliance with the license terms below.

Subject to the terms and conditions of this License, QSSC hereby grants you a limited, non-exclusive, non-transferable license to use the Software in the Product for the purpose intended by the Manufacturer. If permitted by the Manufacturer, or by applicable law, you may make one backup copy of the Software as part of the Product software. QSSC and its licensers reserve all license+C31 rights not expressly granted herein, and retain all right, title and interest in and to all copies of the Software, including all intellectual property rights therein. Unless required by applicable law you may not reproduce, distribute or transfer, or de-compile, disassemble or otherwise attempt to unbundle, reverse engineer, modify or create derivative works of, the Software. You agree: (1) not to remove, cover or alter any proprietary notices, labels or marks in or on the Software, and to ensure that all copies bear any notice contained on the original; and (2) not to export the Product or the Software in contravention of applicable export control laws.

EXCEPT TO THE EXTENT OTHERWISE REQUIRED BY APPLICABLE LAW, QSSC AND ITS LICENSERS PROVIDE THE SOFTWARE ON AN "AS IS" BASIS, WITHOUT WARRANTIES OR CONDITIONS OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, ANY WARRANTIES OR CONDITIONS OF TITLE, NON-INFRINGEMENT, MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. ANY WARRANTIES OR OTHER PROVISIONS OFFERED BY THE MANUFACTURER OR ITS DISTRIBUTOR(S) THAT DIFFER FROM THIS LICENSE ARE OFFERED BY THE MANUFACTURER OR ITS DISTRIBUTOR(S) ALONE AND NOT BY QSSC, ITS AFFILIATES OR THEIR LICENSERS. YOU ASSUME ANY RISKS ASSOCIATED WITH YOUR USE OF THE SOFTWARE UNDER THIS LICENSE.

EXCEPT TO THE EXTENT OTHERWISE REQUIRED BY APPLICABLE LAW (SUCH AS IN THE CASE OF DELIBERATE OR GROSSLY NEGLIGENT ACTS), IN NO EVENT SHALL QSSC, ITS AFFILIATES OR THEIR LICENSERS BE LIABLE TO YOU

UNDER ANY LEGAL THEORY, WHETHER IN TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE), CONTRACT OR OTHERWISE, FOR DAMAGES, INCLUDING ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES OF ANY CHARACTER ARISING AS A RESULT OF THIS LICENSE OR OUT OF THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THE PRODUCT (INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO DAMAGES FOR LOSS OF GOODWILL, WORK STOPPAGE, PRODUCT FAILURE OR MALFUNCTION, OR ANY AND ALL OTHER COMMERCIAL DAMAGES OR LOSSES), EVEN IF QSSC, ITS AFFILIATES OR THEIR LICENSERS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

WMA

This product is protected by certain intellectual property rights of Microsoft. Use or distribution of such technology outside of this product is prohibited without a license from Microsoft.

For more information on the Software, including any open source software license terms (and available source code) as well as copyright attributions applicable to the Runtime Configuration indicated above, please contact the Manufacturer or contact QSSC at 175 Terence Matthews Crescent, Kanata, Ontario, Canada K2M 1W8 (licensing@qnx.com).

Linotype

Helvetica is a trademark of Linotype Corp. registered in the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office and may be registered in certain other jurisdictions in the name of Linotype Corp. or its licensee Linotype GmbH.

Usage in text form of each of the Licensed Trademarks is:

The trademark attribution requirements for the Licensed Trademarks may be viewed at http://www.linotype.com/2061-19414/trademarks.html.

END USER NOTICE

The marks of companies displayed by this product to indicate business locations are the marks of their respective owners. The use of such marks in this product does not imply any sponsorship, approval, or endorsement by such companies of this product.

Owner Assistance

Holden Customer Care

At Holden, we want you to be completely satisfied with your ownership experience. This applies to your vehicle and any Holden representative you may deal with.

Refer below for two options for seeking assistance with your query.

Holden Dealerships

Holden encourages you to seek assistance from your Holden Dealership. Each Holden Dealership is equipped to manage any sales, servicing, parts or technical query.

In the instance that you wish to escalate a query to a higher level of staff, further options are available to you.

As a first step, Holden suggests you discuss any concern with the relevant Department Manager (Sales Manager or Service Manager).

Alternatively, the Dealership General Manager or Dealer Principal will also be happy to assist you.

Holden Customer Care Office

Should you wish to speak to a Holden representative, you are welcome to contact the Holden Customer Care team.

Refer below for operating hours and various methods of communication.

Operating Hours

Weekdays : 8 am – 7 pm AEST

Saturday : 9 am – 1 pm AEST

Telephone

Holden Customer Care can be telephoned from anywhere within Australia for only the cost of a local call.

The contact number is:

1800 033 349

Email

Alternatively, you may prefer to email Holden at:

holdencustomercare@gm.com

Written Correspondence

You can also write to Holden at the address below:

The Manager

Holden Customer Care Centre

GPO Box 1714

Melbourne 3001

Your written correspondence should clearly outline your concern or query and include:

- Your name and address
- Telephone numbers, both private and business
- Servicing dealer's name and address
- Vehicle model

- Vehicle identification number (I.S.O.V.I.N.), refer to the inside front cover of the Service/ Warranty Booklet in your vehicle's glovebox
- Date of purchase
- Current odometer reading

Most of this information will be found on the Vehicle Identification Certificate, located inside the front cover of the Service/Warranty Booklet in your vehicle's glovebox.

Before you write however, remember that the telephone is a quicker and more effective means of communication.

New Zealand

The information in this owner's manual applies primarily to Australian Holden vehicles and there may be some differences to the Warranty and Owner Assistance provisions for New Zealand.

Applicable details for New Zealand are set out in the Holden Warranty and Owner Assistance Information booklet enclosed in the New Zealand glovebox wallet.

New Zealand Assistance can be reached on:

0800 HOLDEN (0800 465 336)

This number provides access to New Zealand Roadside Assistance as well as New Zealand Customer Care.

Alternatively, you may prefer to email Holden at:

holdencustomercare@gm.com

You can also write to Holden at the address below:

The Manager

Holden Customer Care Centre

P.O. Box 11195

Ellerslie

Auckland 1542

New Zealand

Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy

The vehicle has a number of computers that record information about the vehicle's performance and how it is driven. For example, the vehicle uses computer modules to monitor and control engine and transmission performance, to monitor the conditions for airbag deployment and deploy them in a crash, and, if equipped, to provide antilock braking to help the driver control the vehicle. These modules may store data to help the dealer technician service the vehicle. Some modules may also store data about how the vehicle is operated, such as rate of fuel consumption or average speed. These modules may retain personal preferences, such as radio presets, seat positions, and temperature settings.

Event Data Recorders

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an air bag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less. The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating;
- Whether or not the driver and passenger seat belts were buckled/fastened;
- How far (if at all) the driver was pressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal; and,
- How fast the vehicle was travelling.

These data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

Note

EDR data are recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data are recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data (e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location) are recorded. However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

GM will not access these data or share it with others except: with the consent of the vehicle owner or, if the vehicle is leased, with the consent of the lessee; in response to an official request by police or similar government office; as part of GM's defence of litigation through the discovery process; or, as required by law. Data that GM collects or receives may also be used for GM research needs or may be made available to others for research purposes, where a need is shown and the data is not tied to a specific vehicle or vehicle owner.

Index

A

Accessories and Modifications 272
Accessory Power 218
AdBlue 223
AdBlue Warning Light 104
Add-On Electrical Equipment . . . 269
Adjustments
  Lumbar, Front Seats 51
  Seat, Initial Drive 49
Advanced Parking Assist 246
Air Cleaner/Filter, Engine 285
Air Conditioning 204, 206
Air Conditioning Regular Operation 210
Air Filter, Passenger Compartment 210
Air Intake 210
Air Vents 210
Airbag System
  Check 67
  What Will You See after an Airbag Inflates? 66
Airbags
  Curtain 65
  Front 64
  Readiness Light 97
  Side 64
Airbags (cont'd)
  System Check 63
Alarm
  Vehicle Security 38
Alert
  Lane Change 252
  Side Blind Zone (SBZA) 252
All-Wheel Drive 230, 291
AM-FM Radio 134, 157
Anchor Fittings
  Top Tether 71
Antenna
  Multi-band 136, 160
Antilock Brake System (ABS) . . . 231
  Warning Light 101
Appearance Care
  Exterior 316
  Interior 318
Apple CarPlay and Android Auto 147, 202
Armrest
  Rear Seat 58
Audio
  Bluetooth 142, 165
  Theft-Deterrent Feature 130, 151
Automatic
  Door Locks 31

Automatic (cont'd)
Engine Start/Stop Feature 219
Headlamp System 123
Transmission 226
Transmission Fluid 284
Automatic Transmission
Manual Mode 227
Autonomous Emergency
Braking (AEB) 250
Auxiliary
Devices 142
Auxiliary Devices 164

B

Battery 290
Exterior Lighting Battery
Saver 128
Jump Starting 312
Power Protection 128
Blade Replacement, Wiper 291
Bluetooth
Overview 144, 195
Bluetooth Audio 142, 165
Bonnet 274
Brake
Parking, Electric 231
System Warning Light 99
Brakes 289
Brakes (cont'd)
Antilock 231
Assist 233
Fluid 289
Braking
Autonomous Emergency 250
Break-In, New Vehicle 215
Bulb Replacement
Front Turn Signal and Fog
Lamps 294
Halogen Bulbs 293
Headlamps 293
High Intensity Discharge
(HID) Lighting 293
Licence Plate Lamps 295
Taillamps 294
Buying New Tyres 305

C

Calibration 86
Camera
Rear Vision (RVC) 241
Capacities and
Specifications 330
Carbon Monoxide
Engine Exhaust 221
Liftgate 33
Cargo
Cover 75
Tie-Downs 77
Caution, Danger, and Warning 3
Centre Console Storage 75
Chains, Tyre 306
Charging
Wireless 90
Charging System Light 98
Check
Engine Light (Malfunction
Indicator) 98
Child Restraint Installation
Locations 71
Child Restraints
Infants and Young Children 68
Installation Locations 71
ISOFIX 72
Older Children 68
Systems 69
Circuit Breakers 296
Cleaning
Exterior Care 316
Interior Care 318
Climate Control Systems 204
Dual Automatic 206
Clock 86
Cluster, Instrument 92

Clutch, Hydraulic 284
Compact Spare Tyre 311
Compartments
Storage 73
Compass 86
Control
Hill Descent 237
Traction and Electronic Stability 234
Control Light
Hill Descent 101
Control System
Emission 272
Controls
Steering Wheel 132, 153
Coolant
Engine 286
Engine Temperature Gauge 96
Cooling 204, 206
Courtesy Lamps 126
Cover
Cargo 75
Coverage Explanations
Database 189
Cruise Control 237
Light 105
Cupholders 73
Curtain Airbag System 65
Customer-installed Equipment, Notices 67

D

Danger, Warning, and Caution 3
Data Recorders, Event 344
Database Coverage Explanations 189
Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) 123
Destination 173
Devices
Auxiliary 142, 164
Diesel Exhaust Fluid AdBlue 223
Diesel Particulate Filter 221
Dimensions
Vehicle 330
Dome Lamps 126
Door
Locks 29
Drive Systems
All-Wheel Drive 230, 291
Driver Assistance Systems 240
Driver Information Centre (DIC) 106
Driving
Environment 212
Driving (cont'd)
Off-Road 213
Dual Automatic Climate Control System 206

E

Electric Parking Brake 231
Electric Parking Brake Light 100
Electrical Equipment, Add-On 269
Electrical System
Engine Compartment Fuse Block 296
Fuses and Circuit Breakers 296
Instrument Panel Fuse Block 299
Rear Fuse Panel 301
Electronic Stability Control (ESC) Off Light 103
Emission Control System 272
Emission Information 272
Engine
Air Cleaner/Filter 285
Automatic Start/Stop Feature 219
Check Light (Malfunction Indicator) 98
Compartment Overview 276

Engine (cont'd)
Coolant 286
Coolant Temperature Gauge 96
Exhaust 221
Oil Life System 283
Oil Pressure Light 103
Overheating 287
Power Messages 111
Starting 217
Engine Data 328
Engine Identification 325
Entry Lighting 127
Event Data Recorders 344
Exhaust Fluid
Diesel, AdBlue 223
Exit Lighting 127
Exterior Lamp Controls 121
Exterior Lighting Battery
Saver 128

F

Features
Memory 13
Filter 221
Filter,
Engine Air Cleaner 285
Flashers, Hazard Warning 125
Flat Tyre
Changing 307
Floor Mats 321
Fluid
Automatic Transmission 284
Brakes 289
Washer 289
Fog Lamps 125
Folding Mirrors 40
Forward Collision Alert
(FCA) System 248
Front Airbag System 64
Front Fog Lamp
Light 105
Front Seat Position Seats
Adjustment 49
Front Seats
Adjustment 50
Heated and Ventilated 54
Fuel 256
Filling the Tank 262, 263
Gauge 95
Low Fuel Warning Light 104
Recommended 258
Running out of Fuel 261
Water in Fuel 259
Fuses
Engine Compartment Fuse
Block 296
Fuses and Circuit Breakers ... 296
Instrument Panel Fuse
Block 299
Rear Fuse Panel 301

G

Gauges
Engine Coolant Temperature ...96
Fuel 95
Odometer 95
Speedometer 95
Tachometer 95
Trip Odometer 95
Warning Lights and
Indicators 91
General Information
Vehicle Care 272
Global Positioning
System (GPS) 187
Glove Box 73
Guidance
Problems with the Route 188

H
Halogen Bulbs 293
Hands-Free Phone 148
Hazard Warning Flashers 125
Head Restraints 46
Headlamp Leveling Control 124
Headlamps 293
Automatic 123
Bulb Replacement 293
Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) 123
Front Turn Signal and Fog Lamps 294
High Intensity Discharge (HID) Lighting 293
High-Beam On Light 105
High/Low Beam Changer 123
Lamps On Reminder 105
Heated
Rear Seats 58
Steering Wheel 82
Heated and Ventilated Front Seats 54
Heated Mirrors 41
Heating 206
High-Beam On Light 105
Hill Descent Control (HDC) 237
Hill Descent Control Light 101
Hill Start Assist (HSA) 233
Home Page 132
Horn 83
How to Wear Seat Belts Properly 59
HVAC 204, 206
Hydraulic Clutch 284

I
Identification Plate 326
If the System Needs Service 189
Ignition Positions 215
Indicator
Vehicle Ahead 102
Infants and Young Children, Restraints 68
Information
Service 323
Instrument Cluster 92
Interior Rear view Mirrors 41
Introduction 2, 130, 150
ISOFIX Child Restraint Systems 72

J
Jump Starting 312

K
Keyless Entry
Remote (RKE) System 24
Keys 23

L
Lamps
Courtesy 126
Daytime Running (DRL) 123
Dome 126
Exterior Controls 121
Exterior Lighting Battery Saver 128
Licence Plate 295
Malfunction Indicator (Check Engine) 98
On Reminder 105
Reading 127
Taillamps 294
Lane Change Alert (LCA) 252
Lane Departure
Warning (LDW) 254
Lane Keep Assist (LKA) 254
Lane Keep Assist Light 101
LED Lighting 293
Leveling Control
Headlamp 124
Liftgate 33

Lighting
Entry 127
Exit 127
Illumination Control 126
LED 293
Lights
AdBlue Warning 104
Airbag Readiness 97
Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning 101
Brake System Warning 99
Charging System 98
Check Engine (Malfunction Indicator) 98
Cruise Control 105
Electric Parking Brake 100
Electronic Stability Control (ESC), Off 103
Engine Oil Pressure 103
Front Fog Lamp 105
High-Beam On 105
High/Low Beam Changer 123
Hill Descent Control 101
Lane Keep Assist 101
Low Fuel Warning 104
Seat Belt Reminders 96
Security 104
Lights (cont'd)
Service Electric Parking Brake 100
Traction Off 102
Up-Shift 101
Wait to Start 103
Locks
Automatic Door 31
Door 29
Lockout Protection 32
Safety 32
Low Fuel Warning Light 104
Lumbar Adjustment 51
Front Seats 51

M

Maintenance
Air Conditioning Regular Operation 210
Maintenance Schedule
Recommended Fluids and Lubricants 324
Malfunction Indicator Lamp 98
Manual Mode 227
Manual Transmission 228
Fluid 284
Map Data Updates 189
Maps 172
Memory Features 13
Memory Seats 52
Messages
Engine Power 111
Vehicle 111
Vehicle Speed 112
Messaging
Text 201
Mirrors
Automatic Dimming Rearview 41
Folding 40
Heated 41
Manual Rearview 41
Power 40
Mirrors, Interior Rear view 41
Multi-band Antenna 136, 160

N

Navigation
Destination 173
Symbols 172
Using the System 166
New Vehicle Break-In 215
Notices for Customer-installed Equipment 67

O
Odometer 95
Trip 95
Off-Road 213
Driving 213
Oil
Engine 281
Engine Oil Life System 283
Pressure Light 103
Older Children, Restraints 68
Operation
Fog Lamps 125
Infotainment System 133
Other Service Items
Air Conditioning System 204
Outlets
Power 87
Overheating, Engine 287
Overview 131, 151

P
Parking 220
Parking Assist 243
Advanced 246
Passenger Compartment Air Filter 210
Personalisation
Vehicle 112
Phone
Apple CarPlay and Android Auto 147, 202
Bluetooth 144, 195
Hands-Free 148
Port
USB 136, 161
Power
Mirrors 40
Outlets 87
Protection, Battery 128
Retained Accessory (RAP) ... 218
Seat Adjustment 51
Windows 42
Pregnancy, Using Seat Belts 62
Pressure
Tyre 331
Privacy
Vehicle Data Recording 342
Problems with Route Guidance 188

R
Radio
AM-FM 134, 157
Radio Reception 135, 160
Reading Lamps 127
Rear Seat Armrest 58
Rear Seats 55
Heated 58
Rear Storage 74
Rear Vision Camera (RVC) 241
Rear Window Washer/Wiper 85
Rearview Mirrors 41
Automatic Dimming 41
Reclining Seatbacks 51
Recognition
Voice 189
Recommended
Fuel 258
Recommended Fluids and Lubricants 324
Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System 24
Remote Vehicle Start 28
Replacement Parts
Airbags 67
Replacing Airbag System 67
Replacing Seat Belt System Parts after a Crash 62
Restraints
Where to Put 70

Retained Accessory
Power (RAP) 218
Roof
Sunroof 44
Roof Rack System 78
Rotation, Tyres 305
Running out of Fuel 261

S

Safety Locks 32
Seat Belts
Care 62
Child Restraints 71
How to Wear Seat Belts
Properly 59
Reminders 96
Replacing after a Crash 62
Three-Point 60
Use During Pregnancy 62
Seats
Adjustment, Front 50
Head Restraints 46
Heated and Ventilated Front 54
Heated, Rear 58
Lumbar Adjustment, Front 51
Memory 52
Position, Front 49
Power Adjustment, Front 51
Seats (cont'd)
Rear 55
Reclining Seatbacks 51
Security
Light 104
Vehicle Alarm 38
Service
Accessories and
Modifications 272
Parts Identification Label 327
Service and Maintenance
Service Information 323
Service Electric Parking
Brake Light 100
Service Information 323
Servicing System 189
Side Airbag System 64
Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA) ... 252
Signals, Turn and
Lane-Change 125
Spare Tyre
Compact 311
Specifications and
Capacities 330
Speedometer 95
Start Assist, Hill 233
Start Vehicle, Remote 28
Starting the Engine 217
Steering 213
Heated Wheel 82
Wheel Adjustment 81
Wheel Controls 81
Steering Wheel
Controls 132, 153
Storage
Rear 74
Storage Areas
Cargo Cover 75
Centre Console 75
Glove Box 73
Roof Rack System 78
Sunglasses 74
Umbrella 75
Storage Compartments 73
Sun Visors 44
Sunglass Storage 74
Sunroof 44
Symbols 3
Navigation 172
System
Forward Collision
Alert (FCA) 248
Global Positioning 187
Roof Rack 78
Systems
Driver Assistance 240

T
Tachometer 95
Taillamps 294
Technical Data
Tyre Pressure 331
Text Messaging 201
Theft-Deterrent Systems 39
Three-Point Seat Belt 60
Time 86
Tools 302
Top Tether Anchor Fittings 71
Towing
Trailer 265
Trailer Sway Control (TSC) ... 269
Vehicle 314
Traction
Off Light 102
Traction Control/Electronic
Stability Control 234
Trademarks and License
Agreements 332
Trailer
Sway Control (TSC) 269
Towing 265
Transmission
Automatic 226
Fluid, Automatic 284
Fluid, Manual 284
Tread Depth 304
Trip Odometer 95
Turn and Lane-Change
Signals 125
Tyre Pressure 331
Tyres 303
Buying New Tyres 305
Chains 306
Changing 307
Compact Spare 311
Pressure 303
Rotation 305
Wheel Alignment and Tyre
Balance 306

U
Umbrella Storage 75
Updates
Map Data 189
Upshift light 101
USB Port 136, 161
Using the Navigation System ... 166
Using the System 154
Using This Manual 3

V
Vehicle
Alarm System 38
Identification Number (VIN) ... 325
Vehicle (cont'd)
Messages 111
Personalisation 112
Remote Start 28
Speed Messages 112
Towing 314
Vehicle Ahead Indicator 102
Vehicle Care
Tyre Pressure 303
Vehicle Data Recording and
Privacy 342
Vehicle Dimensions 330
Vehicle Identification
Plate 326
Vehicle Positioning 188
Vehicle Weight 329
Ventilation, Air 210
Visors 44
Voice Recognition 189

W
Wait to Start Light 103
Warning
Brake System Light 99
Caution and Danger 3
Lane Departure (LDW) 254

Warning Light
AdBlue 104
Warning Lights, Gauges, and
Indicators 91
Warnings
Hazard Flashers 125
Washer Fluid 289
Water in Fuel 259
Weights
Vehicle 329
Wheels
Alignment and Tyre
Balance 306
Where to Put the Restraint 70
Windows 42
Power 42
Windshield
Wiper/Washer 83
Wiper Blade Replacement 291
Wipers
Rear Washer 85
Wireless Charging 90